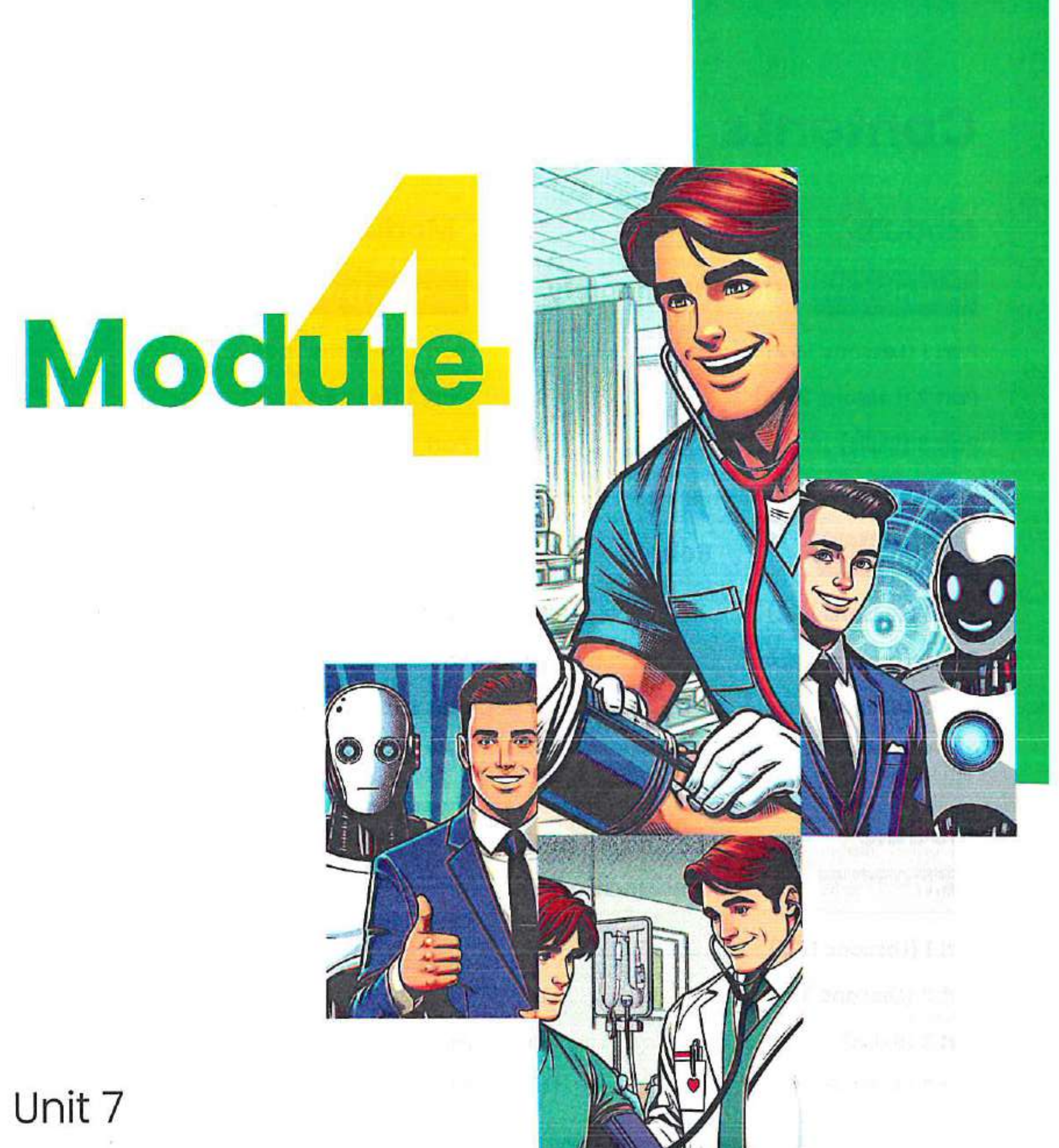

AL ADWAA
Gem
2000 سؤال كلمات وقواعد
23 قطعة - 125 ترجمة
1st
SEC
SECOND TERM
TREASURE
ISLAND
NEW HELLO!
2025

Contents

Module 4

Module 5

Module 6



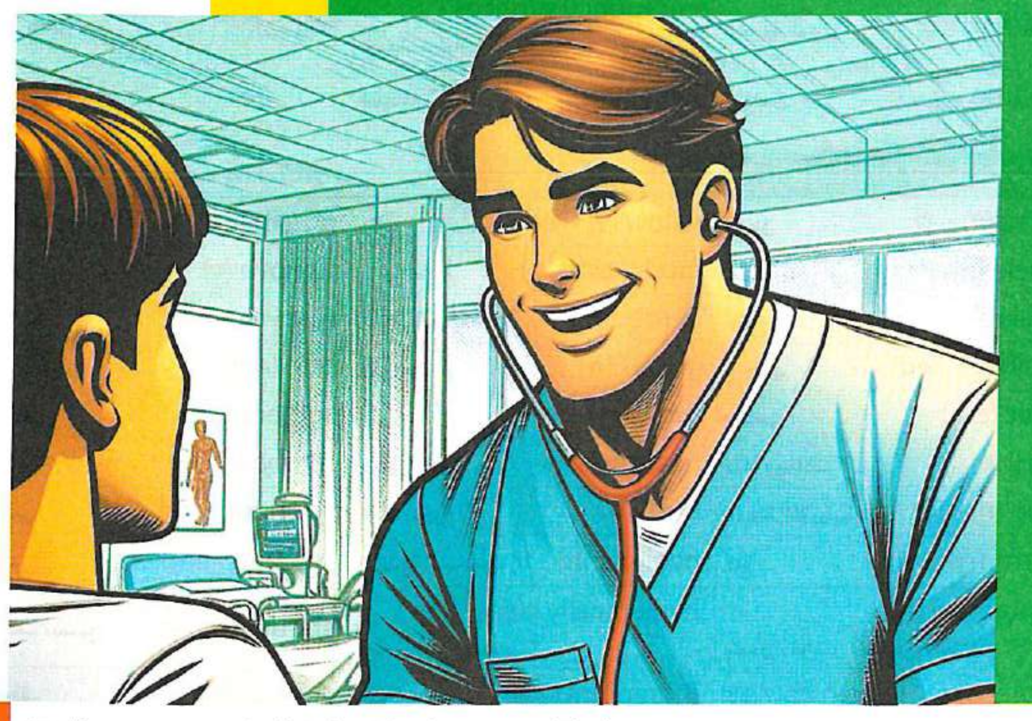
Unit 7

Health and safety

Unit 8

Robots

Unit 7
Health and safety





Reading	: Leaflet about hygiene around the home
Writing	: An email giving advice
Listening	: How to give first aid
Speaking	: Giving advice
Language	: should/shouldn't, must/mustn't
Critical thinking	: Interpreting research: the importance of hygiene

Study... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

allergy (n)	حساسية	CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) (n)	إنعاش قلبي رئوي	research (n)	بحث / دراسة
at least	على الأقل	danger (n)	خطر	respond (v) – ed	يستجيب / يرد
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا (جمع)	dust (n)	غبار / تراب	soil (n)	التربة الزراعية
bedding (n)	أغطية السرير	emergency services	خدمات طوارئ		
breathe (v) – d	يتنفس	first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

agree (v) – d	يوافق	follow (v) – ed	يتبع	possibility (n)	إمكانية / احتمالية
article (n)	مقال	food waste (n)	بقايا الطعام	remove (v) – d	يزيل
available (adj)	متاح	gardening (n)	أعمال الحديقة	rule (n)	قاعدة
avoid (v) – ed	يتجنب	gloves (n)	قفازات	safe (adj)	سليم / آمن
basic (adj)	أساسي	grow (v)	ينمو	subject (n)	موضوع
bin (n)	سلة مهملات	healthy (adj)	صحي / سليم	safety (n)	سلامة / أمان
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	hurt (v)	يؤذي / يجرح	scientific (adj)	علمي
bottom (n)	قاع	hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية	separate (adj)	منفصل
contact (v) (n)	يتصل / تواصل / تلامس / تعامل	hygienically (adv)	صحيًا (بشكل صحي)	shout (v) – ed	يهتف / يصيح
cable (n)	كابل / سلك (كهربائي)	ingredients (n)	مكونات	situation (n)	موقف
cause (v) – d (n)	يسبب / سبب	interpreting (n)	تفسير	skin (n)	جلد (الإنسان)
check (v) – ed	يفحص / يراجع	knowledge (n)	معرفة	soapy (adj)	صابوني
contain (v) – ed	يحتوي على	leaflet (n)	منشور / نشرة	surprising (adj)	مدهش
description (n)	وصف	leave (v)	يغادر / يترك	trousers (n)	بنطلون
drop (v) – ped	يُسقط	links (n)	روابط	trust (v) – ed (n)	يثق في / ثقة
easily (adv)	بسهولة	medical (adj)	طبي	warm (adj)	دافئ
electrical (adj)	كهربي	metal (n)	معدن	wear (v)	يرتدي
equipment (n)	معدات	nearby (adj)	قريب / مجاور		

Workbook Vocabulary

مفردات كتاب التدريبات

chopping boards	ألواح تقطيع (طعام)	extra (adj)	إضافى	sneeze (v) – d	يعطس
cleaner (n)	منظف/عامل نظافة	fact (n)	حقيقة	special (adj)	خاص/مخصوص
cough (v) – ed	يكح	messy (adj)	فوضوى	sponge (n)	قطعة إسفنج
cut (n)	جرح/شق	properly (adv)	بشكل جيد	spread (v)	ينتشر
dirt (n)	قذارة	regularly (adv)	بانتظام	tissue (n)	منديل ورقى
expert (n)	خبير	replace (v) – d	يستبدل	wet (adj)	مبلل

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Khaled's life was saved as he was given .... at the scene of the accident.
(d) a) infection b) allergy c) hygiene d) first aid

2. Some plants and herbs أعشاب grow better in dry ....
a) soil b) floor c) dust d) flour

3. A cloud of .... rose in the air as there were a lot of cars on the road.
a) allergy b) soil c) dust d) blogs

4. When Adel's breathing stopped, I gave him CPR to make him .... again.
a) seize b) sneeze c) breathe d) breeze

5. Our youth should .... wasting much time on the internet.
a) agree b) avoid c) contain d) follow

6. We should boil milk to kill harmful ....
a) bacteria b) injection c) dust d) allergy

7. Wash your hands with .... after using the toilet.
a) gloves b) oil c) dirt d) soap

8. Bacteria like to grow in warm, wet places like a kitchen ....
a) oven b) cook c) sponge d) machine

9. All hospitals should provide .... services 24 hours a day.
a) dust b) virus c) emergency d) research

10. Using a .... when you sneeze is very important.
a) bedding b) tissue c) sponge d) toilet

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

as often as you can بقدر ما تستطيع	make ... harder يجعل ... أصعب	know about يعرف عن
get/become ill يمرض	move away from يتحرك بعيدًا عن	live on يعيش على (طعام معين مثلًا)
carry bacteria ينقل العدوى البكتيرية	post online ينشر على الإنترنت	return from يعود من
come back again يرجع مرة أخرى	protect ... against يحمى ... ضد /من ...	shout at يصرخ فى
do/perform/carry out CPR يقوم بعمل إنعاش للقلب	stay clean يبقى نظيفًا	talk to يتحدث إلى
DOs and DON'Ts ما يجب فعله وما لا يجب فعله	belong to ينتمى لـ/يخص	think of/about يفكر فى
follow the rules يتبع القواعد	contact with تواصل مع	move around يتنقل
get dirty يتسخ	full of مملوء بـ	near to قريب من
give advice ينصح	give first aid يقدم إسعافات أولية	respond to يستجيب لـ
have a shower يستحم/يغتسل	go into يدخل فى	
have an allergy to لديه حساسية من	home for/to موطن لـ	clean a cut ينظف جرح
keep ... clean يحافظ على ... نظيفًا	take air in and out يستنشق ويزفر الهواء	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
agree يوافق	agreement اتفاق	agreeable مقبول
------------------------	allergy حساسية allergen مادة تثير الحساسية	allergic لديه حساسية
breathe يتنفس	breathing عملية التنفس breath النفس	breathless غير قادر على التنفس breathy لاهث
describe يصف	description وصف	descriptive وصفى describable قابل للوصف
dirty يجعل شيئًا قذرًا	dirt قذارة	dirty قذر
dust يزيل التراب	dust تراب	dusty مترب (عليه غبار)
endanger يعرض للخطر	danger خطر	dangerous خطير endangered معرض للخطر

grow	ينمو	growth	نمو	growing	نام/متزايد
interpret	يفسر	interpretation interpreter	تفسير مترجم (فورى)	interpretive	تفسيرى
medicate	يعالج/يداوى	medicine	طب/دواء	medical	طبى
mess	يقوم بعمل فوضى	mess	فوضى	messy	فوضوى
respond	يستجيب	response	استجابة	responsive	متجاوب /مستجيب
soap	يغسل بالصابون	soap	صابون	soapy	صابونى
soil	يلطخ/يلوث/يوسخ	soil	التربة الزراعية	soiled	متسخ

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Driving at a high speed endangers people's lives. (v)

People's lives are in danger if they drive too fast. (n)

Driving at a high speed is very dangerous. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
available	متاح	feasible/obtainable		unavailable/occupied	غيرمتاح
avoid	يتجنب	evade/avert		face/support	يواجه/يدعم
bottom	قاع	base/basement		top/summit/peak	قمة
change	يغير	alter/modify		remain/keep	يظل/يبقى
danger	خطر	hazard/insecurity		safety/security	أمان
easily	بسهولة	simply/smoothly		difficultly/hard	بصعوبة
follow	يتبع	pursue/chase		precede/go before	يسبق
interpret	يفسر	clarify/define		confuse/mix up	يربك
leave	يغادر	depart/abandon		arrive/reach	يصل
messy	فوضوى	untidy/disorderly		tidy/ordered/organised	مرتب
respond	يستجيب	reply/answer/react		ignore/request	يتجاهل/يطلب

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Parents should have contact .... their children's teachers from time to time.
c a) by b) for c) with d) at

2. My little daughter .... an allergy to cat's hair.
a) takes b) gives c) does d) has

3. Brushing your teeth protects you .... cavities التسوس.
a) with b) on c) at d) against

4. A lot of rare animals are .... and so we must try to keep them.
a) dangerous b) dangers c) endanger d) endangered

5. Don't shout .... the little child; he might get scared.
a) for b) at c) of d) with

6. The doctor told the patient some .... before he recuperated يتعافى من المرض.
a) dos and don'ts b) pros and cons
c) merits and demerits d) ins and outs

7. When parents returned home, everything in the house was messy. The opposite of the word "messy" is ....
a) organised b) untidy c) colourful d) terrible

8. The new book will be available for people to buy soon. The synonym of the word "available" is ....
a) unavailable b) obtainable c) occupied d) avoidable

9. Ali has worked as an .... for many years.
a) interpret b) interpreter c) interpretation d) interpretive

10. After using the kitchen, it's advisable to .... everything clean.
a) stay b) keep c) do d) drop



Hygiene at home: Seven DOs and DON'Ts for a healthy life

1. Take your shoes off

The bottoms of your shoes can carry a lot of bacteria into your house. You should always take your shoes off at the door.

2. No more dust

Dust quickly comes back again after you've cleaned[1]. However, dust can make it difficult to breathe and it can cause skin problems. You should clean your house or flat as often as you can.

3. Wash the kitchen floor

Food and drinks can easily fall on the kitchen floor. You should clean your kitchen floor at least once a week. You should use warm, soapy water so you can remove all the bacteria.

4. Change your bedding

We spend a lot of our time asleep in bed. You should change your bedding at least once every two weeks[2] so bacteria can't live in it.

5. Wash your hands after spending time with your pets

Research has shown that contact with pets early in life can protect you against allergies. But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch anything else until you've washed your hands.

6. Stay clean in the garden

You should wear gloves if you're going to touch soil in the garden because it can contain bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished gardening, too.

7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean

A lot of bacteria can grow in your bin. You shouldn't leave your bin open.

Hygiene rules around the world

In the UK, you must put your food waste in a separate bin.
In Thailand, you must take your shoes off before going into someone's house[3].
In the USA, you should offer to help clean up after dinner[4] at a friend's house.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- الرابط after قبله مضارع بسيط و بعده مضارع تام و من الممكن استخدام المستقبل بدلا من المضارع البسيط.
٢- مع الفترة الزمنية الجمع (two weeks) نستخدم every.
٣- الرابط before بعده v-ing مع عدم وجود فاعل بعده.
٤- من الممكن أن يأتى بعد after اسم أو v-ing.



Listening Text

How to Give First Aid

Nurse: Today, I'm going to tell you what to do[1] if you find a person who is lying on the ground and not moving. Call the emergency services immediately. Then you must check if there are any dangers near to the person, like electrical cables. If there are any dangers, move the person away from them. When you know they're safe, shout 'Hello!' or 'Wake up!' and see if the person responds. If the person doesn't respond to you, put your face[2] next to their face so you can check their breathing. If the person isn't breathing, the emergency services will tell you how to do[3] CPR so you can help the person start to breathe again.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- و ٣- لاحظ أداتى الاستفهام what - how وبعدهما to + inf. فى شكل روابط.

٢- فى قاعدة If إذا جاء بعدها مضارع بسيط يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة الثانية بفعل أمر مع عدم وجود فاعل.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



Being Clean at Home

Most people like to keep their homes clean, but there are many places that we don't think about and so they become full of dirt and bacteria.

Research shows that the deep cuts in chopping boards are often a home for bacteria because people don't clean them properly.

Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things, so phones, tablets and computer keyboards often have a lot of bacteria on them, too[1]. However, bacteria really love warm, wet places and so your kitchen sponge probably has more bacteria than anything else in your home.

Experts say that it's most important[2] to wash our hands regularly. If we touch animals, we should wash[3] our hands, and we need to use a tissue when we sneeze to stop the bacteria spreading in the air. They suggest using[4] plastic chopping boards and giving them an extra clean once a week. We should replace kitchen sponges every two weeks, and we can buy special cleaners for phones, tablets and computers.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة too بمعنى أيضًا تأتى فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة.

٢- كلمة most هنا ليست تفضيلًا ولكنها بمعنى very.

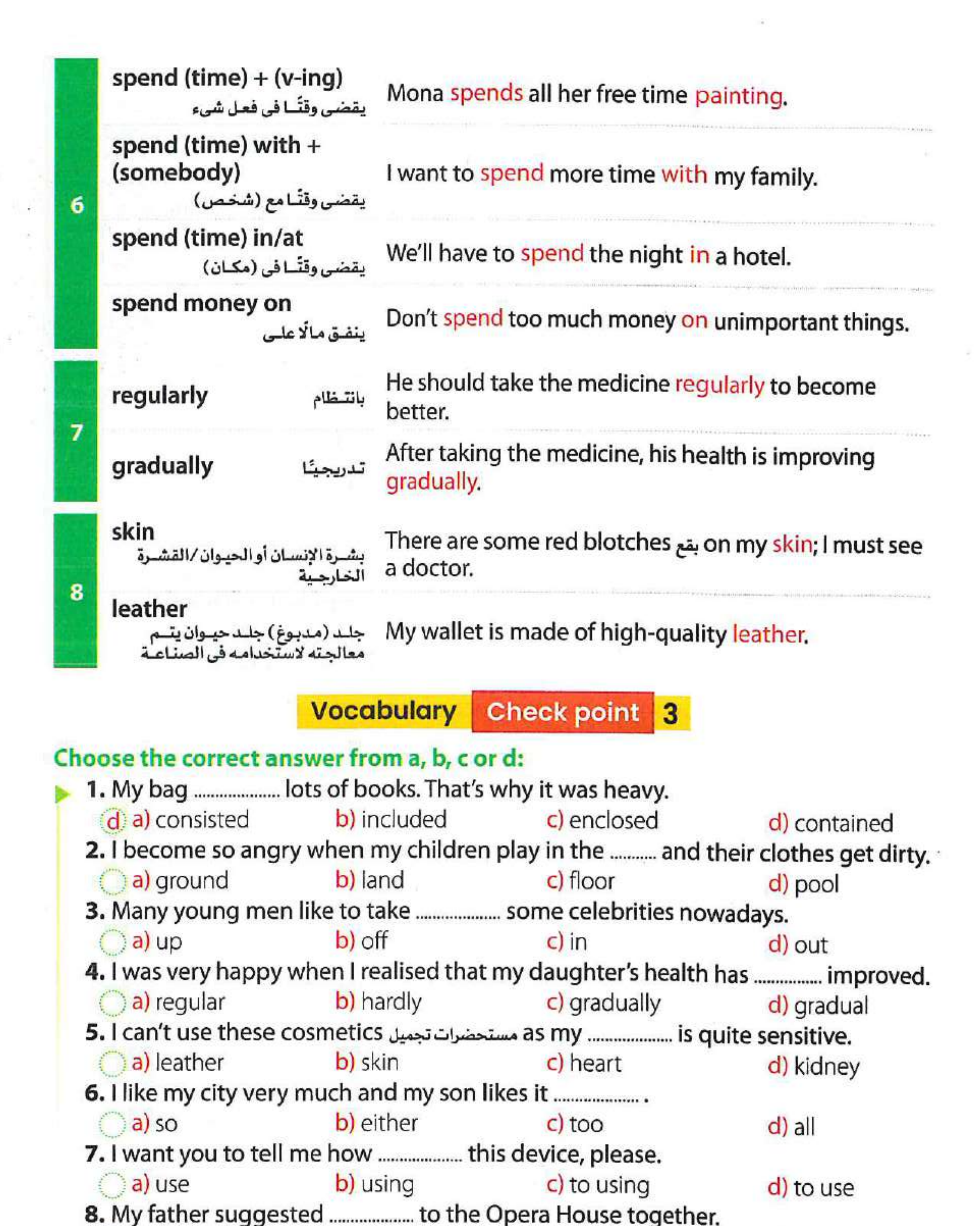
٣- فى قاعدة If الحالة الأولى من الممكن أن تكون الجملة الثانية نصيحة باستخدام should.

٤- كلمة suggest يمكن أن يأتى بعدها v-ing.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	take ... off		يمكن استخدام (take ... off) بمعانٍ كثيرة مثل:
		- يخلع (ملابس)	He took off his wet coat and sat by the fire.
		- تقلع (للطائرات)	The plane took off an hour late.
		- يترك (مكانًا بسرعة)	When he saw me coming, he took off in the opposite direction.
		- ينجح (بسرعة/بشكل مفاجئ)	- The new magazine has really taken off. - Her singing career took off after her TV interview.
		- يقلد (شخصًا)	Ali can take off his father to perfection.
2	wear	يرتدى (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص)	We wear light clothes in summer.
	put on	تصف عملية الارتداء ومن الممكن أن تأتى كفعل أمر	- While putting on my clothes, the phone rang. - Put on your shoes. We are late for school.
3	contain	يحتوى على (بداخله)	This drink doesn't contain any sugar.
	include	يشتمل على/يتضمن	Does the price of this service include tax?
	consist of	يتكون من	My house consists of four rooms, a hall, a kitchen and a bathroom.
4	soil	تربة زراعية	This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil to grow well.
	earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	- Earth is not flat as most people believed in the past. - The dog slept in the earth and got dirty.
	ground	هى السطح الصلب للأرض - أرض الشارع والطريق التى نسير عليها	On my way to school, I dropped my bag on the ground.
	land	اليابسة/البر (عكس البحر)	Earth consists of water and land.
	floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	- My brother lives on the 15th floor of this building. - The floor of my room needs to be cleaned.
5	hygiene	نظافة شخصية	Brushing your teeth is a part of your hygiene.
	sanitation	النظافة العامة	Good sanitation is important for the environment.



6	**spend (time) + (v-ing)** يقضى وقتًا فى فعل شىء	Mona spends all her free time painting.
	spend (time) with + (somebody) يقضى وقتًا مع (شخص)	I want to spend more time with my family.
	spend (time) in/at يقضى وقتًا فى (مكان)	We'll have to spend the night in a hotel.
	spend money on ينفق مالًا على	Don't spend too much money on unimportant things.
7	**regularly** بانتظام	He should take the medicine regularly to become better.
	gradually تدريجيًا	After taking the medicine, his health is improving gradually.
8	**skin** بشرة الإنسان أو الحيوان/القشرة الخارجية	There are some red blotches بقع on my skin; I must see a doctor.
	leather جلد (مدبوغ) جلد حيوان يتم معالجته لاستخدامه فى الصناعة	My wallet is made of high-quality leather.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My bag .... lots of books. That's why it was heavy.
(d) a) consisted b) included c) enclosed d) contained

2. I become so angry when my children play in the .... and their clothes get dirty.
a) ground b) land c) floor d) pool

3. Many young men like to take .... some celebrities nowadays.
a) up b) off c) in d) out

4. I was very happy when I realised that my daughter's health has .... improved.
a) regular b) hardly c) gradually d) gradual

5. I can't use these cosmetics مستحضرات تجميل as my .... is quite sensitive.
a) leather b) skin c) heart d) kidney

6. I like my city very much and my son likes it ....
a) so b) either c) too d) all

7. I want you to tell me how .... this device, please.
a) use b) using c) to using d) to use

8. My father suggested .... to the Opera House together.
a) going b) we going c) to go d) should go

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. Having .... to fish makes Soad feel uncomfortable in this restaurant.
a) infection b) breathing c) danger d) allergy

2. It is a law that every car should have a .... kit.
a) burn b) washing c) breathing d) first aid

3. The dog is especially trained to .... its owner everywhere.
a) grow b) drop c) contain d) follow

4. To keep healthy, we should avoid foods which .... a lot of fat.
a) consist b) conclude c) enclose d) contain

5. We should do some .... about the topic using the internet.
a) research b) first aid c) burnings d) bandage

6. Lifeguards should be trained to deal with ....
a) bedding b) neighbours c) gardening d) emergencies

7. Mothers must change the .... of their children's beds every week.
a) carpet b) leaflet c) board d) bedding

8. The teacher told us that tomatoes .... best in direct sunlight.
a) grow b) agree c) plant d) respond

9. A lot of information is easily .... for everyone on the internet these days.
a) available b) forbidden c) valuable d) regular

10. The detailed .... of the thief helped the police to arrest him easily.
a) equipment b) possibility c) situation d) description

11. I can't imagine that computers will .... teachers in the classrooms.
a) replace b) leave c) remove d) spread

12. Most people begin to .... when they take in smoke or some smells.
a) smile b) breathe c) carry d) sneeze

13. Some skin diseases can be prevented by following good personal ....
a) allergy b) hygiene c) clearance d) blog

14. There must be some strict .... measures إجراءات in all schools especially during exams.
a) economic b) electrical c) maturity d) safety

15. This food is home-cooked, and it contains fresh ....
a) solutions b) ingredients c) blogs d) components

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16. Drug addiction .... the health of our youth nowadays.
a) endangers b) dangers c) dangerous d) dangerously

17. Most young people need contact .... the old and wise people in society.
a) no word b) with c) by c) to

18. It's not healthy to put the food .... in the bin because it helps bacteria spread.
a) spice b) sponge c) waste d) blog

19. The fire department responded .... the call within minutes.
a) for b) at c) to d) from

20. To help other people, all of us must learn to .... CPR.
a) carry b) make c) get d) perform

21. I'm so sorry; I've .... the camera by mistake. Longman
a) feared b) filled c) fallen d) dropped

22. People strive to meet their .... needs because prices are getting higher all over the world. Longman
a) base b) basic c) basis d) basics

23. Do you think this chemical will .... the stain بقعة on my jacket? Longman
a) check b) prove c) shake d) remove

24. You should .... on gloves while repairing your car to keep your hands clean.
a) dress b) move c) wear d) put

25. The .... in our field is very fertile. (السويس)
a) sale b) sail c) seal d) soil

26. Teachers have to .... love among pupils. (الإسماعيلية)
a) publish b) remove c) print d) spread

27. Be careful! People with .... or any other respiratory diseases may be affected easily. (الجيزة -العمرانية)
a) allergies b) rules c) leaflets d) pets

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

28. My mother always shouts at me because I leave my bedroom .... before going to school.
a) clean b) tidy c) untidy d) in order e) messy

29. The colour that I wanted was available in another branch. The synonyms of the word "available" are ....
a) feasible b) unavailable c) obtainable d) occupied e) visible

30. Before leaving the train, make sure you have all your belongings with you. The antonyms of the word "leaving" are ....
a) reaching b) arriving c) departing d) abandoning e) clarifying

31. Healthy people should avoid eating fast food. The synonyms of the word "avoid" are ....
a) avert b) face c) confuse d) evade e) alter

32. The reporter asked the interviewee to interpret his words. The synonyms of the word "interpret" are ....
a) clarify b) confuse c) show d) understand e) define

B Language

(should/shouldn't) (must/mustn't) الأفعال الناقصة (للتعبير عن النصيحة أو الإلزام)

1 (should = ought to) + inf./(shouldn't = oughtn't to) + inf.

USAGE الاستخدام

1	**To give and ask for advice:** You should/ought to wash your hands after you touch animals. You shouldn't/oughtn't to sleep late. It is bad for you. What should I do to join the Faculty of Medicine?	لإعطاء أو طلب النصيحة:
2	**For suggestion:** You should travel by train. It is much safer.	للاقتراح:
3	**To give an opinion:** Mona should follow a diet. This will help her to lose weight.	لإعطاء الرأى:

Should/Shouldn't بدائل

يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة بنفس معنى should/shouldn't لاحظ التالى:

should	shouldn't
had better + inf. My students had better study hard.	**had better not + inf.** You had better not walk alone in uninhabited places.
I advise ... to ... I advise my students to study hard.	**I advise ... not to ...** I advise you not to walk alone in uninhabited places.
It is advisable ... to ... It is advisable for my students to study hard.	**It is inadvisable to ...** It is inadvisable to walk alone in uninhabited places.
If I were you, I would ... If I were you, I would study hard.	**If I were you, I wouldn't ...** If I were you, I wouldn't walk alone in uninhabited places.

It is important to ...
It is important to study hard.

It is important not to ...
It is important not to walk alone in uninhabited places.

It would be a good idea to ...
It would be a good idea to study hard.

It wouldn't be a good idea to ...
It wouldn't be a good idea to walk alone in uninhabited places.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This film is fantastic. You .... watch it. I only advise you.
   (d) a) have to b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) should
2. I advise you .... unhealthy food.
   a) to eat b) to not eat c) not to eat d) don't eat
3. It would be a good idea to go to the cinema together, so we .... do that.
   a) must b) mightn't c) should d) mustn't
4. To get a high mark in the exam, you .... to revise regularly.
   a) should b) had better c) must d) ought
5. I have just told Radwa that she .... go out as it is raining.
   a) had better b) had better not
   c) had better not to d) not had better

2 must/mustn't + inf.

استخدامات Must

1 **Rules and laws:** القوانين والقواعد العامة:
All drivers must have a valid licence.
Students must be silent during the written exam.

2 **Necessity:** الضرورة:
You must study hard. (It is necessary to study hard.)
Plants must get enough light and water to grow properly.

3 **Strong advice:** نصيحة قوية:
You must stop smoking to keep healthy.
You must check the engine before driving.



4 **Warm invitations:** دعـوات حـارة:

You must come to my birthday party. It will be tomorrow.
You must have lunch with us. I will wait for you.

5 **Strong feelings:** المشاعـر القويـة:

I must buy a present for my mother's birthday.
We must phone Noha to ask about her mother as she is ill.

بدائـل Must

يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة بنفس معنى must لاحظ التالى:

	It is a necessity to + inf.	It is a necessity to get up early.
must + inf.	It is a must + to + inf.	It is a must to get up early.
You must get up early.	It is necessary to + inf.	It is necessary to get up early.
	Obj. (اسم شخص) (am – is – are) obliged to + inf.	Ali is obliged to get up early.

الفرق بيـن must و have to للتعبيرعـن الإلـزام:

1 **must** إلـزام ومشاعـر داخلية من المتكلم

I must study my lessons to get high marks.
I must train well to win the match.

2 **have to** إلزام خارجى مفروض على الشخص فى موقف معين وليس لديه خيار

I have to work from 8:30 to 5:30 every day.
You have to wear the school uniform when going to your school.

– لاحظ الفرق بينهما فى السؤال:

السـؤال بـ «هـل»	Must + subject فاعل + inf. + ...? Must I turn right here? Do/Does + subject فاعل + have to + inf. + ...? Do you have to wear a tie?
السـؤال بأداة استفـهام	Wh- word أداة استفهام + must + subject فاعل + inf. + ...? What must I do to avoid paying a fine غرامة? Wh- word أداة استفهام + do/does + subject فاعل + have to + inf. + ...? What does he have to do to avoid paying a fine?

لاحظ يستخدم التركيب التالى للتعبير عن الضرورة:

Subject فاعل + v. to be + to + inf. + ...

Nada is to cook the food early.

استخدامات Mustn't

1 للتعبير عن التحريم (شيء خطير أو ضد القانون).

You mustn't park your car here. It is not allowed.
You mustn't smoke in petrol stations. It is against law.

2 للتعبير عن النصيحة القوية.

You mustn't stay up late as it is bad for your health.
You mustn't waste your time in vain.

بدائل Mustn't

يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة بنفس معنى mustn't لاحظ التالى:

mustn't + inf.

You mustn't smoke in hospitals.

It is (forbidden/banned/prohibited/illegal) to + inf.

It is (forbidden/banned/prohibited/illegal) to smoke in hospitals.

It is not permitted to + inf.

It is not permitted to smoke in hospitals.

Subject فاعل + (am – is – are) not allowed/permitted to + inf.

You are not allowed/permitted to smoke in hospitals.

Subject فاعل + (am – is – are) (banned/prohibited/forbidden) from + v-ing

You are (banned/prohibited/forbidden) from smoking in hospitals.

لاحظ

من الممكن استخدام can't + inf. بدلاً من mustn't + inf. للتعبير عن المنع.

You can't smoke in hospitals.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... try this cake. It is really delicious.

a) needn't b) mustn't
c) must d) suggest

2. The bus is about to leave. We .... hurry to catch it.

a) must b) mustn't
c) may d) needn't

3. Do you .... wear those shoes at work? Are they part of the dress code?

a) should b) must
c) have to d) could

4. Businessmen .... pay their taxes every year as it is the country's law.

a) has to b) don't have to
c) must d) should

5. Menna and Marwan .... be home at eight. That's a family rule.

a) has to b) can
c) have to d) could

Practice... Language General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Merna's sight is not good. She .... wear glasses for reading. It is my advice.
a) needs b) ought c) ought to d) shouldn't

2. I think you .... do more exercise to keep fit.
a) ought b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't

3. This shirt is very tight, you .... to try another one.
a) should b) must c) ought d) are banned

4. You .... wash your hands before and after meals.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) must d) might

5. You .... drive very carefully near schools as there are a lot of children.
a) must b) are advisable c) shouldn't d) mustn't

6. You .... talk to your parents kindly. It is polite to do so.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) must d) may

7. When you come to Cairo again, you .... come and see us.
a) should b) must c) has to d) ought

8. You .... play chess. You will enjoy it very much.
a) have to b) can't c) should d) need to

9. I .... arrive at school on time. It is a rule.
a) should b) am allowed to c) mustn't d) have to

10. I .... write to my brother. I haven't written to him for long.
a) have to b) must c) mustn't d) shouldn't

11. Students .... forget their teacher's instructions, or they will be punished.
a) oughtn't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) should

12. Oh! It is midnight, I .... go now, or I will not find any means of transport.
a) should b) need c) must d) mustn't

13. The sign says, "No smoking!". This means you .... smoke.
a) should b) can c) mustn't d) shouldn't

14. What .... I do if I have a difficult problem? Really, I need your advice.
a) might b) should c) ought d) ought to

15. If you are not well, you .... ask Yousra to do the housework instead.
a) mustn't b) ought c) had better d) would better

16. It's said here in the law book, "Cars .... have an inspection every three years before the registration can be renewed."
a) must b) needn't c) have to d) need to

17. The baby is asleep and I want to do the housework. You .... shout.
a) should b) must c) needn't d) mustn't

18. You .... drive fast in the city centre. It is really dangerous.
a) must b) don't have to c) are inadvisable to d) mustn't

19. You .... to wear your shoes inside the mosque as it is prohibited.
a) need b) are not allowed c) shouldn't d) hadn't better

20. You .... walk off when the teacher is speaking to you. It is impolite.
a) should b) are prohibited c) had better d) mustn't

21. You .... have the ID renewed next week. The registration expires soon.
a) needn't b) had to c) have to d) need

22. This site is very dangerous to kids, they .... be here.
a) must b) can't c) should d) ought not

23. You .... go to bed early to be in good health. Longman
a) would like b) would prefer c) prefer d) had better

24. You .... keep away from uncovered electric wires or you will be electrocuted تصعق. Longman
a) ought not b) mustn't c) ought d) must

25. It is compulsory إجبارى to follow school rules. It is .... to do this. Longman
a) unimportant b) inadvisable c) necessary d) forbidden

26. Is it a/an .... to wear gloves before I start work in this factory? Longman
a) necessary b) must c) advisable d) advice

27. Your paragraph must .... to correct your mistakes. Longman
a) to be rewritten b) be rewriting c) rewrite d) be rewritten

28. You .... eat any food that smells bad. It is harmful. (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)
a) mustn't b) must c) should d) shouldn't

29. You .... smoke in petrol stations. It is very dangerous. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر)
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) needn't d) must

30. Students mustn't use their mobile phones during the lessons. This means it's .... (الشرقية - العاشر من رمضان)
a) forbidden b) not necessary c) necessary d) optional

31. Drivers of motorcycles .... wear helmets. (الشرقية - مشتول)
a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) ought

32. I advise my brother not to eat a lot of carbohydrates. This means he .... eat a lot of carbohydrates. (الشرقية - الإبراهيمية)
a) would rather b) should
c) ought not d) had better not

Test yourself Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. All the furniture was covered in .... when we travelled abroad for years.
a) dust b) blood c) tissue d) soil

2. I live on the last .... of a large block of flats. It is very hot during the day.
a) earth b) ground c) land d) floor

3. I could help the injured man because I had learnt a lot about ....
a) hospitality b) first aid c) hygiene d) danger

4. The patient's name was .... in the waiting list for the operation.
a) included b) consisted c) contained d) concluded

5. He is a/an .... engineer and can help you with your problem.
a) electric b) electrical c) allergic d) plumber

6. One of my daughters has a/an .... to strawberry. Her face gets red once she eats it.
a) emergency b) health c) allergy d) sense

7. Hatem inhaled استنشق the smoke and couldn't stop ....
a) laughing b) coughing c) sniffing d) spreading

8. Pets can .... certain bacteria, viruses and fungi فطريات that can cause illness if transmitted to humans.
a) make b) carry c) invent d) discover

9. To prevent .... bacteria in the air, all of us should use tissues when sneezing or coughing.
a) publishing b) spreading c) moving d) spraying

10. The teacher .... deeply before speaking again. It was clear that he was very angry.
a) breathed b) smiled c) looked d) sneezed

11. She is .... well to the new treatment. She may be better in two days.
a) replying b) agreeing c) responding d) answering

12. There are no carpets, so you don't have to .... your shoes.
a) take off b) get on c) put out d) put on

13. It is a good thing to put food waste in a .... bin away from other waste.
a) same b) separate c) disconnected d) polluted

14. I want to spend more time .... my family. I love them very much.
a) by b) to c) in d) with

15. You should wash your hands with .... water after playing in the street.
a) soup b) soap c) soapy d) dusty

Language

16. You .... show your identity card كارت الهوية before you enter the conference tomorrow.
a) won't have to b) had to c) didn't have to d) will have to

17. You shouldn't waste your time watching too much TV; it's .... to do so or you will harm your eyes.
a) inadvisable b) advisable c) necessary d) allowed

18. Does my son .... take this medicine, doctor?
a) has to b) must c) have to d) should

19. It is .... to sleep early and get up early to have good health.
a) allowed b) advisable c) forbidden d) banned

20. No one .... to smoke in public places. It is forbidden.
a) isn't allowed b) is allowed c) is banned d) are allowed

21. It is a/an .... to sleep early to be able to get up early.
a) prohibition b) advice c) necessity d) necessary

22. We .... forget that we have an important meeting tomorrow.
a) aren't allowed b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) mustn't

23. It is really a good place. You .... visit it with your family.
a) need b) should c) better d) ought

24. When you go to Egypt, you .... visit the Pyramids. They are fantastic!
a) needn't b) must c) have d) need to

25. They all .... be careful to avoid danger on the working site tomorrow.
a) will have to b) had to c) need d) ought

26. The deadline for university applications is next week. I .... finish my papers as soon as possible.
a) needn't b) must c) have to d) need

27. Which of the following doesn't show advice?
a) It's advisable to wear cotton clothes in the winter.
b) You should follow these tips to avoid making mistakes.
c) It's very necessary to follow the coach's instructions.
d) You ought to be more careful when crossing the street.

28. You mustn't eat too much sugar. This is ....
a) an obligation b) a suggestion c) strong advice d) a rule

29. You mustn't park your car here. This means that ....
a) you are allowed to park here b) you have to park here
c) parking is banned here d) you are free to park here

30. It is forbidden to leave school early without permission. This means that ....
a) you mustn't leave school early without permission
b) you shouldn't leave school early without permission
c) you should have left school early without permission
d) it is permitted to leave school early without permission

Study... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4





Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

blanket (n)	بطانية	evacuate (v) – d	يخلى (مكانًا)	wrap (v) – ped	يلف/يغلف
burn (n) (v)	حرق/يحرق	immediately (adv)	فى الحال		

Vocabulary on Reading Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة

back (n)	ظهر	fire (n)	حريق	injured (adj)	مصاب
complain (v) – ed	يشكو	happen (v) – ed	يحدث	offer (v) – ed	يعرض/يقدم عرضًا
cut (v) (n)	يجرح/جرح (صغير)	health problems (n)	مشاكل صحية	pressure (n)	ضغط
damage (n)	تلف	hurt (v)	يؤلم/يؤذى	remember (v) – ed	يتذكر

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

apologise (v) – d	يعتذر	explain (v) – ed	يشرح	serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
argument (n)	جدال	helmet (n)	خوذة	smell (n) (v)	رائحة/يشم
beach (n)	شاطئ (بلاج)	plaster (n)	لاصق طبى/ضمادة	still (adj)	هادئ/ثابت
borrow (v) – ed	يستلف	realise (v) – d	يدرك		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In a/an .... case, we must stay calm to decide on the best action to take.
a) argument b) emergency c) evacuation d) fact

2. Can you .... something burning in the kitchen?
a) borrow b) touch c) explain d) smell

3. My friends describe me as a .... man because I don't like jokes.
a) serious b) kind c) funny d) humorous

4. It took the teacher a while to .... that two of his students were absent.
a) organise b) recognise c) complain d) realise

5. Alaa .... the bread while heating it. The smoke was everywhere.
a) happened b) wrapped c) burnt d) cut

6. I must .... for cancelling the meeting as the manager is very ill.
a) remember b) apologise c) realise d) explain

7. We should put a .... on the cut, so that it doesn't get infected.
a) helmet b) plaster c) poster d) post

8. Salem always .... about how he's treated at work. He doesn't feel good there.
a) evacuates b) learns c) agrees d) complains

9. My neighbour .... to buy my old bike for L.E. 500.
a) presented b) forgot c) offered d) followed

10. Can you .... what the poem means?
a) wrap b) grow c) evacuate d) explain

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة	decide on	يقرر بشأن	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
at the weekend	فى نهاية الأسبوع	get to	يصل إلى	take action	يتخذ إجراء
get angry	يغضب	help with	يساعد فى	on fire	محترق
have an argument with	لديه جدال مع	make/commit a mistake	يخطئ	put ... on	يضع ... على
have problems	لديه مشكلات	make sure	يتأكد	sorry for	يأسف على
come up	يأتى/يحدث قريبًا	put pressure on	يضغط على	keep still	يبقى ثابتًا
complain about/of	يشكو بشأن	receive advice	يتلقى نصيحة		

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apologise	يعتذر	apology	اعتذار	apologetic	اعتذارى/تبريرى
argue	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلى
burn	يحرق	burn burner	حرق موقد	burning	مشتعل/شديد الحرارة
complain	يشكو	complaint	شكوى	----------------------	
evacuate	يخلى (مكانًا)	evacuation evacuee	إخلاء مُرحَّل	evacuative	إخلائى
explain	يشرح	explanation	شرح	explanatory	تفسيرى
injure	يصيب	injury	إصابة	injured	مصاب

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

You should apologise for repeating the mistake. (v)

I accept your apology, but don't repeat this mistake. (n)

Your apologetic words are enough for me. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
argument	جدال	disagreement/debate	agreement/harmony	اتفاق/انسجام
evacuate	يخلي (مكانًا)	abandon/empty/leave	remain/stay	يظل
immediately	في الحال	at once/instantly	later/eventually	فيما بعد
realise	يدرك	understand/grasp	misunderstand/confuse	يسيء الفهم
serious	خطير	dangerous/hazardous	safe/secure	غير خطير
wrap	يلف	cover/enclose	uncover/reveal	يكشف

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the neighbours complained .... the noise during the party.
   a) from b) to c) about d) by
2. We must help anyone immediately after they ask us for help. The synonym of the word "immediately" is ....
   a) later b) at once c) eventually d) latter
3. The neighbours evacuated the block of flats in 20 minutes. The antonym of the word "evacuated" is ....
   a) stayed b) lived c) painted d) damaged
4. The verb "realise" is similar in meaning to the verb ....
   a) cover b) understand c) misunderstand d) remain
5. There are .... notes at the end of each chapter.
   a) explain b) explains c) explainer d) explanatory
6. I always .... angry when my students make mistakes.
   a) put b) make c) get d) come

7. The government found that the .... of people from the area near the volcano is necessary.

a) evacuate b) evacuation c) evacuated d) evacuates

8. My brother .... a mistake and called the wrong number.

a) did b) got c) had d) made

9. We called the firefighters immediately as the house was .... fire.

a) in b) on c) at d) for

Reading Text (1)

A Friend's Problem

To : (name)

Subject : Advice

Dear ....,

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice[1]. Do you remember my neighbour, Mrs Zeinab? She had an accident last year and now she doesn't go out much. It isn't easy for her to clean[2]. I went to her flat yesterday and the bins were full. The floor and kitchen were dirty, too. She complained about her back hurting and I think she needs help, but I have a lot of exams coming up. What do you think I should do?

I hope you can help me.

Best wishes,

....



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة advice لا تجمع والمفرد منها a piece of advice.

٢- هذا التعبير بمعنى ليس من السهل على (شخص) فعل شىء It isn't easy for ... to + inf.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



Amir's Problem

To : Amir **Subject** : Help!

Hi Amir,

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me[1] about the argument you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that[2] you are sorry for getting angry. Stay calm and explain that he should ask you before he borrows your things. I'm sure he will realise that he made a mistake and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk[3] to him tomorrow? I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was planning to clean my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot about it! The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow[4] and the house is really dirty. There's dust everywhere and there's a strange smell in the kitchen! What should I do? Help!

Regards,
Maher



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة told الماضى من tell ويأتى بعدها شخص.
٢- كلمة say والماضى said لا يأتى بعدهما شخص.
٣- أسلوب لتقديم اقتراح Why don't you + inf.?
٤- استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالات الترتيب.

Video Script



Safe Cooking

We need food to live, but if our food isn't prepared hygienically, we can have some serious health problems[1]. That's the reason why food hygiene is very important, both in restaurants and shops, and at home.

Before you start cooking, you must wash your hands, so that there are no bacteria on them. If you have long hair, you should tie it up so no hairs will go into the food you're cooking. After that, you can take your ingredients, knives and other equipment and start preparing the food. You must wash fruit and vegetables first. You mustn't touch the metal part of the knife while you're using it.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ استخدام كلمة health وليس healthy للإشارة للمشاكل الصحية.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	realise	يدرك	I suddenly realised that the boy was crying.
	recognise	يتعرف على	I hadn't seen her for ten years, but I recognised her immediately.
2	complain that + subject + verb + ...	يشكو أن	She complained that no one had been at the airport to meet her.
	complain of/about	يشكو من	- Nora has been complaining of severe headaches. - She complains about not feeling appreciated at work.
	complain to	يشكو إلى	Neighbours complained to the police about the dogs barking.
3	evacuate from	يخلي ... من	The government evacuated the families from the old house.
	evacuate to	يخلي ... إلى	The government evacuated the families to new houses.
4	borrow يستلف/يستعير borrow .. (شيء) .. from .. (شخص) borrow .. (شيء)		- Can I borrow your book, please? - I want to borrow a laptop from Amr because I need to study.
	lend يسلف/يعير lend .. (شيء) .. to .. (شخص) lend .. (شيء) شخص		- Can you lend me your book, please? - I will lend my laptop to Ahmed because he wants to study.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The moment I saw her, I .... that she was very angry.
   a) recognised b) complained c) accompanied d) realised
2. As a result of the earthquake, a lot of people were evacuated .... their houses.
   a) from b) to c) in d) by
3. During the war, Sam and his family were evacuated .... Scotland to live there.
   a) from b) with c) to d) at
4. I .... one of my old friends as soon as we met in the market.
   a) recognised b) failed c) made d) realised
5. Hashim .... me his bike when mine broke down.
   a) lent b) borrowed c) borrowed from d) lent it to

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Workbook

1. During fires, buildings should be .... to save people from dangers.
   a) evacuated b) burnt c) wrapped d) damaged
2. They have to leave .... to catch the train to Alexandria.
   a) gradually b) regularly c) immediately d) presently
3. The earthquake has caused much .... to our houses.
   a) argument b) damage c) savage d) complaint
4. In summer, we do not need ...., as the weather is hot.
   a) fans b) blankets c) clothes d) water
5. Waleed spent the evening .... the presents for the party.
   a) wrapping b) burning c) breaking d) explaining
6. Ask your teacher for .... on how to prepare for the exam.
   a) mistake b) action c) argument d) advice
7. Baher's .... leg prevented him from playing the final match.
   a) serious b) offer c) injured d) angry
8. Ahmed never .... about his work, but he's obviously exhausted.
   a) arranges b) complains c) realises d) competes
9. After the fire, my neighbour was taken to hospital with serious ....
   a) compliments b) burns c) borders d) dots
10. I think you should .... to your brother for wasting his time.
    a) complain b) apologise c) realise d) show
11. It is very risky to ride your bike without wearing a ....
    a) helmet b) blanket c) complaint d) plaster
12. My father was so ill and doctors said that his condition was .... but stable.
    a) serious b) injured c) burning d) apologetic

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

13. You should start studying hard. Exams are coming ....
    a) on b) in c) apart d) up
14. To feel relaxed, you shouldn't let others .... pressure on you.
    a) take b) make c) put d) cause
15. We had a/an .... with the waiter about the bill. They added more taxes.
    a) agreement b) statement c) advice d) argument
16. Have you ever seen a building .... fire? I think it is very scary.
    a) in b) at c) with d) on

17. Galal was sorry .... making such a mistake.
a) to b) with c) at d) for

18. You must decide .... your goals and try to reach them.
a) to b) on c) with d) at

19. It is advisable for students to .... calm in the exam room.
a) take b) stay c) come d) make

20. Karam always helps his wife .... the housework. He is very kind.
a) at b) with c) from d) of

21. There are some jobs suitable for those who have ....problems, especially those who can't stand for a long time.
a) unhealthy b) healthily c) health d) healthy

22. A lot of guests .... about the bad room service in the hotel. Longman
a) thanked b) complained c) corrected d) planned

23. Can I .... your digital camera for two days, please? Longman
a) borrow b) lend c) owe d) think

24. We always .... birthday presents in colourful paper. (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)
a) burn b) wrap c) fix d) research

25. He often .... about not feeling appreciated by his co-workers. (المنيا)
a) realises b) confirms c) suggests d) complains

26. On hearing the alarm, ... the building. (القاهرة-منطقة بدر)
a) evacuate b) burn c) lift d) damage

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

27. The government should find a solution to the serious problem of unemployment. The antonyms of the word "serious" are ....
a) hazardous b) safe c) dangerous d) secure e) empty

28. My dad doesn't get into any arguments. The synonyms of the word "argument" are ....
a) contract b) disagreement c) agreement d) debate e) harmony

29. When I told my father that I got low marks, he .... very angry.
a) fell b) got c) gave d) did e) became

30. Because of the fire, the police gave the order to .... the area.
a) remain b) uncover c) understand d) evacuate e) empty

31. The present was beautifully .... in gold paper.
a) remained b) evacuated c) wrapped d) confused e) covered

32. You've .... a bad mistake, Peter.
a) done b) committed c) thought d) made e) remembered



1 Necessity الضـــرورة

يمكن التعبير عن الضرورة بعدة طرق فى المضارع والماضى والمستقبل، لاحظ:

PRESENT المضارع

It is necessary for ... to + inf.
It is necessary for you to wear a helmet.

has/have (got) to + inf.
You have (got) to wear a helmet when you drive a motorbike.

need(s) to + inf.
You need to wear a helmet when you drive a motorbike.

PAST الماضى

It was necessary for ... to + inf.
It was necessary for them to leave early.

had to + inf.
They had to leave early in order not to miss the train.

FUTURE المستقبل

It will be necessary for ... + to + inf.
It will be necessary for you to show your passport.

will have to + inf.
You will have to show your passport to the officer at the airport.

2 Lack of Necessity غياب الضـــرورة

يمكن التعبير عن عدم وجود الضرورة بعدة طرق فى المضارع والماضى والمستقبل، لاحظ:

PRESENT المضارع

It isn't necessary for ... to + inf.
She isn't late for school, so it isn't necessary for her to hurry.

(don't/doesn't) have to + inf.
She isn't late for school, so she doesn't have to hurry.

(don't/doesn't) need to + inf.
She isn't late for school, so she doesn't need to hurry.

needn't + inf.
She isn't late for school, so she needn't hurry.

PAST الماضي

لاحظ الفرق بين التعبيرات التالية :

It wasn't necessary for … to + inf.
It wasn't necessary for him to buy a new mobile.

didn't have to + inf. لم يكن مضطرًا ولم يقُم بالفعل
He didn't have to buy a new mobile.

needn't have + P.P. لم يكن مضطرًا وقام بالفعل
He needn't have bought a new mobile.

didn't need to + inf. لم يكن مضطرًا والفعل قد يكون تم أو لا
He didn't need to buy a new mobile.

FUTURE المستقبل

It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.
It won't be necessary for Ali to attend the party next week.

won't have to + inf.
Ali won't have to attend the party next week.

won't need to + inf.
Ali won't need to attend the party next week.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In summer, you .... use the air conditioner.
a) needn't b) mustn't
c) need to d) don't have to

2. We are in a petrol station; you .... use a lighter.
a) don't need b) have to
c) mustn't d) don't have to

3. You have got the needed amount of money. You .... get a loan قرض.
a) should b) must
c) needn't d) doesn't have to

4. When we were children, we didn't have emails, so we .... write letters.
a) had to b) must
c) have to d) has to

5. It is a national holiday tomorrow, so I .... to school.
a) needn't have gone b) won't have to go
c) mustn't have gone d) must have gone

Regret & Blaming
النــدم واللــوم

يمكن التعبير عن النـدم على فعـل شـيء أو عـدم فعـله بالطـرق التـالـية:

1 **should/ought to have + P.P.** كان ينبغى القيام بالفعل ولم يتـم

You should have studied your lessons hard.

= It was wrong of ... (not) to + inf.

It was wrong of you not to study your lessons hard.

2 **shouldn't have + P.P.** لم يكن ينبغى القيام بالفعل ولكنه تـم

You shouldn't have wasted your time.

= It was wrong of ... to + inf.

It was wrong of you to waste your time.



Extra Points

نقـاط إضافية مشابهـة للتراكيب السابقـة:

Past Possibility
الإمكـانيـة فى الماضى

1 **could have + P.P.** للتعبير عن حدث كان بالمقدور فعله ولكن لم يحدث.

I could have taken the bus, but I preferred to take a taxi.

You could have gone out last night; you got lazy and sat lonely.

Past Impossibility
الاستحالة فى الماضى

2 **couldn't have + P.P.** للتعبير عن حدث كان من المستحيل حدوثه ولم يحـدث.

He couldn't have attended the wedding party. He died many years ago.

She couldn't have stolen the money. She was abroad at the time of the robbery.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They didn't win the match. They .... well and hard to win.
- a) must have trained
- b) needn't have trained
- c) ought train
- d) should have trained

2. Your writing is full of mistakes. You .... it hastily بشكل متسرع.
- a) should have done
- b) shouldn't have done
- c) could have done
- d) will have to do

3. I travelled by train, but I .... by car.
- a) might have travelled
- b) could travel
- c) could have travelled
- d) can travel



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... drive over 100 km an hour on this road. It is against the law.
   a) might b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) must
2. We have already cleaned the house. You .... clean it again.
   a) need to b) don't need to c) mustn't d) needed
3. Your train leaves after 8 hours, you .... prepare your luggage now. We're still early.
   a) must b) have to c) needn't d) shouldn't
4. I .... to school yesterday as it was Friday. I stayed in bed all day.
   a) needn't have gone b) didn't have to go
   c) must go d) had to go
5. You .... repair the machine while it is connected to the electricity.
   a) don't have to b) needn't c) mustn't d) don't need to
6. You .... drive the car. You are only thirteen and this is illegal.
   a) should b) must c) shouldn't d) mustn't
7. I ran fast to catch the train, which was late, and I waited for long. I ....
   a) didn't have to hurry b) needn't hurry
   c) should have hurried d) shouldn't have hurried
8. You .... shouted at my little son. I will never forgive you.
   a) can't have b) should have
   c) may have d) shouldn't have
9. Young men in Egypt .... do their military service الخدمة العسكرية. It is their duty.
   a) has to b) must c) should d) may
10. Never mind, my dear. You really .... more bread as we already have enough.
   a) needn't have bought b) didn't have to buy
   c) had to buy d) mustn't buy
11. I felt a lot better yesterday, so I .... to see a doctor.
   a) needn't b) mustn't c) needn't have d) didn't have
12. I can do my work on my own. I .... get help.
   a) needn't b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) don't need
13. My daughter got a very low mark in the exam. She .... more and it was wrong of her.
   a) must have studied b) ought to have studied
   c) shouldn't have studied d) needn't study
14. You .... buy a new suit for the wedding. I can give you mine.
   a) don't have to b) needn't to c) mustn't d) aren't allowed
15. You .... eat this food. It is poisonous مسمم and you will be ill or dead.
   a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) needn't

16. I .... to buy my daughter a present as it was her birthday.
a) ought to remember
b) should remember
c) should have remembered
d) shouldn't have remembered

17. Smoking in public places and public transport is not ....
a) allowed
b) banned
c) necessary
d) advisable

18. You .... swim in this area because there are sharks.
a) must
b) needn't
c) can
d) mustn't

19. I think the accident is your own mistake. It's a residential سكنية area; you .... driven slowly.
a) should have
b) shouldn't have
c) must have
d) mustn't have

20. We .... cooperate to reduce pollution. It would be a good idea for us.
a) have to
b) mustn't
c) ought
d) should

21. We .... have a license to drive a car.
a) should
b) mustn't
c) don't have to
d) have to

22. You .... eat so much fat; you'll be sick.
a) must
b) mustn't
c) don't have to
d) ought to

23. I .... my friend in the hospital before returning home last night.
a) had to visit
b) have to visit
c) must be visited
d) had to be visited

24. Radwan didn't pass his exams. He .... hard for them.
a) should study
b) had to study
c) should have studied
d) can't study

25. It .... necessary to check out before 12 p.m., so I had to leave on time. Longman
a) is
b) will be
c) was
d) wasn't

26. They all .... be careful to avoid danger on the working site last time. Longman
a) have to
b) had to
c) needed
d) should

27. Which of the following doesn't show lack of necessity? Longman
a) You needn't hurry; you aren't late.
b) It isn't important to rewrite your composition.
c) We don't have to sleep early; tomorrow is a holiday.
d) He had to tell the police about that accident.

28. Which of the following isn't structurally correct? Longman
a) You ought to not neglect your work.
b) What should I do to improve my language skills?
c) Do I have to finish the task before Monday?
d) You mustn't smoke in a public place.

29. He has plenty of time, so he .... hurry. (الجيزة - أطفيح)
a) doesn't need
b) don't need to
c) hasn't got
d) needn't

30. You .... go to the party if you don't feel like it. (الشرقية - القنايات)
a) need to
b) mustn't
c) don't have to
d) have to

31. You .... here as it's a military area so you have to pay a fine. (الشرقية - ديرب نجم)
a) had to park
b) mustn't have parked
c) shouldn't have parked
d) didn't have to park

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Sameh .... his back while playing football last week.
a) burnt b) complained c) hurt d) got

2. Let's meet .... the weekend to have a conversation.
a) in b) of c) at d) when

3. Why don't .... a party next Thursday?
a) have b) having c) to having d) we have

4. After I finished cooking, I .... the chicken in foil not to get cool.
a) wrapped b) explained c) evacuated d) injured

5. You can't come onto the building site unless you are wearing a ....
a) shirt b) blanket c) helmet d) heading

6. Crime is an increasingly .... problem in our society.
a) series b) serious c) pleasant d) terrific

7. I owe you a/an .... as I forgot to send the report. I am so sorry.
a) apology b) complement c) complaint d) agreement

8. Kareem came downstairs after his shower, ... in a towel.
a) realised b) stopped c) wrapped d) helmeted

9. Once, I .... a piece of advice which changed my whole life completely.
a) received b) caught c) held d) gave

10. We should put cold water on burns ....
a) surprisingly b) differently c) immediately d) difficultly

11. The teacher asked the students to .... the poem.
a) separate b) explain c) complain d) breathe

12. The earthquake caused .... to the country estimated at 1,000,000 pounds.
a) danger b) adventure c) break d) damage

13. There was a/an .... between my parents about our expenses. They had two different opinions.
a) agreement b) apology c) complaint d) argument

14. I tried to .... calm during the funeral of my dad despite my great sorrow.
a) pay b) stay c) make d) do

15. Please don't .... angry with me. It wasn't my fault.
a) get b) make c) have d) keep

Language

16. I .... phone my father more often as he is very ill and it is very important for him.

a) can b) need c) must d) might

17. I really .... out yesterday. It was raining heavily and I got wet.

a) didn't have to go b) needn't go c) can't have gone d) shouldn't have gone

18. It .... for all of our students to come to school last week to share in the fun day.

a) had to b) was necessary c) is necessary d) was must

19. It was .... of you to sleep late. You should have slept early.

a) forbidden b) necessary c) advisable d) wrong

20. We .... umbrellas yesterday. It didn't rain at all and they cost too much money.

a) needn't have bought b) didn't have to buy c) mustn't buy d) had to buy

21. You had a lot of problems as I told you. You .... to my advice.

a) have listened b) ought not to have listened c) should have listened d) mustn't have listened

22. It is .... to eat healthy food to keep fit.

a) necessity b) necessary c) must d) forbidden

23. I think you .... do some sports to be healthy. I only advise you.

a) ought b) can't c) might d) had better

24. You .... go into this building. It is impossible as it is a military building.

a) needn't b) can't c) should d) must

25. You .... study history at school this year. It is a basic subject.

a) should b) have to c) mustn't d) need

26. I'm sorry I couldn't come yesterday. I .... travel as my brother was ill.

a) had to b) must c) need to d) have to

27. You .... take that bus. There's another one in ten minutes.

a) don't have to b) mustn't c) can't d) don't need

28. Dad worked very late last night. You .... wake him up early today.

a) needn't b) must c) mustn't d) need to

29. Tomorrow, I .... travel to Cairo to meet my boss.

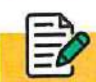
a) will need b) will have to c) had to d) could have

30. A timetable .... be set for finishing our work. This is necessary.

a) mustn't b) can't c) should d) must

Study... Part 3 | Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



Writing Skill

Writing tips

What to do if there is a fire:
There are some tips you will need during a house fire.

1 Get the fire extinguisher طفاية الحريق.
2 Raise an alarm to inform others in the house.
3 Call the fire department.
4 Leave valuables behind and never delay to find them.
5 Always crawl and keep yourself close to the ground.
6 Cover your nose with a wet towel فوطة مبللة.
7 Close the doors behind you once you leave the house.
8 Once you leave the burning house, stay out and don't return.

MODEL ESSAY

An essay about what to do in a fire

Introduction

Fires are very dangerous and scary. They cause a lot of damage and destruction, as well as injuries and deaths. Always remember to stay calm to be able to call for help. You have to know how to stay safe if a fire breaks out in your house. And to prevent a house fire from causing severe damage, you need some tips which can help you stay safe.

Main body

So, here are some tips that you will need if there is a fire in your house; firstly, you should go for your fire extinguisher if you hear the sound of the fire alarm and don't ignore it. Secondly, you should do anything to inform others in the house that there is a fire; by screaming or using the alarm. Thirdly, you must then pick up your phone and call the fire department to come immediately. Fourthly, you mustn't wait to find the valuable things; you must escape at once. Above all, you should cover your nose with a shirt or a wet towel to prevent smoke from entering your lungs. Once you get out of the house, you should close the doors to prevent fire from spreading outside the house.

Conclusion

In conclusion, you should behave sensibly and fast at the same time. You may get suffocated تختنق by the smoke and endanger your life unless you keep away and wait for the firefighters until they reach to put out the fire and save whatever you left behind.

Practice... Skills Exercises



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة في
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

How often do you use the internet for school projects and to help with your homework? Some students don't think about where information comes from online. This can be risky because there is a lot of false information on the internet. It is important to remember to use websites that you can trust.

You should also think about when the information on the website was written. When you are researching history, the information can be old, but it can still be accurate. However, if you are looking for something about science and technology or the latest news, you should check the date on the website.

It is important to look for the most recent information. Paying attention to the website address is also helpful. If the site is from the government or somewhere like a university, the address ends with "gov" or "edu". You can trust these sites. Finally, good websites usually include links to other sites on similar topics. This means you can check the information in more than one place.

The most important thing to remember is to think critically. Don't believe everything you read; don't stop at the first website you find, and always search for more websites until you make sure that the information has been approved by many people. It's important not to spread false information as well.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Trusted websites don't ....
- a) provide links to related websites
- b) include the symbol of an organisation
- c) ask you to provide personal information
- d) provide information from different sources

2. Links to other sites are helpful because ....
- a) you can find more information
- b) other sites are usually better
- c) comparing the information is a good way to check
- d) both a & c

3. The antonym of the underlined word "accurate" is by adding the prefix "......................".
- a) un-
- b) dis-
- c) mis-
- d) in-

4. Which of the following sentences is not true?
- a) Don't use untrusted websites.
- b) Always look for recent information.
- c) All the information is fake.
- d) Always check the information.

5. The main idea of the passage is "......................".
a) The pros and cons of the internet
b) Information helps us to think
c) Technology in education
d) How to get trusted information on the internet

6. It is important to check the information on the internet because ....
a) a lot of it is accurate
b) a lot of it is false
c) we want to get high marks
d) it is trusted

7. It is important to check the date of the information as it tells you about ....
a) the accuracy of the information
b) the quality of the author
c) the security of the website
d) the scam of the internet

(B) Translation

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. We have to take great care of trees as they help to keep the balance of nature and as scientists say, "Trees help the earth to breathe".

a) يجب علينا أن نهتم كثيرًا بالنباتات لأنها تساعد على تطور الطبيعة ولأن العلماء يقولون «تساعد الأشجار الأرض على التنفس».
b) يجب علينا ألا نهتم كثيرًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد على توازن الطبيعة ولأن العلم يقول «تساعد الأشجار الأرض على التنفس».
c) يجب علينا أن نهتم كثيرًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد على توازن الطبيعة ولأن العلماء يقولون «تساعد الأشجار الأرض على التنفس».
d) يجب علينا أن نهتم كثيرًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد على توازن الحياة ولأن العلماء يقولون «تساعد الأشجار البيئة على التنفس».

2. Electricity has become a main part of our life. People can't do without it. We depend on electricity in almost all aspects of life.

a) لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا والناس لا تستطيع الاستغناء عنها ولا نعتمد عليها تقريبًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.
b) قد تصبح الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا فنحن لا نستطيع الاستغناء عنها ونعتمد عليها نادرًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.
c) لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا والناس لا تستطيع الاستغناء عنها ونعتمد عليها تقريبًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.
d) لقد أصبحت الإلكترونيات جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا فنحن لا نستطيع الاستغناء عنها ونعتمد عليها تقريبًا فى كل مجالات العمل.

3. It is known that energy and water are the basis and the arteries of life. All living things and machines can't live or work without them.

a) من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وأوردة الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والأجهزة لا تستطيع العيش أو العمل بدونهما.
b) من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وشرايين الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والآلات لا تستطيع العيش أو العمل بدونهما.
c) من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وشرايين الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والميكانيكا لا تستطيع العيش أو العمل بوجودهما.
d) من الغريب أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وشرايين الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والآلات لا تستطيع العيش أو الاستمرار بدونهما.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. لابد أن يكون للوالدين العادات الصحية السليمة وقواعد النظافة الشخصية حتى يتعلم الأطفال هذه العادات حيث إن الأطفال يقلدون آباءهم.

a) Parents must have good healthy habits and the rules of personal clean so that children can learn these habits as they repeat their parents.

b) Parents might have sound healthy habits and the roles of personal cleanliness so that children can learn these habits as children imitate their parents.

c) Parents should have good healthy habits and the rules of personnel cleanliness so that children might learn these habits as children imitate their parents.

d) Parents must have proper, healthy habits and personal hygiene rules in order for the children to learn them as they imitate their parents.

5. عادة ما تبذل الحكومة جهودًا كبيرة وقت الأزمات خاصة عند تعرض البلاد للكوارث الصحية مثل انتشار الفيروسات الخطيرة مثل فيروس كورونا.

a) The government usually exerts great effort at times of crises especially when the country is exposed to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses like COVID-19.

b) The government usually exert great efforts at times of crises especial when countries expose to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses as COVID-19.

c) The government usually exerts great efforts at times of crises especially when countries expose to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses like COVID-19.

d) The government usually exerts great efforts at times of crises especially when the country is exposed to healthy disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses as COVID-19.

6. من الضروري لأي إنسان أن يحافظ على نظافة البيئة المحيطة به وكذلك النظافة الشخصية حتى لا يتعرض للكثير من الأمراض المعدية.

a) It is necessary for any man to keep his surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to catch a lot of infected diseases.

b) It is unnecessary for any person to keep their surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to hold a lot of infectious diseases.

c) It is necessary for any person to keep their surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to catch a lot of infectious diseases.

d) It is must for any person to keep their surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to catch some infected diseases.

(C) Writing

3 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"How to avoid illnesses and infectious diseases"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Al-Azhar Corner



1 **Finish the following dialogue:**

Islam : What is your favourite hobby, Waleed?
Waleed : (1).. .
Islam : How long have you been playing chess?
Waleed : Since I was a child.
Islam : Really! (2)..?
Waleed : My father; he was a grandmaster.
Islam : (3)..?
Waleed : It is a title awarded to chess players by the world chess organisation.
Islam : (4)..?
Waleed : Yes, sure.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 **(A) Choose the correct answer:**

1. The Sunnah is the .... interpretation of the Qur'an.
a) practical b) semantical c) clinical d) rhetorical

2. There are clear .... and sources used in setting the rulings for Sharia.
a) rulers b) methodologies c) means d) tools

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the sourcebook of the Islamic principles and values?

4. How can we find the details and necessary explanations of the Qur'an?

The Novel

3 **(A) Choose the correct answer:**

1. He accepted the .... of the new company and decided to work for them.
a) mistake b) fool c) offer d) cook

2. My brother shows me all the .... that he's learned to do with his new magic set.
a) trials b) tricks c) tracks d) triangles

(B) Answer the following:

3. What colour is the Hispaniola's flag?

4. What happened after Captain Smollett left his ship?

4 **(A) Translate into Arabic:**

Did you know that the bottoms of your shoes can carry a lot of bacteria into your house?

(B) Translate into English:

- القرآن هو مصدر المبادئ والقيم والأحكام.

Unit 7 Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options: *(2 marks)*

1. The teacher .... explained the article and the students answered the questions fast.
   a) easily b) simply c) hard d) difficultly e) safely
2. Marwa found the keys at the bottom of her handbag. The antonyms of the word "bottom" are ....
   a) back b) rule c) base d) peak e) top

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *(12 marks)*

3. Mountain climbers need special .... in order to complete their mission properly.
   a) equalities b) quantities c) equipment d) apparatus
4. If I were you, I would not place too much .... in this bad man.
   a) trust b) doubt c) forgiveness d) prediction
5. The archaeologist tried to .... the ancient texts to uncover the cultural practices of the civilization.
   a) separate b) interpret c) remove d) contain
6. We are really in need of many .... measures on our roads.
   a) equipment b) safety c) chopping d) possibility
7. I have a/an .... to certain foods, so I can't eat any of them.
   a) emergency b) sense c) allergy d) experience
8. When I entered the room after a long time, I began to blow the .... off the books.
   a) mist b) dust c) soil d) earth
9. .... I type this report now?
   a) Ought b) Ought to c) Did d) Must
10. I was very nervous before the interview, though I .... Everyone was so friendly and I got the job.
    a) shouldn't have worried b) didn't have to worry
    c) can't have worried d) could have worry
11. We have a ten-day holiday. I .... wake up early for ten days!
    a) needn't b) must c) have to d) need to
12. Is it a/an...................... to wear gloves before I start work in this factory?
    a) necessary b) must c) advisable d) advice
13. I .... leave now so that I can catch the bus.
    a) would like b) would prefer c) prefer d) had better
14. You shouldn't waste your time watching too much TV; it's .... to do so.
    a) inadvisable b) advisable c) necessary d) allowed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: ***(7 marks)***

As I put my key into the keyhole, the door slid open. I left my house at about ten that morning after I had locked the door well. It immediately dawned on me that someone had broken into the house and the first thing I thought of doing was calling on my neighbour, Mr Hassan.

As soon as we got into the hall, we found that everything was in a terrible mess. There could be no doubt that the burglar had left nothing untouched. Before going on to inspect the rest of the house, I called the police.

Then we went into my bedroom. All my clothes were thrown all over the bed and the floor. The police officers arrived a few minutes later and made a thorough search and declared that the burglar must have been quite experienced, for he had even ransacked the kitchen cupboards. It would take me at least two days of hard work to find out whether anything had been stolen. Fortunately, I never used to leave money in the house and the only thing that they could have taken would be my watch, which I had left in the bathroom. We all went to the bathroom, only to find the watch there. Mr Hassan remarked that burglars never imagined they could possibly find anything valuable in a bathroom.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. When the writer reached his house, he found the door ....

a) bolted b) open c) locked d) unfastened

16. The underlined pronoun "we" refers to ....

a) the police officers
b) Mr Hassan and the writer
c) Mr Hassan and the police officer
d) Mr Hassan, the writer and the police officers

17. Burglars never imagined they could find .... things in a bathroom.

a) cheap b) inexpensive c) workless d) precious

18. What does the word "declared" in the last paragraph mean?

a) Guessed. b) Announced. c) Refused. d) Denied.

19. The police officers thought that the burglar was ....

a) foolish b) clever c) inexperienced d) rash

20. The writer left the house ....

a) in the morning b) at noon
c) in the evening d) in the afternoon

21. The writer and his neighbour called the police .... inspecting the house.

a) before b) after
c) at the same time of d) not mentioned

22. Choose the correct English translation: *(2 marks)*

- لقد أصبح الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة ضرورة ولذلك يجب على كل الأفراد والحكومات أن يتعاونوا لخلق بيئة صحية ونظيفة خالية من الأوبئة والأمراض.

a) Keeping the environment cleaning has become necessary, so all individuals and governments should cooperate to prevent a healthy and clean environment free of epidemics and diseases.

b) Keeping the environment clean has become necessary, so all individuals and governments needn't cooperate to create a health and clean environment free of epidemics and diseases.

c) Keep the environment clean has become must, so all individuals and governments should operate to create a healthy and clean environment full of epidemics and diseases.

d) Keeping the environment clean has become a must, so all individuals and governments should cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment free of epidemics and diseases.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation: *(2 marks)*

- Vitamins are very necessary for good health. It is known that their absence may cause serious diseases. Foods that contain vitamins are called protective foods.

a) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا للحصول على صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن حضورها قد يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة. والطعام الذى يحتوى على فيتامينات يسمى أطعمة وقائية.

b) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا من أجل صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة. والأطعمة التى تحتوى على فيتامينات تسمى بالأطعمة الوقائية.

c) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا من أجل صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضًا معدية. والغذاء الذى يحتوى على فيتامينات يسمى أطعمة مفيدة.

d) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا للحصول على صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة. والطعام الذى يحتوى على فيتامينات يسمى أطعمة إنتاجية.

24. Answer the following questions: *(1.5 marks)*

1. Do you think that Jim was careful or not? How do you know?
2. Silver, himself, thought that he wasn't an honest man. Illustrate this!
3. Do you think that Dr Livesy was a good man? Why?

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Keeping the water of the Nile clean" *(3.5 marks)*

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 306

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 8
Robots



Objectives

Reading	: Online posts about the advantages of new technology
Writing	: An essay about the advantages and disadvantages of having technology in the house
Listening	: Discussion on how technology can improve learning
Speaking	: Discussing consequences
Language	: Zero, first and second conditionals
Critical thinking	: Is technology always good?
Respect for diversity:	People have different views related to technology

Study... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary
المفردات الرئيسية

benefit (v) – ed (n) يستفيد/فائدة	go out (v) يخرج	navigate (v) – d يوجه/يتنقل
click (n) نقرة/ضغطة (على الماوس)	GPS (Global Positioning System) نظام تحديد المواقع	robot (n) إنسان آلى
familiar (adj) مألوف	hybrid vehicle (n) مركبة تعمل بمصدرين للوقود	vehicle (n) مركبة (وسيلة نقل)
find out (v) يكتشف	the internet (n) الإنترنت	
get around (v) يتجول/ينتقل من مكان لمكان	invention (n) اختراع	

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts
مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

abroad (adv) بالخارج	diversity (n) تنوع (آراء/ثقافات)	machine (n) ماكينة/آلة
air-conditioning (n) نظام تكييف الهواء	easily (adv) بسهولة	petrol (n) بنزين
able (adj) قادر	engine (n) محرك	position (n) موقع/مكانة/ وضع
button (n) زر	exactly (adv) بالضبط	positioning (n) ملاحة (تحديد موقع)
cause (n) (v) – d سبب/يسبب	fortunately (adv) لحسن الحظ	project (n) مشروع
communication (n) اتصال	free time (n) وقت الفراغ	reason (n) سبب/مبرر
concentrate (v) – d يركز	internet access (n) الوصول للإنترنت	relax (v) – ed يستريح/يسترخى
consequences (n) نتائج/عواقب	journey (n) رحلة	result (n) نتيجة
control (v) – led يتحكم	global (adj) عالمى	system (n) نظام
discuss (v) – ed يناقش	luxurious (adj) فَخم/فاخِر	useful (adj) مفيد
distance (n) مسافة	luxury (n) رفاهية/ترف	

Workbook Vocabulary
مفردات كتاب التدريبات

annoying (adj)	مزعج	fridge (n)	ثلاجة	stressed (adj)	متوتر/مضغوط
culture (n)	ثقافة	lose (v)	يخسر	terrible (adj)	فظيع/رهيب
direction (n)	اتجاه	memory (n)	ذاكرة		
discover (v) – ed	يكتشف	shopping list (n)	قائمة التسوق	wheel (n)	عجلة (سيارة مثلًا)
fail (v) – ed	يفشل	stressful (adj)	مُجهِد		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... vehicles are clean and save energy on a big scale.
   a) Hybrid b) Used c) Combined d) Ancient
2. The villa is provided with a/an .... system, so you won't need fans.
   a) air conditioning b) robot c) engine d) heating
3. My brother has a very important .... in this company.
   a) location b) position c) site d) invention
4. The abbreviation "GPS" is short for Global .... System.
   a) Populating b) Positioning c) Pressing d) Project
5. The world has changed quickly since the .... of the phone.
   a) foundation b) navigation c) discovery d) invention
6. A long time ago, trains with steam .... were used by people to travel from one place to another.
   a) batteries b) engines c) robots d) instruments
7. It is known that a bike has two ....
   a) whales b) wholes c) circles d) wheels
8. Uncle Abdullah likes to .... in his garden in the early morning.
   a) annoy b) relax c) fail d) lose
9. You need to .... on this file twice to open it.
   a) ride b) knock c) clink d) click
10. His style is .... I'm sure I have watched this player before.
    a) familiar b) useful c) global d) unfamiliar

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

with a click of a button بضغطة زر	from one place to another من مكان لآخر	go abroad يسافر للخارج
be able to يكون قادرًا على	feel like يشعر وكأنه	communicate with يتواصل مع
cause problems يسبب مشاكل	get answers to يحصل على إجابات لـ	connect to يتصل بـ
cycle around town يتجول بالدراجة حول المدينة	get lost يتوه/يضل الطريق	concentrate on يركز فى
do exercise يؤدى تدريبًا	familiar to مألوف لـ	familiar with على دراية بـ
do things يقوم بعمل أشياء	go long distances يذهب مسافات بعيدة	interested in مهتم بـ
drive the engine يشغل المحرك	go online يتصل بالإنترنت	putting parts together تجميع أجزاء معًا
do homework يعمل الواجب المدرسى	have fun يستمتع	agree with يتفق مع
on your phone على هاتفك	get nervous/stressed يتوتر	lead to يؤدى إلى
even if حتى لو	give directions يعطى اتجاهات	ride on a bicycle يركب على الدراجة
for this reason لهذا السبب	give an opinion يعطى رأيًا	useful to مفيد لـ

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
annoy	يضايق	annoyance	ضيق	annoyed annoying	مُنزعِج مزعج
benefit	يستفيد	benefit beneficiary	فائدة منتفع/مستفيد	beneficial	مفيد
communicate	يتصل	communication	اتصال	communicative	اتصالى
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مُركز
---------------------------		culture	ثقافة	cultural cultured	ثقافى مثقف
---------------------------		distance	مسافة	distant	بعيد
familiarise	يجعل الأمر مألوفًا	familiarity	معرفة/دراية	familiar	مألوف
globalise	يعولم	globalisation	العولمة	global globalised	عالمى خاضع للعولمة

invent	يخترع	invention inventor	اختراع مخترع	inventive	ابتكاري/مبدع
luxuriate	يترفه	luxury	ترف/رفاهية	luxurious	فَخم/فاخِر
navigate	يوجه/يتنقل	navigation navigator	الملاحة/التنقل ضابط الملاحة (ربان/ملاح/بحار)	navigational	ملاحي/انتقالي
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed relaxing	مسترخٍ مريح

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

It's not good to annoy your neighbours with loud music. (v)
The girl looked at me in annoyance. (n)
I'm annoyed because your behaviour is annoying. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
annoying	مزعج	disturbing/troublesome	pleasant/agreeable	سار/مقبول
easily	بسهولة	simply/smoothly	difficultly/hard	بصعوبة
exactly	بالضبط	absolutely/completely	nearly/doubtfully	تقريبًا
fail	يفشل	break down/decline	succeed/pass	ينجح
familiar	مألوف	common/usual	uncommon/unfamiliar	غير شائع/غير مألوف
stressful	مجهد	exhausting/annoying/ disturbing	relaxing/comfortable	مريح
terrible	فظيع/رهيب	horrible/awful	wonderful/amazing	رائع
useful	مفيد	beneficial/fruitful	harmful/hurtful	مؤذٍ

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to keep fit, so I always .... some exercise in the morning.

a) make b) get c) go d) do

2. The street is so familiar .... me. I used to go for a walk in this street.

a) with b) on c) to d) for

3. Social media apps have .... a lot of problems in our society.

a) offered b) caused c) done d) committed

4. When John visited Morocco, he couldn't .... in its streets at all.

a) navigate b) navigation c) navigator d) navigational

5. A: Please can you .... me directions to the station?

B: I don't know the way to it.

a) give b) make c) say d) do

6. Teaching is considered to be a very .... job. It is really hard.

a) stressed b) relaxing c) interesting d) stressful

7. The village where my friend lives is very ...., so I don't visit him very often.

a) distant b) distance c) distancing d) distantly

8. Mazen was very sad as he failed the final exam. The synonym of the word "fail" is "....................".

a) succeed b) pass c) decline d) get through

9. A lot of people were injured in the terrible accident that happened yesterday. The antonym of the word "terrible" is "....................".

a) wonderful b) horrible c) frightening d) awful





Technology Inventions

What is the best invention that we have today and why is it so great? Please leave your comments below.

Baher 12 minutes ago

The internet is the best invention that we have(1) today. You can find information about anything you're interested in. It's really useful if you need to find out something for a school project, for example. I'd never be able to do my homework without it! The internet also makes life easier in your free time. You can buy anything you want(2) online with a click of a button. You can also communicate with your friends easily, even if they live abroad.

Khadeeja 23 minutes ago

In my opinion, GPS (Global Positioning System) is the best invention. GPS helps you to navigate your journey from one place to another(3). You can use it when you visit a town that you aren't familiar with. In the past, people needed maps to get around, but GPS is more useful because it just tells you what to do. If you don't know how to get somewhere, the technology will tell you exactly where to go.

Most cars, buses and other vehicles need petrol, but petrol is becoming more expensive. What would we do if we didn't have petrol?(4) Fortunately, we now have hybrid vehicles. Hybrid vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine. For this reason, the vehicle uses a lot less(5) petrol. There are also cars that are only electric. At the moment, they cannot go long distances, although they are useful to travel short distances, like to school or to the shops.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- فى حالة التفضيل نستخدم that للربط بين الجملتين وهنا لا يمكن استخدام which.
٢- تم حذف ضمير الوصل والجملة أصلها (anything that you want).
٣- تستخدم another للإشارة لاسم مفرد معدود.
٤- لاحظ قاعدة If.
٥- تستخدم a lot مع المقارنة بمعنى very التى لا تستخدم فى المقارنة.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



The Internet

Ahmed **:** Well, the reason that we have the internet is so that people in different countries can talk[1] to each other very easily and get answers to their questions very quickly. Although we need this fast and easy communication, it can lead to problems if people spend too much time talking[2] online and don't work or study enough. I wouldn't say that the internet has caused a lot of problems, but I think it has caused some.

Mustafa **:** The problem with the internet is that it makes people feel like they aren't good enough[3]. If you go online, you see all these photos of beautiful people on luxury holidays and you think 'Why isn't my life like that?' This makes some people really unhappy. Perhaps we should all concentrate on our own lives and our own friends and not use the internet anymore.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- الرابط so that بمعنى لكى ويأتى بعده جملة.

٢- الفعل spend يأتى بعده مفعول ثم v-ing.

٣- كلمة enough يأتى قبلها الصفة.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**position** موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس)/مكانة/وظيفة/مركز فى الملعب/وضع/موقف)	- First, get yourself into a comfortable position. - I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.
	location موقع/مكان (للتصوير)	- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices. - Most of the film was shot on a location in Africa.
	destination جهة الوصول	The driver asked me about our destination, then he cancelled the trip.
2	**air-conditioning** (n) نظام تكييف الهواء	We all think that air-conditioning makes life easier.
	air-conditioner (n) جهاز تكييف الهواء	The technician told me that I should clean the filters of the air-conditioner regularly.
	air-conditioned (adj) مكيف الهواء	I prefer going to this restaurant as it is fully air-conditioned.

	Word	Meaning	Example
3	journey	رحلة /سفر: السفر من مكان إلى آخر (وخاصة السفر الطويل)	It was a long and difficult journey across the mountains.
	trip	رحلة قصيرة لغرض معين	My father came back from a business trip to China.
	voyage	رحلة بحرية	The ship Titanic sank on its first voyage.
	flight	رحلة جوية	What was the direction of the flight when the plane crashed?
	hike	رحلة فى الريف /الجبال - يتجول فى الريف /الجبال خاصة سيرًا على الأقدام	I like to go for a hike every spring. It makes me relaxed.
	picnic	نزهة خلوية فى الهواء الطلق وعادة مصحوبة بالطعام	We had a picnic on the beach.
4	abroad	الخارج (خارج حدود بلد ما)	He worked abroad for five years.
	broad	فسيح /عريض	The room is broad.
	board	لوحة (إعلانات) /سبورة	The exam results went up on the board.
	border	حد بين دولتين	There is a national park on the border between Kenya and Tanzania.
5	memory	الذاكرة (للإنسان /للحاسوب / للهاتف)	My mobile has a 64 GB internal memory.
	memory	ذكرى	We have good and bad memories.
	memorial	نصب تذكاري	The wall was built as a memorial to soldiers who died in the Second World War.
6	familiar with	على دراية بـ	Are you familiar with this type of computer?
	familiar to	معروف لدى	This street was familiar to me when I was young.
7	result	نتيجة (شيء يحدث بسبب شيء آخر)	The traffic was very heavy and as a result I arrived late.
	consequence	عاقبة (تأثير لحدوث شيء آخر)	That bad error had some tragic consequences.

8	(be) able to + (inf.) قادر على	Birds are able to fly using their wings.
	(be) capable of + (v-ing) قادر على	Birds are capable of flying using their wings.
	(have) the ability to + (inf.) لديه القدرة على	Birds have the ability to fly using their wings.
	(someone/ something) + enable(s) + (someone something) + to + (inf.) .... يُمَكن .... من	Wings enable birds to fly.
9	stressful مُجهِد (لوصف مسبب الشعور)	Staying up late is a stressful habit.
	stressed مُجهَد (لوصف الشعور)	I feel stressed when I stay up late.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was a fantastic .... The sea was calm and the weather was breezy.
   a) flight b) distance c) voyage d) hike
2. This is the best film .... I have ever seen.
   a) which b) that c) who d) when
3. This voice is familiar .... me. I think he's Omar Khaled.
   a) with b) to c) about d) for
4. Because of living in many European countries, I am .... speak different languages.
   a) able to b) capable of c) enable d) can
5. Are you familiar .... operating this kind of machines?
   a) to b) for c) with d) a & c
6. Only Mr Hashim is .... of running إدارة the factory.
   a) able b) capable c) enable d) ability
7. Most students are usually .... during their exams.
   a) stressful b) familiar c) stressed d) broad
8. Exams are usually .... for most students.
   a) stressful b) stress c) stressed d) broad
9. The office is ...., so the door is always kept closed.
   a) air-conditioning b) air-conditioner
   c) air-conditions d) air-conditioned

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The police still don't know the real ………………… of the accident.
   a) pause b) cause c) invention d) distance
2. The ………………… of the plane has made the world a small village.
   a) discovery b) invention c) invitation d) memory
3. The current financial ………………… of the company is not very good.
   a) location b) statement c) position d) globalisation
4. ………………… is something that is a mixture of two or more things.
   a) Hybrid b) GPS c) Inventive d) Navigation
5. The smell of the bread is very ………………… to everyone who lives near a bakery. They are used to it.
   a) familiar b) useful c) cultural d) stressful
6. Speaking while eating is one of the most ………………… habit of my friend. I can't stand that.
   a) cultural b) wonderful c) annoying d) useful
7. Hams decided to move ………………… and make a fresh start.
   a) aboard b) abroad c) board d) a broad
8. Many people can't afford ………………… life, such as music lessons and fun tours.
   a) basic b) potential c) familiar d) luxurious
9. Ola's car went out of control and crashed into an oncoming ………………… .
   a) robot b) consequence c) vehicle d) engine
10. We are going ………………… for a meal. How about joining us?
    a) down b) abroad c) out d) on
11. My daughter's exam ………………… made me so happy and proud.
    a) cause b) result c) reason d) consequence
12. I waved to the taxi, but the driver couldn't stop as he was going in the opposite ………………… .
    a) destination b) location c) direction d) situation
13. Although my grandfather is over 80 years old, his ………………… is still strong. He can remember old incidents well.
    a) health b) hearing c) familiarity d) memory
14. There will be a conference in Egypt to discuss ………………… environmental issues.
    a) distant b) global c) national d) communicative
15. I can find my destination by ………………… using GPS.
    a) controlling b) noticing c) navigating d) relaxing
16. What is the ………………… of having an expensive car?
    a) invention b) benefit c) navigation d) control

17. Currently, ... can move and do jobs that humans usually do.
a) animals b) electricians c) engines d) robots

18. Ignoring the safety procedures إجراءات led to some tragic ....
a) reasons b) consequences c) benefits d) constants

19. When you go around by using a bicycle, it means that you .... the town.
a) drive around b) cycle around c) walk around d) recycle around

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20. My neighbour was shocked when he .... that his son failed the exam.
a) went out b) sent to c) agreed with d) found out

21. Akram always .... stressed whenever he has an exam.
a) makes b) has c) gets d) does

22. Be quiet, please. Let me concentrate .... my homework.
a) with b) by c) at d) on

23. From our point of view, we don't see how these changes will be .... to our country.
a) stressful b) familiar c) beneficial d) boring

24. Ali has a dream of being a doctor. ...., he studies hard.
a) However b) One the other hand
c) For this reason d) In detail

25. A .... is a machine that is controlled by a computer. Longman
a) television b) radio c) robot d) rabbit

26. The internet makes life easier. You can buy things online with a/an .... of a button. Longman
a) attack b) push c) click d) delete

27. High school students must .... from their leisure time. (الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر)
a) protect b) stop c) benefit d) stay away

28. .... vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine. (بورسعيد)
a) Used b) Broken c) Ancient d) Hybrid

29. GPS stands for Global .... System. (القاهرة - إدارة المطرية)
a) Positioning b) Positioned c) Positional d) Positions

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

30. The street was familiar to me. The antonyms of the word "familiar" are "........................". (سوهاج - إدارة جرجا)
a) usual b) simple c) unfamiliar d) recognisable e) uncommon

31. That weekly meeting is so annoying, and I hate it. The synonyms of the word "annoying" are "........................".
a) pleasant b) disturbing c) agreeable d) troublesome e) harmful

32. Hopefully, I will .... my exams and get a scholarship منحة دراسية abroad.
a) lose b) pass c) succeed d) pass in e) succeed in

33. You shouldn't .... nervous quickly as it really affects health badly.
a) become b) go c) make d) do e) get



If Conditionals (zero – first – second – third)

حالات If الشرطية

تعتبر If ومعناها (إذا / لو) رابطًا يربط بين جملتين (جملة If وجملة جواب الشرط) وتكون العلاقة بينهما شرطية ولا تأتى فى جملة منفردة مطلقًا. ويمكن أن تأتى فى البداية ونفصل بين الجملتين بـ (,) comma ويمكن أن تأتى بين الجملتين ولا نفصل بينهما بـ (,) comma.

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

If you heat ice, it melts. (It is a fact.) — حقيقة

You will meet the manager if you come early. (It is probable.) — محتمل

If Ali arrived early, he would catch the bus. (It is not possible.) — غير محتمل

وهناك ٤ حالات لـ If وكل حالة لها استخدام معين، لاحظ التالى:

1 Zero Conditional — الحالة الصفرية



تستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق والأشياء المنطقية والعادات الشخصية:

Examples

If we freeze water, it turns into ice.

If I wake up early, I feel more energetic.

If wood is burnt, it gives off much smoke.

لاحظ

من الممكن استخدام When بدلًا من If فى الحالة الصفرية.

When you heat ice, it melts.

تستخدم الحالة الصفرية فى حالة وجود ظروف التكرار مثل:

(always/usually/sometimes/often/...) فى جملة جواب الشرط.

If I feel hungry, I usually eat something till I arrive home.

2 First Conditional — الحالة الأولى

If + Present Simple (مضارع بسيط) + will/can/may + inf.

تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث من الممكن أو من المحتمل حدوثه فى الحاضر أو المستقبل.

If you study hard, you will get high marks.

Dalia is ill. If she is better tomorrow, she will come to school.

لاحظ في الحالة الأولى من الممكن أن يأتي جواب الشرط على هيئة:

1 فعل أمر (في حالة عدم وجود فاعل).

If you meet Noha, give her the money.

2 طلب.

If there is a doctor on the train, could he come to the front, please?

3 نصيحة (should + inf).

If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.

إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة أو شيء منطقي ولكن تم الإشارة إلى موقف معين بها (عن طريق تحديد وقت / وجود اسم إشارة / صفة ملكية) نستخدم الحالة الأولى وليس الصفرية.

If we add olives to pasta, it tastes delicious. هذا هو المعتاد.

If we add olives to your pasta, it will taste salty. هذا ما أعتقده.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you add six to eight, you .... fourteen.
   a) would get b) might get c) get d) got
2. If you throw that stone into water, it ....
   a) should sink b) would sink
   c) will sink d) would have sunk
3. I usually .... if I feel shy.
   a) smile b) smiles c) will smile d) would smile
4. If you watch too much television, you .... your eyes.
   a) will damage b) would damage
   c) won't damage d) would have damaged
5. What .... if you don't find your dictionary?
   a) do you do b) would you do c) will you do d) did you do

3 Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

If	+	Past Simple ماضٍ بسيط	+	would/could/might + inf.

تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف غير محتملة (صعبة / مستبعدة) الحدوث في الحاضر أو المستقبل.

If Radwa treated her students well, they would love her.

– هذا يعني أن رضوى لا تعامل تلاميذها جيدًا وبالتالي لا يحبونها، ولكن هناك احتمال ضعيف بحدوث العكس.

If Sleem slept early, he could get up early.

– هذا يعني أن سليم لا ينام مبكرا ولا يستيقظ مبكرا ولكن هناك احتمال ضعيف أن يحدث ذلك.

تستخدم للتعبير عن النصيحة.

If I were you, I would (n't) + inf. = You should + inf.

If I were you, I would accept the job. = You should accept the job.
If I were you, I wouldn't waste my money like that. = You shouldn't waste your money like that.

تستخدم للتعبير عن المواقف التخيلية.

If I were a superman, I would fly to Europe to attend the final match.
If you found one million pound in the street, dad, what would you do?

لاحظ في الحالة الثانية يمكن استخدام were مع جميع الضمائر (المفرد والجمع).

If she were a princess, she would be much happier.
If I were rich, I would build a palace.

4 Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

If + Past Perfect ماضى تام  would/could/might + have + P.P.

تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف حدثت /لم تحدث فى الماضى. (الندم/اللوم)

If you had gone to the cinema with us, you would have enjoyed your time.

هذا يعنى أن الشخص لم يذهب للسينما لذا لم يستمتع بوقته.

If she hadn't passed the exam, she wouldn't have gone to university.

هذا يعنى أنها اجتازت الاختبار بالفعل ولذا التحقت بالجامعة.

لاحظ عند وجود كلمة تدل على الماضى لابد من استخدام الحالة الثالثة حتى وإن كانت الجملة فيها حقيقة.

If you had put water in the freezer yesterday, it would have turned into ice.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you .... smoking, you would feel healthier.
a) stop b) stopped c) didn't stop d) had stopped

2. If I had known more about computers, I .... you with your problem.
a) help b) will help
c) wouldn't help d) would have helped

3. If you reached your goals, ... very happy?
a) you would be b) you will be
c) would you have been d) would you be

4. They .... the first prize if they had had another chance.
a) would get b) will get c) may get d) would have got

5. What .... if Rashed had told them about our problems?
a) will happen b) would happen
c) has happened d) would have happened



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you put water in the freezer, it .... into ice.
   a) turned b) turns
   c) would turn d) would have turned
2. I always .... a severe headache if I spend much time on the computer.
   a) will get b) got c) am getting d) get
3. If we .... hard, we will win next week's match.
   a) train b) will train c) trained d) had trained
4. If you are hungry, ... another sandwich.
   a) will take b) take c) don't take d) taking
5. If they .... another chance, they would get the first prize.
   a) gave b) are given c) had given d) were given
6. If Wafaa .... a baby girl, she will call her Mariam.
   a) have b) will have c) had d) has
7. If you .... all night, you will be exhausted at the time of the test.
   a) had studied b) study c) studied d) have studied
8. If Noha .... the game, she would be happy.
   a) was winning b) won c) wins d) has won
9. If I .... they were honest, I would gladly lend them the money.
   a) had known b) have known c) know d) knew
10. I wouldn't achieve my dreams if she .... me.
   a) had helped b) helped c) hadn't helped d) didn't help
11. If we heat the milk you have bought today, ...?
   a) will it boil b) has it boiled c) does it boil d) could it boil
12. If he .... at the meeting early, he would have the chance to meet the boss.
   a) had arrived b) has arrived c) didn't arrive d) arrived
13. If he hadn't driven his car madly, he .... such an accident.
   a) wouldn't have b) didn't have c) wouldn't have had d) would have
14. If Safa comes early, she .... the first lecture.
   a) is attending b) will attend c) had to attend d) would attend
15. If you .... earlier, you would have caught the train.
   a) had left b) leave c) left d) would leave
16. If water comes into contact with electricity, there .... a shock.
   a) won't be b) would be c) is d) may be
17. What .... if he had left school without learning anything?
   a) will happen b) would happen
   c) had happened d) would have happened

18. Would Rania understand the lesson if she .... the summary?

a) reads b) read c) had read d) will read

19. If she beat her friend at chess, she .... very happy.

a) is b) will be
c) would be d) would have been

20. If Ragaa .... a child, she wouldn't have to adopt one.

a) has b) had had c) had d) has had

21. I will do the homework tomorrow if I have time. This means ....

a) there is a possibility to do the homework
b) I am busy, so I will do the homework
c) I won't do the homework because I don't have time
d) it is impossible to do the homework

22. Sherif isn't a good player because he doesn't train well. This means that if Sherif trained well, ...

a) he would be a good player b) he will be a good player
c) he is a good player d) he should be a good player

23. If I had won the match, I would have got the prize money. This means ....

a) it was impossible to win the match b) it is possible to win the match
c) I lost the match d) I will probably win the match

24. I'd refuse to go to the club if I had much work to do. This mean that I .... much work.

a) don't have b) had c) have d) didn't have

25. If you see an accident, ... the police at once. [Longman]

a) telephone b) will telephone
c) should telephone d) must telephone

26. If he cut his finger with that knife, it .... terribly. [Longman]

a) hurts b) will hurt c) would hurt d) hurt

27. If I wasn't busy, I would come to your party. This means that I .... busy. [Longman]

a) am not b) am c) was not d) was

28. If Nada .... the test, she will go to university. (بنى سويف - إدارة إهناسيا)

a) passes b) passed c) had passed d) was passing

29. If he were taller, he .... a good basketball player. (السويس)

a) be b) will be c) would be d) were

30. If you press this button, this machine .... (الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم)

a) operates b) will operate c) would operate d) is operated

31. Ice .... if you heat it. (الشرقية - العاشر من رمضان)

a) will melt b) would melt c) melts d) melt

Test yourself Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I think smoking can .... to financial and health problems.
   a) stress b) lead c) annoy d) argue
2. The house strangely looked ...., though she knew she'd never been there before.
   a) familiar b) useful c) cultural d) stressful
3. Can the .... get into the deep rooms of the Pyramids to explore them?
   a) technology b) discovery c) internet d) robot
4. Some businessmen support new .... to be produced in Egypt.
   a) discoveries b) inventions c) invitations d) explorations
5. I stopped to .... directions to the lost taxi driver who asked me.
   a) request b) make c) take d) give
6. My father sold our car, so we had to use public transport to get ....
   a) around b) across c) better d) over
7. There are a lot of .... of having healthy food and doing exercise.
   a) tickets b) benefits c) machines d) reasons
8. Sameh used to .... on his bicycle to work every day.
   a) control b) navigate c) drive d) ride
9. If you want to watch the new film, you can do that easily .... a click of a button.
   a) from b) in c) on d) with
10. Sailors and pilots have special equipment to help them .... their way.
    a) locate b) concentrate c) navigate d) communicate
11. If you want to know more information about the museum, you can use the ....
    a) navigator b) position c) internet d) entertainment
12. It was a successful experiment. It led us to the right ....
    a) inquiries b) requirements c) consequences d) qualities
13. Our school team are meeting today to .... our school projects.
    a) navigate b) think c) discuss d) argue
14. We certainly don't lead a life of .... but we are not poor either.
    a) luxury b) poverty c) culture d) positioning
15. My dog never goes .... without my permission. It's trained well.
    a) out b) over c) on d) by

Language

16. Soha .... to lunch if we had invited her.

a) will come b) might come c) might have come d) comes

17. Maha wouldn't come with us if her mother .... well.

a) didn't feel b) felt c) hadn't felt d) doesn't feel

18. I .... angry if it turns out that you are wrong.

a) will be b) am c) would be d) was

19. Ramy would have been better if he .... his medicine regularly.

a) has taken b) took c) had taken d) hadn't taken

20. If you mix yellow and blue, you .... green.

a) get b) would get
c) got d) would have got

21. What will you do if you .... by a snake?

a) bite b) will bite c) are bitten d) were bitten

22. If a plant .... regularly, it dies.

a) doesn't water b) isn't watered c) wasn't watered d) don't water

23. If I spend too long on the computer, I usually .... a headache.

a) will get b) would get c) got d) get

24. We will disconnect the service if you .... the bill before Friday.

a) paid b) don't pay c) didn't pay d) pay

25. If you .... Ali, could you tell him to come to the wedding party?

a) ring b) rang c) had rung d) rings

26. If my father hadn't helped me with some money, I .... able to buy a new flat.

a) wouldn't be b) will be
c) would have been d) wouldn't have been

27. I would join you at the club if I .... ill.

a) were b) hadn't been c) weren't d) had been

28. If you see our teacher, ... to ask him about the date of the exam.

a) will remember b) remembered c) remembers d) remember

29. The river .... if it went on raining for much longer.

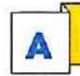
a) would flood b) will flood c) floods d) flooded

30. If I .... him yesterday, I would have asked him to come with me.

a) have seen b) saw c) was seeing d) had seen

Study... **Part 2** | Lessons 3 & 4





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

app (application) (n) تطبيق على التليفون المحمول	feedback (n) التغذية الراجعة (رد الفعل لشيء ما)	translation (n) ترجمة
chat (v) – ted (n) يدردش / دردشة	quiz (n) اختبار قصير	

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

advantages (n) مزايا	human being (n) إنسان	smartphone (n) الهاتف الذكى
comment (n) تعليق	improve (v) – d يحسن / يتحسن	software (n) برامج الكمبيوتر
completely (adv) تماماً	negative (adj) سلبى	stress (n) ضغط عصبى
cost (v) (n) يتكلف / تكلفة	notebook (n) مُفَكِّرَة	technology (n) تكنولوجيا
device (n) جهاز / أداة	positive (adj) إيجابى	understanding (n) فهم
disadvantages (n) عيوب	remember (v) (ed) يتذكر	
exact (adj) مضبوط	right (adj) محق / صحيح	

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

admit (v) – ted يعترف بـ	documentary (n) فيلم / برنامج وثائقى	printing press (n) آلة طباعة
argue (v) – d يجادل	download (v) – ed (n) يحمل / تحميل	progress (n) (v) – ed تقدم / يتقدم
careful (adj) حريص	extreme (adj) مبالغ فيه / شديد	share (v) – d يشارك
carefully (adv) بعناية / بحرص	guess (v) – ed يخمن	studies (n) دراسات
century (n) قرن (مائة عام)	imagine (v) – d يتخيل	surprising (adj) مدهش / مفاجئ
collect (v) – ed يجمع	memories (n) ذكريات	worried (adj) قلق
details (n) بيانات / تفاصيل	personal (adj) شخصى	

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Spending time on the phone .... with friends is my favourite free time activity.
   a) commenting b) understanding c) chatting d) penning
2. The new phone .... me a lot of money because I bought it from abroad.
   a) priced b) valued c) cost d) estimated
3. My brother is specialised in .... from French into English.
   a) translation b) argument c) imagination d) documentary
4. There have been major new developments in satellite ....
   a) technology b) sociology c) psychology d) phonology
5. Ali was stressed while doing the weekly ...., although there were only five questions.
   a) app b) quiz c) notebook d) feedback
6. There is a link between the website and the ...., so you can use your smartphone.
   a) chat b) app c) capital d) click
7. To .... your English pronunciation نطق, you could do a course.
   a) prove b) improve c) remove d) progress
8. I was shocked when I saw the .... on the post. Many people didn't like my opinion.
   a) navigation b) communications
   c) comments d) directions
9. After finishing the interview, I'll give you my .... to know your weaknesses نقاط الضعف.
   a) feedback b) printing press
   c) advantages d) disadvantages
10. The invention of the .... helped the world save time and effort and spread knowledge.
    a) printing press b) microwave
    c) washing machine d) vacuum cleaner

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

for or against مع أو ضد	make notes يدون ملاحظات	type of نوع من
change into يتغيرإلى	in detail بالتفصيل	useful for مفيد لـ
effect on تاثيرعلى	do a quiz يجيب عن اختبارقصير	worried about قلق بشأن
feel about يشعربشأن	smile at يبتسم لـ	on your own بمفردك
in conclusion فى الختام/وخلاصة القول	social network accounts حسابات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى	on the one hand من ناحية
summary of ملخص لـ	turn on his phone يشغل هاتفه	on the other hand من ناحية أخرى
lose interest in يفقد الاهتمام فى	think about يفكرفى	chat to/with يدردش مع
make comments يعقب/يعلق	travel from ... to ... يسافرمن ... إلى ...	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
admit	يعترف	admission	اعتراف	--------------------	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلى
care	يهتم	care	اهتمام	careful	حريص
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعى
comment	يعلق	comment commentary	تعليق تعليق	--------------------	
complete	يكمل	completion	تكملة	complete	كامل
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative	خيالى
surprise	يدهش	surprise	دهشة	surprising surprised	مدهش مندهش
understand	يفهم	understanding	فهم	understandable understanding	معقول/مفهوم متفهم/متجاوب
worry	يقلق	worry	قلق	worried	قلق

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Sam always argues with his little brother. (v)
The argument about choosing a film lasted for hours. (n)
The argumentative essay has two different opinions. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/conceal	ينكر
advantages	مزايا	merits/profits	disadvantages/demerits	عيوب
argue	يجادل	debate/discuss/dispute	agree/harmonise	يتفق
careful	حريص	cautious/attentive	careless/reckless	مهمل /متهور
completely	تماماً	totally/entirely	incompletely/partially	جزئيًا /غير كامل
extreme	مبالغ فيه /شديد	severe/acute	moderate/mild	معتدل
personal	شخصى	private/individual	public/common	عام
surprising	مدهش	astonishing/extraordinary/ unexpected	usual/expected	معتاد /متوقع
understanding	فهم	grasping/comprehension	misunderstanding/ misinterpretation	إساءة الفهم
worried	قلق	anxious/upset	calm/relaxed	هادئ /مريح

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Learning a foreign language is useful .... those who like to get good jobs.
 a) at b) for c) with d) of

2. I asked my father if he is .... the new educational system. He said he liked it.
 a) with or without b) for or about c) in or out d) for or against

3. Dad asked our opinions about buying a new house. It was a .... decision to do so.
 a) collect b) collected c) collective d) collection

4. Our teacher wanted us to .... a quiz about the last lesson.
 a) make b) do c) give d) design

5. The group publishes a monthly summary .... their research.
 a) of b) for c) at d) with

6. We all know that smoking has a bad effect .... our health.

a) in b) on c) at d) of

7. The thieves were taken to prison after they had admitted robbing the bank.
The synonym of the word "admitted" is "....................".

a) denied b) refused c) confessed d) concealed

8. I don't like those who argue with other people for nothing important.
The opposite of the word "argue" is "....................".

a) agree b) debate c) discussed d) disputed

9. The surprising rise in the temperature changed the company's plans.
The synonym of the word "surprising" is "....................".

a) extraordinary b) expected
c) irregular d) usual

10. It's a personal case and I don't want anyone to interfere in my affairs.
The synonym of the word "personal" is "....................".

a) public b) famous c) private d) common

Reading Text (1)

The Pros and Cons of Technology

I like technology a lot and I use it every day. It helps me find[1] information for my school work and I can buy things easily online. But technology isn't always a good thing. It can lead to a lot of stress and it can stop people enjoying[2] their free time.

Karim

I don't know what I would do without technology! It makes life easier and you can do things so much faster[3]. And how would we travel without technology? You can travel from Cairo to London in just five hours in a plane!

Dina



Notes on some sentences: **ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:**

١- الفعل help يأتى بعده مفعول ثم .inf أو .to + inf

٢- الفعل stop يأتى بعده مفعول ثم v-ing أو from + v-ing بمعنى يمنع أو يوقف شخصًا عن فعل شىء.

٣- تستخدم much مع المقارنة بمعنى very التى لا تستخدم فى المقارنة.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



Is technology always a good thing?

This question has been asked for many years but has anyone found an answer? On the one hand[1], there are always dangers with new technology. More than two thousand[2] years ago, a Greek philosopher called Socrates was worried that writing things down would stop students using their memories. In the 16th century, following the invention of the printing press, a Swiss philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that books would give people too much information. And in the 20th century, many people thought that the radio would make it difficult for students to think about their studies.

On the other hand[3], technology usually offers some advantages.

Books and writing are seen as positive things today and most people think that their advantages are more important than any disadvantages.

In conclusion, perhaps it takes many years before we can see clearly whether new technology is good or bad.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١ و ٣- تستخدم هذه التعبيرات عند عرض وجهتى نظر مختلفتين.

٢- لا نضيف s الجمع مع الأرقام مثل hundred /thousand/million إذا جاء قبلهم عدد.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Technology and Learning

Amal : Technology is so useful[1] when you're learning something, Hana! You can find the information you need really quickly. If you don't understand a word when you're reading a text, you can find the translation for it.

Hana : You're right, Amal, but does that really help you to learn? I think that if you learn something, you remember it and you can use it when you're talking or writing. Technology can't help you remember things or write texts.

Amal : Well, not exactly, but if you use a language app, for example, you can do quizzes[2] about new words to help you remember them. And there are apps that give you feedback[3] on your writing so you can do it better next time.

Hana : I understand what you're saying. That's just not the way I learn. I prefer using a pen and paper[4] and making notes in my notebook. I don't need a smartphone.

Amal : That's OK. Everyone's different. For me, the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can chat to people from all over the world online. That's really nice when you're doing your homework on your own. If you have questions, they'll help you.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة technology تعامل معاملة المفرد ولا تأخذ the لأننا نتحدث عنها بشكل عام.

٢- كلمة quiz تجمع quizzes بمضاعفة حرف z وإضافة es.

٣- و ٤- هذه الأسماء لا تعد ولا تأخذ أداة النكرة (a).

Video Script



Learning new Languages and Technology

Will people need to learn foreign languages in the future? Or will technology speak them for us? Some people think that if apps and translation software continue to improve over the next ten to twenty years, language lessons will become a thing of the past. But can an app or a piece of software really communicate like a person can?

They can definitely translate words, or even whole sentences, from one language to another. But they can't smile at the person you're talking to and show them that you really mean what you're saying.

When you speak in a foreign language, you speak to another human being and human beings find it difficult to become friends with smartphones or computers – we are programmed to prefer other human beings. That's why we can feel sure that learning languages still has a future.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	everyday (adj.) يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)	We all suffer from the problems of everyday life.
	every day (adv.) يوميًا (حال)	Ali travels to Alexandria to work every day.
2	(have) the right to + inf. لديه الحق فى	We have the right to live well in a clean environment.
	(be) right to + inf. يكون محقًا فى	We are right to think that he is very clever.

3	**by** مع كل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)	- I travelled abroad by plane. - He went to work by car.
	on مع وسائل المواصلات (التى يمكن الحركة داخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)	- I went to Tanta on a train. - I go to school on my bicycle.
	in مع وسائل المواصلات (التى لا يمكن الحركة داخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)	- I go to work in my car. - Walaa goes to Luxor in a taxi.
4	**decade (10 years)** العقد	Egypt developed a lot over the past decade.
	century (100 years) القرن	Every century, we have a lot of inventions which change the future.
	millennium (1000 years) الألفية	The generation in the third millennium are totally remarkable.
5	**on + (صفة ملكية) + own** بمفرده	I like to study my lessons on my own. (alone)
	of + (صفة ملكية) + own ملكه	I have a room with a computer and a television of my own.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I usually go to big markets to get my .... needs.
a) every day b) a day c) every days d) everyday

2. Children .... the right to enjoy their lives.
a) are b) have c) do d) make

3. I collected ten .... pounds from my relatives for Omar's operation.
a) thousands b) thousand c) thousand's d) thousands'

4. Wael always goes to university .... the bus.
a) on b) in c) by d) with

5. There has been much technology in the 21st ....
a) millennium b) decade c) century d) period

6. Ali was .... to get confused when he saw two correct options in the MCQ question.
a) the right b) a right c) right d) rights

7. Huda always helps me .... myself for the exams.
a) prepare b) preparing c) to prepares d) a & c

8. Everyone of my family has a car ....
a) of their owe b) on their own c) of their own d) for their own



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. Staying up late has some .... impacts on our health.
   a) positive b) stressed c) negative d) improved
2. I can .... people's faces easily, but not their names.
   a) remember b) cost c) comment d) admit
3. Parents do their best to .... their families' conditions.
   a) prove b) think c) improve d) guess
4. I have lots of good .... about my childhood on grandpa's farm.
   a) memories b) memorials c) monuments d) souvenirs
5. My new phone .... me a lot of money. It is really modern with so many options.
   a) owned b) cashed c) paid d) cost
6. I like to write everything my teacher says in my ....
   a) documentary b) notebook c) noticeboard d) technology
7. Nearly all people around the world have .... which they use for chatting and other things.
   a) smartphones b) smart labs c) smart cars d) smart robots
8. My students are always given a four-question .... at the beginning of the lesson.
   a) app b) quiz c) chat d) feedback
9. During my last stay in Switzerland, I .... a room with a respected doctor.
   a) divided b) parted c) placed d) shared
10. Doing exercise and having healthy food have a positive .... on our health.
    a) affect b) effect c) account d) argument
11. The employee got great .... from his boss as he was very active.
    a) stress b) argument c) admittance d) feedback
12. I have some important educational .... on my mobile. They help me a lot in my work.
    a) pros b) apps c) hardware d) labs
13. It is a good thing to .... your mistakes and try to correct them.
    a) admit b) share c) deny d) argue
14. The temperature was 45 degrees and I couldn't bear that .... heat.
    a) pleasant b) extreme c) imaginative d) careful
15. Watching .... about sports and cinema is my favourite hobby.
    a) documentaries b) memories c) plays d) documents
16. The research may lead to a better .... of how the disease develops.
    a) understanding b) comment c) translation d) imagination

17. The policeman wanted to know the .... time of the accident.
a) exact b) personal c) careful d) dead

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18. ...., we can't live without most of the modern inventions.
a) On conclusion b) In conclusion c) For conclusion d) At conclusion

19. Some people prefer to .... files from trusted websites only.
a) download b) load c) upload d) collect

20. At lectures, I used to .... notes about what the professor said.
a) do b) play c) make d) try

21. Having healthy food and enough sleep is very useful .... health.
a) for b) at c) in d) of

22. Being a father and a family supporter made me .... interest in going with my friends for holidays.
a) gain b) lose c) do d) make

23. When we change words of a language .... another one, this means we translate them.
a) for b) with c) into d) by

24. I'm sure you will solve this problem .... your own. Longman
a) on b) from c) with d) by

25. The reporter listened carefully to the minister and .... notes to focus on the most important points of his speech. Longman
a) forgot b) ignored c) did d) made

26. You can .... quizzes about new words to help you remember them. Longman
a) do b) think c) fail d) carry

27. I have a good .... of apps on my smartphone. (بنى سويف - إدارة إهناسيا)
a) comment b) virus c) collection d) printing

28. He loves .... with his friends online. (إدارة المنيا)
a) cycling B) visiting c) chatting d) telling

29. Companies use customers' .... to improve their products. (أسوان - إدارة كوم أمبو)
a) complain b) feedback c) competition d) consequences

30. Some questions to know how much you know are called a/an .... (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية)
a) occasion b) event c) quiz d) festival

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

31. Can you tell me what happened ....? I want to know everything.
a) in brief b) briefly c) in detail d) in short e) accurately

32. Technology helps us .... about everything easily and quickly.
a) learning b) learn c) to learning d) with learn e) to learn

33. My answers are completely different from yours; how come I cheated from you! The synonyms of the word "completely" are ....
a) quite b) nearly c) totally d) entirely e) partially

B **Language**

"If" Alternatives

بدائل "If"

هناك تراكيب مختلفة تعطى نفس معنى جمل if فى الحالات الأربعة، لاحظ التالى:

1 Unless لولم + جملة مثبتة = If + جملة منفية

Unless he ran fast, he would miss the bus.
= If he didn't run fast, he would miss the bus.

2 Without بدون + noun/v-ing = But for لولا + noun

Without **studying** hard, you will fail.
Without/But for **his cleverness**, he wouldn't succeed.

3 In case of/In the event of فى حالة + noun

In case of **emergency**, call 122.

ـ أما in case فقط فتعتبر مثل If ويأتى بعدها جملة كاملة.

I'll prepare the food in case your father comes early.

4 If = Provided (that) بشرط أن = Providing (that) بشرط = As long as طالما = On condition (that) بشرط أن

I will get high marks (provided/as long as/if) I study hard.

5 If it weren't for لولا + noun , subj. + would + inf.

If it weren't for **doctors**, many people would die. (الحالة الثانية)
= Without **doctors**, many people would die.

6 If it hadn't been for لولا + noun , subj. + would + have + P.P.

If it hadn't been for **his help**, I would have failed the exam. (الحالة الثالثة)
= Without **his help**, I would have failed the exam.

7 Suppose (that) افترض أن Supposing (that) افترض أن Imagine (that) تخيل أن	,	past simple ماضٍ بسيط	,	would + inf.

(Suppose/Supposing/Imagine) that you won the prize, what would you do?

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They will lose the match .... they train hard.
   a) unless b) as long as
   c) without d) in case of
2. Without .... our best, we wouldn't pass our exams with high marks.
   a) we did b) doing
   c) to do d) we have done
3. If it .... for your help, I wouldn't have succeeded.
   a) hadn't b) isn't
   c) hadn't been d) weren't
4. Marwa would have been fatter .... she had eaten much.
   a) if b) unless
   c) but for d) in case of
5. .... you had finished the project, you wouldn't have been free to travel.
   a) If b) Without
   c) Unless d) Provided that

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على بدائل If:

1 من الممكن استخدام Should بدلًا من If فى بداية الجملة فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية، وتكون القاعدة كالآتى:

Should + subj. + inf. ...., subj. + will/can/may + inf.

Should Mona come early, I will tell her the news.

= If Mona comes early, I will tell her the news.

Should + subj. + inf. ...., subj. + would/could/might + inf.

Should Sara sleep early, she would get up early.

= If Sara slept early, she would get up early.

2 من الممكن استخدام Were بدلًا من If فى بداية الجملة فى الحالة الثانية، وتكون القاعدة كالآتى:

Were + **subj.** + **to + inf.** ..., **subj.** + **would/could/might** + **inf.**

Were Rania to run faster, she would catch the bus.

= If Rania ran faster, she would catch the bus.

Were + **subj.** + **adj./n.** ..., **subj.** + **would/could/might** + **inf.**

Were he clever, he would get high marks.

= If he were clever, he would get high marks.

Were I a doctor, I could save my mother's life. = If I were a doctor, ...

3 من الممكن استخدام Had بدلًا من If فى بداية الجملة فى الحالة الثالثة، وتكون القاعدة كالآتى:

Had + **subj.** + **(not) P.P.** ..., **subj.** + **would/could/might** + **have** + **P.P.**

Had I trained hard, I would have won the cup.

= If I had trained hard, I would have won the cup.

4 الفرق بين if و in case

I will buy extra bread if Ali joins us. — هنا شراء الخبز لن يتم إلا بعد مشاركة على.

I will buy extra bread in case Ali joins us. — هنا سيتم شراء الخبز أولًا تحسبًا لمشاركة على.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... he eat healthy food, he will buy lots of vegetables.
   a) If b) Were c) Would d) Should
2. Were Ashraf .... hard, he would get the full mark.
   a) studied b) studying c) to study d) study
3. Were Mona ...., she would join the basketball team.
   a) tall b) to tall c) being tall d) all mentioned
4. Had .... a clear goal, she .... successful.
   a) she had/ would have been b) had she/ would have been
   c) she has/ will be d) she had/wouldn't have been
5. I'll take warm clothes with me .... I feel cold there. I want to be ready for all conditions.
   a) if b) in case c) unless d) when



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can borrow this book .... as you look after it.
   a) provided b) if c) as long d) on condition
2. You can't go into the museum without .... a ticket first.
   a) buying b) you buy c) bought d) buy
3. Mum says we can watch TV on .... that we do our homework first.
   a) condition b) provided c) long as d) if
4. .... that you lived by the sea, what would you do every day?
   a) Condition b) As long c) Imagine d) Supposed
5. .... heat and light from the sun, there would be no life on earth.
   a) But for b) With c) In case of d) Unless
6. If it .... for your help, I would find it difficult to understand my lessons.
   a) had been b) hadn't been c) were d) weren't
7. We will take you with us .... a player gets injured.
   a) unless b) without c) in case d) in case of
8. .... they had the required qualities, they wouldn't get the job.
   a) Unless b) Provide c) As long as d) Supposed
9. .... we gone to the club, we would have been happier.
   a) If b) Unless c) Were d) Had
10. We are going to start painting the house tomorrow .... it doesn't rain.
    a) unless b) provided c) without d) when
11. .... Ramy missed the bus, he would have taken a taxi.
    a) If b) Were c) Unless d) Had
12. .... Mr Sameh find a good job, he will move to a new flat.
    a) If b) Were c) Should d) When
13. .... your son a doctor, he could help us.
    a) If b) Should c) Had d) Were
14. .... Hana be clever, she would answer the question.
    a) Were b) Had c) Should d) If
15. Unless he had followed my advice, he .... all his money.
    a) would have lost b) wouldn't have lost c) wouldn't lose d) won't lose
16. Had they not taken Mona to hospital, she ....
    a) might have died b) might die c) will die d) could die
17. Supposing you won the prize, how .... feel?
    a) would you b) will you c) you would d) you will

18. Had he read yesterday's newspaper, he .... everything.

a) would know
b) wouldn't know
c) would have known
d) wouldn't have known

19. Should he study hard, he .... tomorrow's exam.

a) won't pass
b) passes
c) would pass
d) would have passed

20. I wouldn't have found my wallet without ....

a) helping
b) being helped
c) helped
d) he helped me

21. .... as fast as they could, they wouldn't catch the train.

a) If they ran
b) Were they to run
c) In case of running
d) Unless they ran

22. .... hard, he would get high marks.

a) If he studies
b) Is he to study
c) Were he to study
d) Should he to study

23. I will prepare the food in case your father comes early. This means that ....

a) The speaker will prepare the food after the father comes.
b) The speaker will prepare the food before the father comes.
c) The speaker will probably prepare the food.
d) The speaker won't prepare the food until the father comes.

24. You won't be allowed to enter the club .... you hold your membership card. Longman

a) when
b) if
c) unless
d) without

25. .... you refused to help me, I wouldn't solve that problem. Many thanks, Hala. Longman

a) If
b) Unless
c) In case of
d) Without

26. You will miss the train .... you arrive at the station in time. Longman

a) if
b) unless
c) in case of
d) because

27. They won't come to the party .... we invite them. (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)

a) without
b) unless
c) in case of
d) if

28. .... for the Nile, Egypt would be a desert land. (الفيوم - إدارة أبشواى)

a) If it were
b) If it had been
c) If it hadn't been
d) If it weren't

29. If you .... what I say, ask your father. (الجيزة - أطفيح)

a) don't believe
b) didn't believe
c) won't believe
d) wouldn't believe

30. You will miss the lecture .... you come on time. (الشرقية - أبو حماد)

a) if
b) unless
c) because
d) in case of

31. .... my teachers' support, I wouldn't have come first in the final exam. (الشرقية - بلبيس)

a) Unless
b) If
c) Without
d) In case of

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Having a lot of work and responsibilities lead to ....
   a) press b) mixture c) effect d) stress
2. Receiving positive and negative .... from our customers is very important for our promotion.
   a) stress b) argument c) admittance d) feedback
3. I think his confidence was .... destroyed after the accident.
   a) complete b) completely c) carefully d) careful
4. My friend is an expert in 15th - .... Italian art.
   a) decade b) millennium c) century d) technology
5. Please tell me what has happened in brief, I don't want to know all the ....
   a) details b) studies c) shares d) stress
6. My friends and I go to school .... my father's car.
   a) by b) on c) at d) in
7. The poor in any country .... the right to live well.
   a) are b) take c) have d) has
8. A .... number of teenagers finish school without being able to read and write.
   a) imaginative b) personal c) surprising d) careful
9. They made a TV .... about Mount Fuji volcano.
   a) summary b) documentary c) admission d) details
10. Have you got a dictionary .... on your phone?
    a) quiz b) app c) chat d) documentary
11. We spent the whole night .... about what we did last week.
    a) looking b) chatting c) searching d) caring
12. The mobile is one of the .... that we can't do without nowadays.
    a) vehicles b) machines c) devices d) notebooks
13. I was very happy when I received many positive .... on my new video.
    a) passages b) dialogues c) comments d) chats
14. Professor Ahmed always uploads summaries .... his lectures on his YouTube channel.
    a) with b) at c) for d) of
15. Befriending your children will create a better .... of the way they think.
    a) agreement b) comment c) imagination d) understanding

Language

16. Unless he had gone to university, he .... in the factory.

a) would work b) would have worked
c) will work d) had worked

17. Radwa wouldn't have been a doctor .... she had studied hard.

a) unless b) without c) in case of d) if

18. I'll swim in the sea today .... it's windy at the beach.

a) in case b) provided c) in case of d) unless

19. .... he found the suitable place, he wouldn't have stayed in this city.

a) If b) Had c) Should d) Were

20. Were my parents richer, I .... a foreign university.

a) can join b) join c) will join d) would join

21. Were Mona to be punished, she .... any more.

a) wouldn't cheat b) would cheat
c) would have cheat d) wouldn't have cheated

22. If it hadn't been for doing your best, you .... got the job.

a) won't have b) will have c) wouldn't have d) would have

23. .... you go now, you would catch the train.

a) Should b) If c) Unless d) In case

24. .... I a millionaire, I'd start projects to employ young people.

a) If b) Unless c) Were d) Had

25. If it .... for the crime he committed, he wouldn't have gone to prison.

a) weren't b) hadn't been c) wasn't d) isn't

26. .... you invest your money well, you won't make a profit.

a) If b) Without c) In case d) Unless

27. .... a car, he would have given me a lift.

a) Should he have b) Did he have c) Have he had d) Had he had

28. .... she arrives early, she'll be able to revise her presentation.

a) Unless b) Should c) If d) In case

29. .... raining, we won't be able to finish the game.

a) If it didn't stop b) Unless it stops
c) Should it stop d) If it stopped

30. I would've bought this house if I .... enough money.

a) had had b) would have
c) had d) wouldn't have

Study... Part 3 | Skills



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

When we talk about the advantages and disadvantages of something:

1. We show the main ideas in the introduction.
2. One body paragraph contains the advantages and another one contains the disadvantages in detail.
3. Give examples for your ideas as supporting sentences.
4. Use transition words like, on the one hand/ on the other hand / unlike/ although.
5. Conclude your essay by restating the main topic in brief.

MODEL ESSAY

How technology can improve learning

Introduction

Technology has affected different industries as a whole and education is one of them. From schools to colleges and universities, everyone can feel the impact of technology. Surely, there are advantages and some disadvantages for technology in the field of education.

Main body

On the one hand, technology has proved to be a helping hand for teachers who sometimes find it hard to explain certain things within normal classrooms. Teachers are able to prepare their lessons in a very good way by including different types of activities and interactive controls for students. Also, it helps students and teachers to communicate easily, whether at school or from their homes. In addition to that, technology could help students to do any kind of research as they can find any information they want on the internet.

On the other hand, technology can cause distraction and lack of focus when students have access to social media and online gaming websites. Also, not all students have equal access to technology and good internet connections, so there will be inequality among students all over the country.

Conclusion

Finally, we can say that technology is going to stay and develop. We need to make a balance between its advantages and disadvantages. This balance aims at making the best use of technology and avoiding its demerits.



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم لنهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)

The Mona Lisa is a world-famous piece by Leonardo da Vinci, the great Italian painter, painted sometime between 1503 and 1519. It is considered to be one of the greatest works of art ever created. The Mona Lisa is a portrait of a woman, believed to be Lisa Giocondo, the wife of Francesco del Giocondo.

The Mona Lisa is famous for its enigmatic smile. Some critics have said that the smile is a sign of the woman's intelligence and mystery. While others have claimed that it is a sign of her happiness and contentment. Whatever the true meaning of the smile may be, it has captivated audiences from all over the world for centuries.

The Mona Lisa is also notable for its unique style and technique. Leonardo da Vinci used a method known as "sfumato" to create the painting's soft, blurred edges and subtle shading. This technique gives the Mona Lisa its unique, lifelike appearance.

The Mona Lisa is currently on display at the Louvre Museum in Paris, France. It is one of the museum's most popular attractions, with millions of visitors coming to see it each year. Despite its fame and popularity, the Mona Lisa remains a mystery and continues to be a source of awe and fascination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Mona Lisa is a portrait of a ....
a) child b) boy c) woman d) man

2. The Mona Lisa has a .... smile.
a) funny b) mysterious c) stupid d) gloomy

3. .... people come to visit the Louvre Museum in Paris yearly.
a) Some b) Little c) Few d) A lot of

4. Leonardo da Vinci used a technique that gives the Mona Lisa its unique, ... appearance.
a) natural b) bad c) negative d) fearful

5. The pronoun "its" in the last paragraph refers to the ....
a) art b) museum c) visitor d) painting

6. People give .... explanation for the smile of the Mona Lisa.
a) same b) different c) exact d) identical

7. The Mona Lisa was painted during the .... century.
a) fifteenth b) fourteenth c) sixteenth d) twentieth

(B) Translation

2 **(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1. But for the effort of our brave soldiers, we wouldn't have won the war of 1973.

a) ولكن بجهود جنودنا النبلاء انتصرنا فى حرب ١٩٧٣.

b) بدون جهود جنودنا الشجعان لانتصرنا فى حرب ١٩٧٣.

c) لو كان لدينا جهود أبنائنا الأقوياء لانتصرنا فى حرب ١٩٧٣.

d) لولا جهود جنودنا الشجعان لما انتصرنا فى حرب ١٩٧٣.

2. Any country is in great need of persons of wisdom to modernise the educational system and raise awareness among young people.

a) إن أى دولة فى حاجة ماسة إلى أشخاص ذوى حكمة لتحديث النظام التعليمى وزيادة الوعى بين الشباب.

b) إن أى دولة فى حاجة ملحة إلى أشخاص ذوى خبرة لتحديث البرنامج التعليمى وزيادة الوعى بين الناس.

c) إن كل دولة فى حاجة ملحة إلى أشخاص ذوى حكمة لتحديث النظام التعليمى وزيادة الفضول بين الشباب.

d) إن أى دولة فى حاجة ملحة إلى أشخاص ذوى تجربة لتحديث المحتوى التعليمى وزيادة الفهم بين الشباب.

3. Unlike other means of transport, the bicycle does not use petrol. This means that it keeps the air clean. It also does not need a big space to park.

a) على عكس وسائل التواصل الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البترول وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء ولا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة لصفها.

b) على عكس وسائل المواصلات الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البنزين وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء وهى أيضًا لا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة للانتظار.

c) على عكس وسائل المواصلات الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البنزين وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء وتحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة للركن.

d) مثل وسائل المواصلات الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البنزين وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء ولا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة للانتظار.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. يُعد مترو الأنفاق واحدًا من الإنجازات الهامة للدولة المصرية فى السنوات الأخيرة وذلك لدوره الهام فى حل مشكلة التكدس المرورى وتقليل عدد الحوادث.

a) The underground considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian State in recent years for its important role in solve the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents.

b) The underground is considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian society in recently years for its importance role in solving the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents.

c) Metro is considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian State in recent years for its important role in solving the problem of traffic crowds and reducing the amount of accidents.

d) The metro is considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian State in recent years for its important role in solving the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents.

5. لا توجد تفرقة فى مصر مبنية على الدين أو النوع أو اللون أو المكانة الاجتماعية أو الثروة. كلنا متساوون؛ الرجل والمرأة، المسلم والمسيحى.

a) In Egypt, there is no discount based on religion, gender, colour, social position or wealth. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslim and Christian.

b) In Egypt, there is no discrimination based on religious, gender, colour, sociable position or health. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslim and Christian.

c) In Egypt, there is no discrimination based in religion, gender, colour, social location or wealth. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslim and Christian.

d) In Egypt, there is no discrimination based on religion, gender, colour, social position or wealth. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslims and Christians.

6. إذا لم تضع أهدافا واضحة، فلا تلومن إلا نفسك على عدم تحقيقك لأى شىء.

a) If you set clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

b) In case of setting clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

c) Without you set clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

d) Unless you set clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

(C) Writing

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"From your own point of view, what is the most useful invention?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Unit 8 **Al-Azhar Corner**



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Sadeq : Hello, my friend, what's up?
Fadel : (1).. .
Sadeq : I'm fine, too. What is in your hand?
Fadel : This is a design for a robot.
Sadeq : (2)..!
Fadel : Yes. I've been working on it for years.
Sadeq : (3)..?
Fadel : I'm going to make an offer for several companies to produce it.
Sadeq : Good idea! (4)..?
Fadel : If I hadn't studied mechatronics well, I wouldn't have done this project.
Sadeq : Good job, my friend.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Qualified jurists have to find .... solutions for new problems.
   a) old   b) ancient   c) modern   d) novel
2. Maslahah is the consideration of .... interest or benefit.
   a) individual   b) personal   c) no   d) public

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the fundamental source of Islam?
4. What is the technical meaning of the consensus?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. The policemen .... at the terrorists to prevent them from escaping.
   a) frightened   b) fired   c) feared   d) terrified
2. I was .... the breakfast when the lights went out.
   a) preparing   b) digging   c) painting   d) watering

(B) Answer the following:

3. Who did Jim see fighting on the ship when he looked into the window?
4. Why do you think that it was impossible for Jim to take the boat to the shore?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Some scientists have found that people are more likely to catch a cold when they are unhappy or under stress.

(B) Translate into English:

- الإجماع هو الأصل الثالث من أصول التشريع الإسلامى.

Unit 8

Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options: *(2 marks)*

1. The words .... and .... have the same meaning as the word "annoying".

a) disturbing b) exciting c) common d) familiar e) troublesome

2. It is more useful to try doing your homework ....

a) lonely b) on your own c) of your own d) only e) alone

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *(12 marks)*

3. .... is a system that uses satellites to show your exact position on the Earth on a special piece of equipment.

a) CBC b) GPR c) CPR d) GPS

4. A lot of birds fly at night and .... with the help of the stars.

a) control b) notice c) navigate d) lead

5. Dalia spent hours chatting .... her friend Maysa about the school event.

a) about b) on c) for d) to

6. A .... car is a vehicle with an engine that uses both petrol and electricity.

a) plant b) hybrid c) mixed d) hyphened

7. My father bought a .... because he likes to read e-books while on the bus.

a) smartphone b) smart laptop c) smart car d) smart TV

8. Many .... are so helpful, but somehow make people lazy.

a) discoveries b) explorations c) inventions d) memories

9. I would have attended the meeting if I .... time.

a) would have had b) had had c) had d) have had

10. .... doing regular exercises, I will be overweight.

a) Without b) Unless c) As long as d) If

11. I would put on protective glasses if I .... you.

a) were b) will be c) had been d) am

12. Unless you had a modern car, you .... able to go to Aswan.

a) will be b) wouldn't be c) wouldn't have been d) won't be

13. If you can't impose your conditions شروط, you .... negotiate تتفاوض.

a) would b) should c) need d) ought

14. If he had used cars, he .... us one of them easily. He only deals in brand-new cars.

a) would have sold b) would sell c) will sell d) may sell

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: *(7 marks)*

Have you ever heard that a wealthy person died of hunger? I was shocked when I read a very impressive story about a very rich man. That man had huge wealth and a vast palace. He used to leave this family in their usual house to spend a few days every month alone in his palace to plan for his coming businesses and count his increasing money. He used to keep his money in an enormous room in the palace. Once, he closed the room without realising that he had left the key out. After so many hours, he began to feel hungry and wanted to go out to have something to eat, but he found out his terrible mistake. That room had no handle to be opened from inside and the immense size of the palace prevented the man's cries from reaching anyone outside. He tried very hard to open the metal door, but in vain. Days and nights passed while he was starving. Finally, he became sure he would die, so he injured his finger and used his blood to write the moral of that awful situation on the wall. He wrote, "The richest man in the city died of starvation." I started to think differently about the benefits of being rich; having a family is far more important.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. Why did the rich man use to spend a few days by himself?
a) To make decisions. b) To make plans.
c) To make sacrifices. d) To perform prayers.

16. Because of the end of the rich man, the writer decided that ....
a) having a family isn't important b) being rich is the best aim
c) it's better to have a family d) the family shouldn't have left home

17. How often does he leave family in their usual house?
a) Once a year. b) Three times a year.
c) Weekly. d) Monthly.

18. The man couldn't be heard ....
a) because he was weak b) because of the huge size of the palace
c) no one heard him d) he lost the key

19. Why did he injure himself?
a) To drink blood. b) To paint the wall.
c) To become rich. d) To write a message.

20. The best title for the passage is "..................".
a) Richness is a Blessing b) The Killer Wealth
c) The Killer Family d) The Rich Commit Suicide

21. The word "immense" means ....
a) very small b) average c) massive d) tiny

22. Choose the correct English translation: *(2 marks)*

- يجب أن يتعاون الشعب مع الحكومة لزيادة الاستثمار من أجل مواجهة مشكلة البطالة وذلك عن طريق إنشاء المشروعات الصغيرة والتي تستوعب عددًا من العاملين.

a) The people should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting up small projects that employ a number of workers.

b) The peoples should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of employment by setting up small projects that understand a number of workers.

c) The people should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting down small projects where employ a number of workers.

d) The people ought to cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting up great projects that understand a number of workers.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation: *(2 marks)*

- Using the internet has become easier and the chance for individuals to obtain mass information at a great speed has become available.

a) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل وتغيير الأفراد للحصول على كم هائل من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبح متاحًا.

b) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل وفرصة الأفراد للحصول على تواصل كبير من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبحت متاحة.

c) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل وفرصة الأفراد للحصول على كمية كبيرة من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبحت قيمة.

d) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل وفرصة الأفراد للحصول على كم هائل من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبحت متاحة.

24. Answer the following questions: *(1.5 marks)*

1. Do you think that Captain Smollett is a good captain? Prove your answer.
2. Why do think that Jim wanted to be quick and find the boat as he said?
3. Do you think that Jim's plan was a good one? Why?

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How important is the internet in society?" *(3.5 marks)*

....

....

....

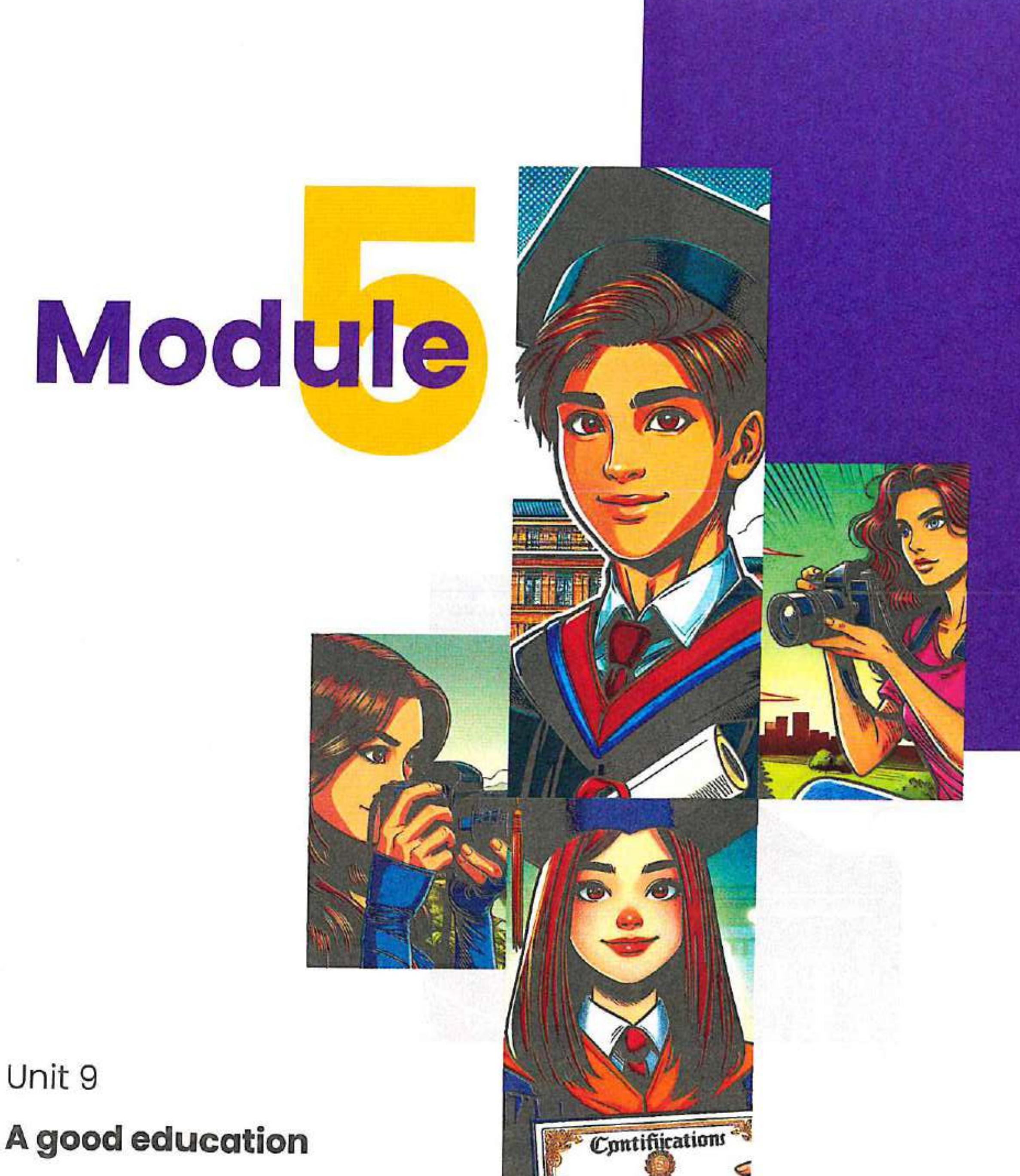
....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 307

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Module 5



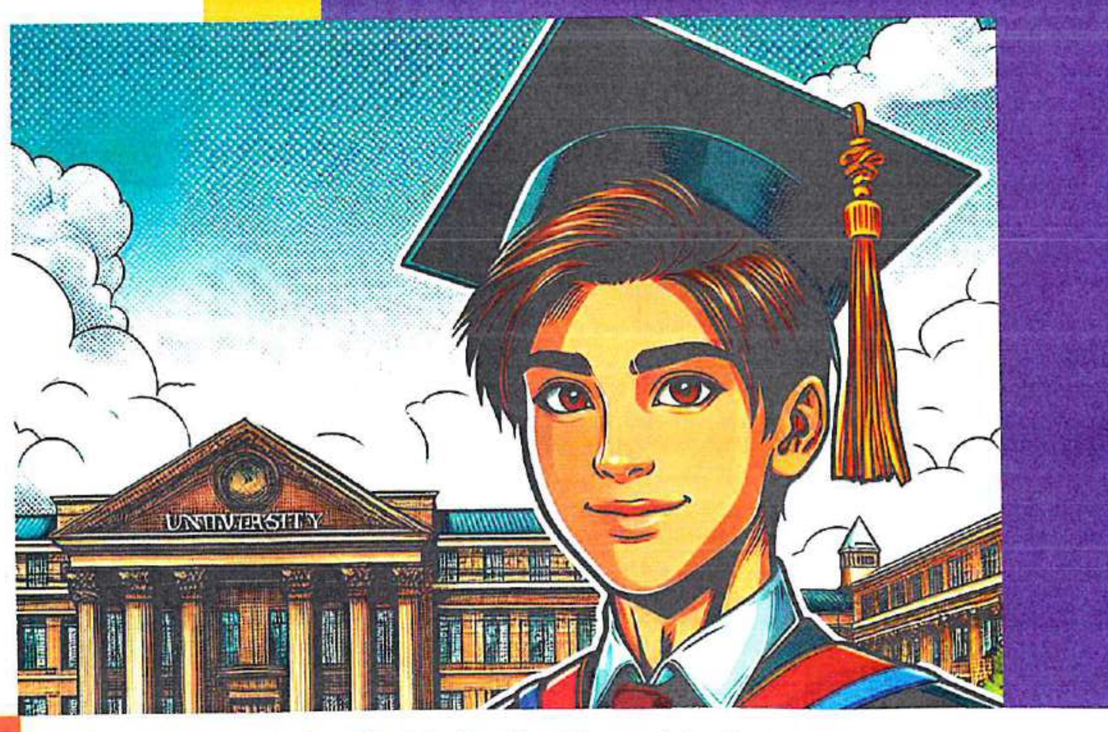
Unit 9

A good education

Unit 10

What's your job?

Unit 9
A good education



Objectives

Reading : *Text about Charlotte Brontë and her novel Jane Eyre*
Writing : *A summary of Jane Eyre*
Listening : *A discussion on changing schools; agreeing or disagreeing on an opinion*
Speaking : *Agreeing and disagreeing*
Language : *Past simple passive; Past simple and past perfect (Active)*
Communication : Supporting your opinion with reasons
Life Skills : Different ways of learning

Study... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	housekeeper (n)	مدبرة المنزل	servant (n)	خادم/خادمة
governess (n)	مربية	orphan (n) (adj)	يتيم		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

advertise (v) – d	يعلن	fire (n)	حريق	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما
apply (v) (y ied)	يتقدم	forget (v)	ينسى	relatives (n)	أقارب
author (n)	مؤلف	glad (adj)	سعيد	school term (n)	فصل دراسى
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	helpful (adj)	مفيد	secret (n)	سر
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	honesty (n)	أمانة	unkind (adj)	غير طيب أو عطوف
dead (adj)	ميت	importance (n)	أهمية	unusual (adj)	غير عادى
education (n)	تعليم	kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة	upset (v)	يضايق
employ (v) – ed	يوظف	later (adj)	لاحق	wealthy (adj)	ثرى
extra (adj)	إضافى	mind (v) – ed	يمانع		
fail (v) – ed	يرسب/يفشل	own (v) – ed	يمتلك		

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

bully (n) (v) (y ied)	بلطجى/متنمر/يتنمر	energy (n)	طاقة	huge (adj)	ضخم
comfortable (adj)	مريح	fight (n) (v)	شجار/ يتشاجر	previous (adj)	سابق
continue (v) – d	يستمر	gardener (n)	جناينى/بستانى		
earn (v) – ed	يكسب مالًا	headmaster (n)	ناظر		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I've never doubted my son's ....; he never tells lies.
   a) honesty b) friendship c) disloyalty d) dishonesty
2. Parents always work hard to give their children a good ....
   a) importance b) education c) succession d) pay
3. It's .... to leave your pet outside in the cold without proper shelter مأوى.
   a) merciful b) cruel c) annoyed d) kind
4. My friend is used to expensive cars as he was born into a .... family.
   a) big b) wealthy c) comfortable d) huge
5. The .... showed the guests to their rooms which was part of her job.
   a) electrician b) headmaster c) governess d) housekeeper
6. We all must pay attention to .... who have lost their parents at a young age.
   a) criminals b) organs c) headmasters d) orphans
7. I think his loud voice and bad words have .... his neighbours.
   a) amused b) upset c) pleased d) failed
8. The .... has signed the book before giving it to me as a present.
   a) reader b) actor c) author d) maker
9. I don't .... going to the beach now; it's cool today.
   a) mean b) mind c) serve d) apply
10. Jane Eyre always .... with her cousin, so she is punished.
    a) keeps b) makes c) fights d) loses

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

become friends with يصبح صديقًا مع	have lessons with يحضر دروسًا مع	return to يعود إلى
make friends يكوّن صداقات/يصادق	hear about/of يسمع عن	right for مناسب لـ
keep ... warm يحافظ على ... دافئًا	instead of بدلًا من	save from ينقذ من
do an online course يقوم بدورة تدريبية عبر الإنترنت	keep ... under control يبقى ... تحت السيطرة	send away يطرد
apply for يتقدم إلى (وظيفة)	keep in touch with يبقى على اتصال مع	stay in/at يبقى فى
continue with يستمر فى	lose a job يفقد وظيفة	work for يعمل لدى
cruel to قاسٍ مع	received no replies لم يتلق ردًا	make a fire يشعل نارًا (للتدفئة/للطهى)
come round/around يزور شخصًا فى المنزل أو العمل	lose touch with يفقد الاتصال بـ	set fire to يشعل حريقًا
fight with يحارب/يتقاتل مع	move to ينتقل إلى	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apply	يتقدم/يطبق	application applicant	استمارة تطبيق	applied	مطبق
advertise	يعلن	advertisement advertising advertiser	إعلان إعلان مُعلن	advertised	معلن عنه
---------------------------		cruelty	قسوة	cruel	قاس
fail	يرسب/يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failed	فاشل
---------------------------		honesty	أمانة	honest	أمين
own	يمتلك	owner ownership	مالك ملكية	---------------------------	
serve	يخدم	service	خدمة	serviceable	نافع/مفيد
help	يساعد	help/helper	مساعدة/مساعد	helpful	معين/مساعد
upset	يضايق	upset	اضطراب/انزعاج/ضيق	upsetting	مزعج/مقلق

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Ahmed advertised for the job online. (v)
- The advertisement spread everywhere. (n)
- Many people saw the advertised job. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
cruel	قاس	unkind/heartless		friendly/gentle	ودود/لطيف
dead	ميت	lifeless/buried		alive/living	حي
employ	يوظف	hire/engage		fire/dismiss	يرفد
huge	ضخم	enormous/giant		tiny/minute	ضئيل الحجم

importance	أهمية	significance/influence	insignificance/unimportance عدم أهمية
previous	سابق	earlier/former	later/afterward/next فيما بعد
unusual	غير عادى	uncommon/abnormal/ strange	common/conventional شائع/تقليدى
wealthy	ثرى	rich/affluent	poor/destitute فقير/معدم

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have worked .... lots of unkind people, so I want to travel abroad.
a) in b) on c) as d) for

2. The great museum is really huge and remarkable. The synonym of the word "huge" is "..................".
a) tiny b) minute c) enormous d) small

3. To improve your English, you can .... some online courses.
a) do b) make c) play d) lose

4. After moving to my new house, I can walk to work instead .... going by car.
a) in b) with c) by d) of

5. His car is very expensive. I think he is very wealthy. The antonym of the word "wealthy" is "..................".
a) destitute b) affluent c) rich d) famous

6. You can apply .... this job online or send the application by post.
a) at b) on c) for d) in

7. We didn't expect to meet all those .... to the job. They were too many.
a) apply b) applications c) applicants d) applied

8. When you can't call or know anything about some friends means that you ....
a) keep in touch with them b) stay in touch with them
c) lose in touch of them d) lose touch with them

9. The governess was cruel and the children never liked her. The synonym of the word "cruel" is "..................".
a) plump b) friendly c) kind d) unkind

10. The restaurant looked unusual and the food was tasteless. The synonym of the word "unusual" is "..................".
a) unoriginal b) ugly c) uncommon d) conventional



Reading Text (1)

Jane Eyre

Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816.

She and her two sisters all became famous authors.

Charlotte Brontë's most famous book[1] is Jane Eyre. It was written[2] in 1847. Jane Eyre was an orphan who lived with her cousins and her wealthy aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was[3] unkind and they did not want Jane to live with them.

Jane was sent away to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the owner, Mr Brocklehurst, was very cruel, so the students lived unhappy lives. Finally, Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After two years, Jane decided to apply for a job as a governess. Governesses were often employed by rich families. She started to teach a young French girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind housekeeper.

One night, there was a fire at Thornfield Hall and Jane saved Mr Rochester. He said that the fire was started by a servant called Grace, but Grace did not lose her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a secret in the house. Jane left Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- عند وجود 's الملكية لا نستخدم the فى أسلوب التفضيل.

٢- لاحظ استخدام المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى.

٣- كلمة family هنا تعامل معاملة المفرد لأنها تشير للعائلة كاملة.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



Charlotte Brontë's Job

Dear Ellen,

I told you some time ago that I wanted to get a good job. I am glad to say that I have found one as a governess and I am quite happy.

The house is not very large but it is very comfortable and the gardens are huge. Although I earn less money than in my previous job, I am working with kind, friendly people. I have two pupils: an eight-year-old girl and a six-year-old boy.

My job as a governess can be very difficult because children have so much energy. I just hope I will not become ill trying to keep them under control and make them happy.

Well, I must continue with my work. I hope to see you soon.

Kind regards,

Charlotte

Listening Text (1)





Home-schooling

Teacher : We don't know much[1] about Jane's early school days, but I imagine she had gone to school before she moved to her aunt's house, as we know she could read. We also know that she was sent to a boarding school after she had upset Mrs Reed and her cousin John.

Omar : What's a boarding school?

Teacher : It's a school where children live as well as study[2]. In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich. And of course some rich children were taught at home. Governesses, like Jane, were employed to teach them.

Ali : My cousin, Kamal, had lessons at home.

Teacher : Did he, Ali?[3] Why was that?

Ali : He had to stay at home for six months because he'd broken his back when the school term started. He wanted to go to school, but he'd already made lots of friends and they came round to see him, so it wasn't too bad.

Teacher : Did a teacher come to his house every day?

Ali : No. He was sent an email every day with the work that his friends were doing in school, but my aunt helped him when he couldn't understand it.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة much هنا غير متبوعة باسم ولكن تشير لاسم غير معدود (information).

٢- تستخدم as well as للعطف بمعنى (بالإضافة إلى) و يكون ما بعدها مثل ما قبلها (اسم/فعل/صفة ...).

٣- وجود الـ (,) comma هنا قبل الاسم يشير للنداء.

Scan & listen



Listening Text (2)

Moving to a New School

Dareen : Dad, I don't want to change schools. I want to go to school with my friends.

Father : It's not so bad, Dareen. You know, my family used to travel, and I was taken to lots of different countries. So, I'd been to lots of different schools before we came back to Egypt. You can make new friends at a different school.

Dareen : I like my friends at my school now.

Father : It is easy to keep in touch with your friends. I always see you on your phone[1]. I lost touch with the people I'd gone to school with.

Mother : If you don't change school, maybe you can do an online course. Some extra lessons will be helpful. Mona's mother said that Mona had had lots of problems in school before she started having extra lessons. And they say some of these online courses are fantastic. They can understand what your level is and give you work that's just right for you. In fact, you were given a new computer to help you study.

Father : And you can chat with other students online, too. Just like you do at school.

Mother : Mona's mother says Mona has really improved with so much help from her online teachers.

Dareen : But, Mum, I learn a lot at school now. I only failed the test because I'd been ill when I took it.

Father : OK. OK. We'll leave things the way they are for now and then we can discuss it again after your exams at the end of the year.

Dareen : OK. Thank you.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ هذا التعبير بمعنى تستخدم الهاتف.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	(be) born in + (مكان/سنة) ولد فى	- My sister was born in Alexandria. - Ali was born in 2002.
	(be) born on + (يوم) ولد فى	His mother was born on 21st August 1979.
	(be) born into ... ولد فى عائلة	Nora was born into a good family.
	(be) born with + (disease) مولود بـ (مرض)	Merna was born with a small hole in her heart.
2	work with يعمل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
	work for يعمل لدى (شخص/شركة)/يعمل لصالح (من أجل)	- My brother works for a big company in the city. - Egypt works for peace in the Middle East.
	work in يعمل فى (مكان/مجال)	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.
	work on يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
	work as يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram newspaper.
3	a six-year-old girl بنت عمرها ٦ سنوات	I have got a six-year-old girl and an eight-year-old boy.
	six-year-old girls بنات عمر كل منهن ٦ سنوات	All the players in our team are six-year-old girls.

لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم:

second/minute/hour/day/week/month/year/decade/century

- We usually have a five-minute break for coffee at midday.
- Our company held five-hour meetings.

فى حالة وجود كلمة (time) بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد و (s') فى حالة الجمع:

- He has an appointment with the doctor in two days' time.

4	dead صفة بمعنى ميت	My father is dead, and I am responsible for the family.
	death اسم بمعنى الموت	The only thing that we should prepare for is death.

5	later	فيما بعد (ظرف)	I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later.
	latter	الأخير أو الثانى من اثنين (صفة)	This point is explained fully in the latter part of the chapter.
6	employ (v)	يوظف	Tourism employs a lot of people.
	employee (n)	موظف	There are some lazy employees in this company.
	employer (n)	صاحب عمل	Mr Ali is a very kind employer. He treats us well.
	employment (n)	وظيفة/توظيف	I have tried to find employment in this city, but in vain.
7	win	يفوز بشىء	I was happy when I won the match.
	earn	يكسب مالًا من عمله/قوت يومه	Ramy earns his living by selling books.
	gain (fame - experience - ...)	يكتسب شيئًا معنويًا	Gaining experience is better than earning money at the beginning of my career.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some students take part-time jobs to .... money and cover their expenses.
   a) gain b) win c) beat d) earn
2. You'll improve at the job as you .... experience.
   a) gain b) win c) beat d) earn
3. My brother likes working .... old cars.
   a) for b) as c) in d) with
4. Mr Esam is a very kind .... for whom everyone likes to work.
   a) customer b) employer c) employee d) client
5. Hany is a very clever .... who really deserves a promotion.
   a) customer b) employer c) employee d) client
6. We were shocked when we heard about his sudden ....
   a) dead b) dying c) died d) death
7. The businessman was found .... in his car, so we called the police.
   a) dead b) died c) death d) dying
8. The manager is not here now. Can you call ....?
   a) latter b) late c) lately d) later
9. I have two trainees: an adult girl and .... boy.
   a) seven year old b) seven c) seven years d) a seven-year-old
10. I'll be out of the city in .... time.
    a) four day's b) four days' c) four day d) four-day



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The governess was .... to the boys, so they complained to their father.
a) merciful b) cruel c) keen d) kind

2. This .... uses long, complex sentences in his writing.
a) photographer b) actor c) author d) composer

3. The rich have .... to do their housework, such as cleaning and washing.
a) gardeners b) guards c) lawyers d) servants

4. I think the internet was the most important invention in the 20th ....
a) year b) decade c) century d) millennium

5. After spending 12 hours teaching English, I have no .... to work more today.
a) money b) idea c) energy d) electricity

6. The king got a .... to teach his children. She lived with them in the palace.
a) servant b) housekeeper c) governess d) nurse

7. A lot of children were left .... owing to wars. They lost their parents and their houses.
a) orphan b) cruel c) wealthy d) educated

8. I want to get some .... information to be able to finish my research.
a) many b) huge c) extra d) extreme

9. My friend's uncle is a very .... man who has lots of cars.
a) poor b) healthy c) cruel d) wealthy

10. The huge .... was caused by a cigarette. There were a lot of losses and victims.
a) energy b) fire c) power d) strength

11. Rania applied for the job which was .... in Al-Ahram newspaper.
a) employed b) broadcast c) informed d) advertised

12. The .... asked his teachers to provide extra sessions for the weak students.
a) headmistress b) headmaster c) headquarters d) headline

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

13. My father asked me to .... friends with Ali again, but I couldn't.
a) make b) lose c) miss d) get

14. A lot of babies are born .... some diseases or disabilities.
a) into b) on c) by d) with

15. I asked my boss for a .... holiday to spend with my family.
a) two-weeks b) two-week c) two-week's d) two-weeks'

16. I sent many emails to the company, but I .... no replies.
a) achieved b) made c) received d) did

17. The bad student was sent .... owing to his/her bad behaviour.
a) of b) into c) away d) for

18. Why don't you come .... and study together? I'm waiting for you at 5.
a) around b) out c) away d) about

19. The poor child's parents died when he was five. He is a/an .... Longman
a) teacher b) widow c) governess d) orphan

20. The young lady is an honest ....; she works for our neighbour in his new house, doing all the housework perfectly. Longman
a) housekeeper b) governess c) goalkeeper d) governor

21. I usually .... with my relatives, especially on special occasions; we are on good terms with each other. Longman
a) lose touch b) connect c) keep in touch d) contact

22. Ramy is very ....; he is unkind and usually hurts others. Longman
a) honest b) decent c) tolerant d) cruel

23. My uncle .... a big private school in our town. Longman
a) possess b) owns c) lends d) owes

24. I asked him to keep the news ...., but he told all our friends. (الإسماعيلية)
a) secretary b) screed c) sacred d) secret

25. A .... school is a school where students live as well as study. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر)
a) boarding b) brooding c) breeding d) burdening

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

26. How many people did the company employ? The antonyms of the verb "employ" are "..................".
a) hire b) fire c) understand d) learn e) dismiss

27. She was often cruel to her sister. The synonyms of the adjective "cruel" are "..................".
a) friendly b) gentle c) lifeless d) heartless e) unkind

28. It is a good thing to .... friends with honest and reliable people.
a) set b) make c) do d) receive e) become

29. Have you heard .... the author who wrote "*Oliver Twist*"? Was he Charles Dickens?
a) of b) with c) for d) about e) from

30. The huge dam could help us save water behind it. The antonyms of the word "huge" are "..................".
a) tiny b) colossal c) low d) minute e) enormous

B Language

Past Simple Passive — المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى

يستخدم المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى عندما نشير لأحداث تمت وكان التركيز على الحدث وليس فاعله أو كان الفاعل مجهولًا.

لاحظ الفرق بين المبنى للمعلوم (Active) والمبنى للمجهول (Passive) فى الماضى البسيط:

Affirmative الإثبات	Subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل	
	• A lot of tourists visited the Pyramids last week.	(Active)
	Object مفعول + (was – were) + P.P.	
	• The Pyramids were visited by a lot of tourists.	(Passive)
Negative النفى	Subject فاعل + didn't + inf.	
	• She didn't clean the house yesterday.	(Active)
	Object مفعول + (wasn't – weren't) + P.P.	
	• The house wasn't cleaned yesterday.	(Passive)
Question السؤال	Wh-word + did + subject فاعل + inf. + ...?	
	(OR) Did + subject فاعل + inf. + ...?	
	• Where did you watch the match yesterday?	(Active)
	• Did you attend the party last week?	(Active)
	Wh-word + (was/were) + object مفعول + P.P. + ...?	
	(OR) (Was/Were) + object مفعول + P.P. + ...?	
	• Where was the match watched yesterday?	(Passive)
	• Was the party attended yesterday?	(Passive)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They .... this block of flats five years ago.
   a) had built b) were built c) built d) are building
2. This picture .... by a good photographer last week.
   a) took b) was taking c) was taken d) would be taken
3. Ronald Regan .... as the President of the United States in 1980.
   a) was elected b) elected c) has been elected d) had elected
4. My house was broken into yesterday, but nothing ....
   a) wasn't stolen b) stolen c) was stolen d) stole
5. .... that match in the stadium?
   a) You watched b) Did you watch
   c) Were you watched d) You were watched

Passive Tenses

الأزمنة فى المبنى للمجهول

Present Simple المضارع البسيط	**Subject** فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل She plays tennis well. **Object** مفعول + (am/is/are) + P.P. Tennis is played well (by her).	(Active) (Passive)
Present Continuous المضارع المستمر	**Subject** فاعل + (am/is/are) + (v-ing) We are playing tennis now. **Object** مفعول + (am/is/are) + being + P.P. Tennis is being played now.	(Active) (Passive)
Past Continuous الماضى المستمر	**Subject** فاعل + (was/were) + (v-ing) They were playing tennis yesterday evening. **Object** مفعول + (was/were) + being + P.P. Tennis was being played yesterday evening.	(Active) (Passive)
Present Perfect المضارع التام	**Subject** فاعل + (has/have) + P.P. He has played tennis for years. **Object** مفعول + (has/have) + been + P.P. Tennis has been played for years.	(Active) (Passive)
Past Perfect الماضى التام	**Subject** فاعل + had + P.P. She had played tennis before lunch. **Object** مفعول + had + been + P.P. Tennis had been played before lunch.	(Active) (Passive)
Future Simple المستقبل البسيط	**Subject** فاعل + will + inf. They will play tennis tomorrow. **Object** مفعول + will + be + P.P. Tennis will be played tomorrow.	(Active) (Passive)

Practice... Language General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother .... me to the dentist after school yesterday.
a) took b) was taken c) is taking d) had taken

2. The letter .... by post last month.
a) will send b) sent c) was sending d) was sent

3. His homework .... yesterday, so the teacher punished him.
a) did b) didn't do c) was done d) wasn't done

4. The wheel .... thousands of years ago.
a) is invented b) was invented c) had invented d) invented

5. Osama .... from prison three days ago. The police are now looking for him.
a) was escaped b) escaped c) had escaped d) has escaped

6. The film wasn't good. I .... it very much.
a) wasn't enjoyed b) don't enjoy c) never enjoys d) didn't enjoy

7. I .... nice presents on my last birthday.
a) was giving b) gave c) was given d) had been given

8. You can't enter the room because it .... now.
a) is cleaning b) was cleaning
c) have been cleaned d) is being cleaned

9. We .... to the club to enjoy our time after our exams.
a) took b) were taking c) were taken d) had been taken

10. This road .... very often in the past, but now many people use it.
a) wasn't used b) didn't use c) isn't used d) wasn't using

11. The Lighthouse of Alexandria .... by earthquakes in the fourteenth century.
a) was damaged b) is damaged c) has damaged d) damages

12. Our great football team .... in 1902.
a) formed b) was formed
c) has been formed d) had been formed

13. Mona is very happy with her new baby who .... last week.
a) had been born b) has born c) was born d) born

14. You .... to the party with your friends. Why didn't you go?
a) were inviting b) were invited c) invited d) weren't invited

15. Don't worry; sooner or later, the problem ....
a) will solve b) was solved c) is solving d) will be solved

16. Sally .... Mona to the wedding party, but she couldn't go as she was busy.
a) is invited b) will be invited c) invited d) was invited

17. It is known that Gustavo Eiffel .... the Eiffel Tower in 1889.
a) was designed b) was designing
c) had been designed d) designed

18. Has the e-mail .... by anyone?
a) sent b) send c) been sent d) been sending

19. The school windows ....

a) have just cleaned
b) had just been cleaned
c) have just been cleaned
d) are just cleaning

20. On my way home last night, I .... by some thieves, who robbed me of everything.

a) am attacked
b) was attacked
c) attacked
d) be attacked

21. The company .... by a group of friends in 2007.

a) has been founded
b) was founded
c) founded
d) was found

22. My teacher gave us a lot of questions, but many of them .... as they were difficult.

a) weren't answered
b) didn't answer
c) answered
d) wasn't answered

23. I play chess with my friends every day. I haven't been beaten at chess yet. This means ....

a) everyone has already beaten me at chess
b) nobody has beaten me at chess so far
c) I have been beaten at chess
d) I have never beaten anyone at chess

24. A: Where .... taken? B: To prison.

a) the criminals were
b) were the criminals
c) the criminals have been
d) did the criminals

25. "Who rewarded you yesterday?" What does this question mean?

a) Who did you reward yesterday?
b) Whom did you reward yesterday?
c) By whom were you rewarded yesterday?
d) None of the previous.

26. By the time lunch ...., the guests had arrived! (Longman)

a) had been prepared
b) was prepared
c) was preparing
d) prepared

27. My room .... yesterday because I was busy studying for the exam. (Longman)

a) wasn't arranged
b) didn't arrange
c) wasn't arranging
d) hasn't been arranged

28. The telephone was .... to enable people to connect. (السويس)

a) invents
b) inventing
c) invented
d) invent

29. Our neighbour .... to hospital in an ambulance after the fire last night. (بورسعيد)

a) is taken
b) was taken
c) had taken
d) was taking

30. A new school .... in our village last year. (البحيرة - كوم حمادة)

a) had been built
b) was built
c) was building
d) built

31. He .... to sit down until he had apologised. (الشرقية - الحسينية)

a) didn't allow
b) doesn't allow
c) wasn't allowed
d) isn't allowed



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I want to hire a .... to look after my flowers and the other plants there.
a) guardian b) planter c) photographer d) gardener

2. Their attempt to climb Everest ended in .... They couldn't climb it.
a) success b) cruelty c) failure d) honesty

3. The hotel I stayed in was so large and .... It was a five-star one.
a) tiring b) cruel c) kind d) comfortable

4. Thanks to my ...., I've learnt about etiquette and how to deal with others.
a) servant b) governess c) orphan d) gardener

5. His father's family lived in a big house with .... They were very rich.
a) scientists b) advertisers c) owners d) servants

6. The company decided to .... a business consultant مستشار to support its strategy.
a) employ b) rent c) improve d) apply

7. Khaled gave me two answers; the first was wrong, but the .... was correct.
a) later b) late c) latter d) latest

8. It .... me when someone makes sound while chewing food.
a) fails b) upsets c) fights d) minds

9. I still remember my maths teacher who used to hit me for no reasons; he was such a .... man.
a) keen b) beautiful c) friendly d) cruel

10. Safaa is employed as a cook, but she does the work of a/an ....
a) housekeeper b) relative c) orphan d) author

11. My coach highlighted the .... of learning from my mistakes.
a) failure b) education c) importance d) application

12. Schools are the most important element عنصر in the .... process.
a) energy b) education c) term d) wealth

13. Every Friday, I meet up with my .... at grandpa's house.
a) relatives b) sides c) servants d) skills

14. What might be your excuse عذر for .... this amazing job?
a) catching b) missing c) losing d) getting

15. When I got sick, my colleagues came .... to see me and I was over the moon.
a) on b) out c) up d) round

Language

16. In 2010, my parents .... in a small flat in the city centre.

a) lived b) had lived c) are living d) were lived

17. How long .... he stay in Luxor last month?

a) did b) do c) does d) done

18. A new sports centre .... in our town a week ago.

a) was opened b) will be opened c) has been opened d) had been opened

19. Governesses .... by rich families.

a) was often employed b) were often employed c) weren't never employed d) often employed

20. The windows and the door ...., then I set off and drove my car to work.

a) locked b) had locked c) were locked d) was locked

21. Two days ago, I .... on a picnic with my family.

a) go b) had been c) went d) was going

22. Anas usually .... his grandfather when he was on holiday.

a) visits b) visit c) was visiting d) visited

23. While I was walking through the forest, I .... and called for help.

a) was losing b) got lost c) have lost d) lost

24. Children from rich families .... at home by a governess.

a) teach b) didn't teach c) taught d) were taught

25. We .... that we had to give in our homework on Thursday.

a) were told b) told c) have been told d) were telling

26. Mr Anderson .... in a hotel in the north of England two months ago.

a) was seen b) is being seen c) saw d) had seen

27. A lot of crimes .... in this neighbourhood last month.

a) are committed b) were committed c) were committing d) committed

28. What was said in the meeting ....

a) didn't expect b) wasn't expecting c) hadn't been expected d) will be expected

29. I .... to stay up late to finish all my work as a punishment.

a) am making b) was made c) was making d) had made

30. I was so angry as I .... in the list of the employees travelling to Dubai.

a) hadn't been enrolled b) haven't been enrolled c) was enrolled d) wasn't enrolling

Study... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4





Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

abilities (n)	قدرات	equipment (n)	معدات	practise (v) – d	يمارس
age (n)	سن/عمر	experiment (n)	تجربة عملية	probably (adv)	ربما/من المحتمل
artist (n)	فنان	home-schooled (adj)	المتعلم فى المنزل	run (v)	يدير/ينظم
bookshop (n)	مكتبة لبيع الكتب	inventor (n)	مخترع	shelf (n)	رف
break (n)	راحة/فاصل	keen (adj)	متحمس	skill (n)	مهارة
bridge (n)	جسر/كوبرى	knowledge (n)	معرفة	so-called (adj)	المزعوم/ما يسمى بـ
bullying (n)	البلطجة/التنمر	lose (v)	يخسر/يفقد	solver (n)	حلّال المشاكل
copy (n) (v) (y-ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	mean (v)	يعنى	subject (n)	مادة دراسية/موضوع
critical (adj)	انتقادى	musician (n)	موسيقار	terrible (adj)	فظيع
electrician (n)	فنى كهرباء	opposite (n)	عكس/نقيض	thinking (n)	تفكير
engine (n)	محرك/موتور	otherwise (adv)	وإلا		
engineering (n)	هندسة	practical (adj)	عملى		

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

appreciate (v) – d	يقدر	confidence (n)	ثقة	improve (v) – d	يتحسن/يحسن
believe (v)– d	يؤمن/يصدق	effort (n)	مجهود	loud (adj)	عالى الصوت
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ خاتمة	failure (n)	فشل	succeed (v) – ed	ينجح

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To master any language, you should .... it a lot.
   a) check b) change c) do d) practise
2. Some STEM subjects depend on .... thinking skills which the students have or acquire يكتسبوها.
   a) practical b) financial c) critical d) funny
3. The .... told me that the wires were old and needed to be changed completely.
   a) carpenter b) electrician c) blacksmith d) politician

4. He couldn't cross the river as there wasn't a/an .... over it.
a) umbrella b) author c) bridge d) stone

5. Our science teacher is very good at doing scientific ....
a) experiences b) experience c) exchanges d) experiments

6. Before starting school, teachers should check students' .... and improve them.
a) wealth b) accounts c) bookshop d) abilities

7. The person who painted this wall is really a great ....
a) musician b) electrician c) artist d) gardener

8. I don't know what's wrong with the car, but the .... is not working.
a) engine b) wing c) bridge d) stone

9. Quiet students find it difficult to focus while .... students don't give them the opportunity.
a) so-called b) loud c) practical d) probable

10. My uncle .... a workshop for carpentry النجارة and he is a good boss.
a) walks b) bullies c) runs d) employs

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a long way from	بعيدًا عن	feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	keen to/on	حريص أن
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	for a while	لبرهة من الزمن	keep going back	يستمر فى العودة
agree with	يتفق مع	for instance	على سبيل المثال	keep on/carry on	يستمر فى
as a consequence	نتيجة لذلك	for that reason	لهذا السبب	learn from	يتعلم من
at the age	فى سن	from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	pick yourself up	استجمع قواك
bridge to	وسيلة لـ/ رابط بين	generate/make electricity	يولّد كهرباء	ready for	جاهز لـ
bring success	يجلب النجاح	get you down	تحزنك / تتعبك	run open days	ينظم أيامًا مفتوحة
build an engine	يصنع محركًا	get on well with	يتناغم/ينسجم مع	start school	يبدأ الدراسة
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	go along with	يوافق/يدعم	support ... with	يدعم ... بـ
do sports	يمارس الرياضة	good at	جيد فى	way of + n./v + ing	طريقة لـ
do well	يؤدى بشكل جيد	I couldn't agree more	أوافق تماما	way to + inf.	طريقة لـ

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appreciate	يقدِّر	appreciation	تقدير	appreciative	تقديرى
believe	يعتقد/يصدق	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	قابل للتصديق
bully	يتنمر	bullying bully	التنمر متنمر	----------------------------	
conclude	يستنتج	conclusion	استنتاج	conclusive	حاسم
confide	يصارح/يأتمن	confidence	ثقة	confident	واثق
criticise	ينتقد	critic criticism	ناقد نقد	critical	انتقادى/محرج
home-school	يتعلم/يعلم فى المنزل	home-schooling	التعليم فى المنزل	home-schooled	خاص بالتعليم فى المنزل
mean	يعنى	meaning	معنى	meaningful meaningless	ذو معنى بلا معنى
practise	يمارس/يتدرب	practice	ممارسة/تدريب	practised practical	ماهر عملى
solve	يحل	solution solver	حل حلال المشاكل	solvable	قابل للحل

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

I can confide my money to my mother only. (v)
I have confidence in my mother's wisdom. (n)
I'm confident that I will win the game. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
knowledge	معرفة	awareness/expertise	ignorance/incompetence	جهل/عدم كفاءة
lose	يخسر	give up/surrender	win/achieve	يفوز/يحقق
loud	عال/صاخب	blaring/noisy	calm/low	هادئ/منخفض

failure	فشل	breakdown/collapse	improvement/success تحسن/نجاح
confidence	ثقة	courage/determination	doubt/fear شك/خوف
keen	متحمس	eager/enthusiastic	unconcerned/indifferent غيرمبال / غيرمهتم

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Writing the article on paper is a .... of time. I think you should use a computer.
a) bridge b) waste c) copy d) piece

2. I asked my son if he was ready .... his final exams.
a) to b) of c) for d) about

3. We must be .... to our parents to whom we owe much.
a) appreciative b) appreciate c) appreciation d) appropriate

4. It is not an easy task to .... well with newcomers on their first day at work.
a) stay with b) go on c) carry on d) get on

5. Any problem is .... if we cooperate to solve it.
a) solver b) solution c) solving d) solvable

6. It's important for a headmaster to have much knowledge. The antonym of the word "knowledge" is "......................".
a) illness b) awareness c) expertise d) incompetence

7. I'll never lose my hope in life. The synonym of the word "lose" is "......................".
a) lend b) give up c) win d) save

8. The referee seemed to have confidence while sending the player away. The antonym of the word "confidence" is "......................".
a) doubt b) determination c) annoyance d) courage

9. In the Faculty of Arts, students learn how to .... literary works.
a) criticism b) critical c) critic d) criticise

10. I have a strong .... in the power of education for nations' development.
a) believe b) believer c) believing d) belief

Reading Text (1)

STEM subjects

Science, technology, engineering and maths were taught in schools long before the invention of the internet. However, we now live in a time when these subjects are more important than ever. This does not mean that music, history, languages and other subjects are not important. However, understanding the so-called STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job in the future.

Many businesses do not have enough people with knowledge of the STEM subjects. For that reason, they are keen to give[1] jobs to young people with these skills.

In the past, STEM subjects were often seen as difficult. To change this idea, many businesses now run open days at which[2] students can try building car engines, using a bike to make electricity, or playing computer games to practise maths.

Schools, too, are helping students to realise that these subjects can be both interesting and fun[3] for boys and girls of all abilities. Schools might not have the equipment to build engines, but many now[4] use different experiments and computers so that students can learn by doing things, and not just by reading a text. This also helps with critical thinking skills which students can use in other subjects.

It is said that[5] 80% of jobs in the future will need students to have skills in the STEM subjects. Of course we will also need artists, musicians, language teachers and other experts, but skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem solvers and inventors of the future.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة keen صفة يأتى بعدها to + inf. بمعنى (متحمس أن يقوم بشىء).

٢- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الوصل مع حرف الجر at which للإشارة للوقت days.

٣- كلمة both يأتى معها and بمعنى: كل من ... و ...

٤- كلمة many هنا غير متبوعة باسم ولكن تشير لاسم معدود (schools).

٥- لاحظ هذا التعبير فى المبنى للمجهول بمعنى (يقال).

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



Failure is Necessary

Introduction	People say that it is impossible to succeed without failure and even the most successful people make mistakes. As well as this[1], many people believe in the importance of learning from your mistakes.
Advantages	Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. As a consequence, they appreciate success more because it hasn't been easy for them. For instance, when football players lose a match, they are sad but they learn how to improve and do better next time.
Disadvantages	On the other hand, success can make you feel positively about what you are doing and it can give you a reason to keep trying. In addition, many people prefer to forget their mistakes so they can have good memories about the past.
Conclusion	In conclusion, although it is possible to have success without failure, from my point of view, it is better to fail sometimes in order to appreciate success more.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تعبير يعنى بالإضافة لذلك.

Listening Text (1) (Workbook)



Scan & listen



The Pros and Cons of Failure

Speaker 1 : I mean, it can't be good for your confidence, can it[1]? It's got to get you down.

Speaker 2 : It was the best thing that ever happened to me. Everything had been a bit too easy for me before, so I wasn't ready for it. But then I had to make some real effort.

Speaker 3 : I hated it but, after feeling sorry for myself for a while, I could see my mistakes and I knew what I had to do.

Speaker 4 : My friends were lovely, but I just felt terrible and I kept on feeling terrible. In fact, I haven't tried it again because it upsets me too much.

Speaker 5 : When you've made as many mistakes as me, you learn to pick yourself up[2] and carry on.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- السؤال المذيل ويتكون من الفعل المساعد المستخدم فى الجملة متبوعًا بضمير فاعل الجملة.

٢- تعبير بمعنى استجمع قواك بعد التعثر.

Listening Text (2)



Education and Life

Girl 1 **:** I don't think that everyone needs[1] to go to university. In fact, I think it's a waste of time for some people.

Girl 2 **:** That's true. If you know you want a job doing something practical, like being an electrician, or if you have a great idea for a business, why not start immediately?[2]

Girl 1 **:** Exactly.

Boy 1 **:** I know in some countries, children start school really early, but I think three is too young. I mean, at that age all children want to do is play!

Boy 2 **:** I'd say the opposite[3]. The earlier you start the better[4]. It will give you a good start in life.

Boy 3 **:** They say that your school days are the best days of your life and I think that's probably true. It's not just about learning, it's also about making friends and learning to help each other.

Boy 4 **:** You're right. My parents both loved school and made really good friends there.

Girl 3 **:** If you're really ill, then it's great that there are ways of learning at home so that there isn't a break in your education. But, otherwise, you should go to school.

Girl 4 **:** I don't agree with you. There are lots of advantages with learning at home. There isn't any bullying, for instance.

Girl 5 **:** I don't think people understand how important education really is for young people. I mean, what kind of a future can you have without a good education these days?

Girl 6 **:** A lot of people have good lives without doing well at school. I'm completely against this idea that education is the only way to do well.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- الضمير everyone يعامل معاملة المفرد.

٢- تعبير يستخدم عند الاقتراح why not + inf.?.

٣- تعبير يفيد عدم موافقة الرأى.

٤- استخدام adj + er بمعنى كلما... كلما...





Home-schooling

Most young people go to school every day and have lessons with other children, but not everyone does this. In some countries, students can learn at home instead[1] and their teachers are usually their parents.

We call this way of learning "home-schooling". Home-schooling is useful for young people who live a long way from a school, and it's becoming more popular today because students can easily use computers to learn wherever they are. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick and cannot go to a school every day.

A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them, rather than following a school timetable. But, on the other hand, home-schooling isn't right for everyone. Home-schooled children might feel lonely because it can be harder for them to make friends. They may not be able to do sports with other young people either.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تستخدم instead فى نهاية الجملة بمعنى (بدلًا من ذلك) ولا يتبعها شىء أما instead of فيأتى بعدها v. + ing.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	(be) a success = (be) successful = (be) a successful + noun	- His first novel was a success. - His first novel was successful. - His first novel was a successful one.

2 school/ a school / the school

- Most students start school in September.
  - هنا بمعنى الدراسة.
- I go to school to learn.
  - هنا الذهاب لنفس غرض المدرسة الأساسى.
- The government built a school in our village.
  - هنا بمعنى مبنى المدرسة.
- My father came to the school to ask about my results.
  - الذهاب لغرض آخر.

	Word	Example
3	**too** بمعنى أيضًا فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة	I like English, and Adel likes it too.
	either بمعنى أيضًا فى نهاية الجملة المنفية	I don't like English, and Adel doesn't like it either.
4	**electric (adj)** كهربائى: أى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات والأجهزة)	- I have a modern electric washing machine. - Engineers designed electric cars that use batteries.
	electrical (adj) كهربائى: أى يتعامل مع الكهرباء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)	- The fire started with an electrical fault. - My father works as an electrical engineer.
	electricity (n) الكهرباء	Solar panels are used to generate electricity.
	electrician (n) كهربائى (فنى كهرباء)	A company needs four electricians.
	electronic (adj) إلكترونى	The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sadly, most students don't go to .... school these days.
a) the b) no article c) a d) an

2. My father is a teacher in .... school in Cairo.
a) the b) no article c) a d) an

3. My friend's novel was .... It was a bestseller.
a) a success b) succeed c) successor d) unsuccessful

4. My friend is the author of a .... novel which was published last year.
a) success b) succeed c) successor d) successful

5. Have you seen my new .... car? I won't need gas stations anymore.
a) electrical b) electronic c) electric d) electrician

6. Do you know an ....? I want to mend the lights of the hall.
a) electric b) electrician c) electronic d) electrical

7. Mido couldn't come to the party and I couldn't come ....
a) too b) either c) neither d) so

8. Amir played a wonderful match, and he scored a goal, ...
a) too b) either c) neither d) so

9. When I start the lesson, everyone .... to me carefully.
a) listen b) listens c) listening d) a & b

10. After making a mistake, ... yourself up and learn from it.
a) make b) come c) get d) pick



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The government managed to connect many parts of the country by building a number of flyover ....
a) tunnels b) bridges c) ways d) railways
2. This is the laboratory where we do .... by ourselves.
a) experiences b) experience c) subjects d) experiments
3. I couldn't understand what you .... by saying these strange words?
a) mean b) mind c) break d) keen
4. .... must be fought by all members of society as it affects us all.
a) Cooperating b) Imagination c) Thinking d) Bullying
5. I went to see the playwright's .... masterpiece, but I was very disappointed by it.
a) so-cold b) so-hot c) too-cold d) so-called
6. To go diving, you must have some special .... such as an oxygen tank.
a) equipment b) information c) knowledge d) description
7. Self- .... is very important for every student to pass their exams, but it shouldn't be too much.
a) explanation b) bullying c) confidence d) doubt
8. The manager was too busy to go to the meeting, so he sent his secretary ....
a) steady b) instead c) instead of d) stead
9. The .... of the novel was quite unexpected. We really didn't expect such an end.
a) introduction b) imagination c) conclusion d) incident
10. The manager said that he was completely .... in Salma and that she would be perfect for the job.
a) confidence b) doubt c) confident d) appreciation
11. STEM schools students are expected to be the .... of the future.
a) inventors b) sellers c) subjects d) gardeners
12. When factories .... open days for students to do things by their hands, this will improve their skills.
a) explain b) run c) criticise d) confide
13. Constructing new cities will be a .... to solving the housing problem in the future.
a) tunnel b) road c) bridge d) skill
14. The coach was .... to give motivational speech to the players before the final match.
a) keen b) lucky c) real d) terrible

15. I have a strong .... in the power of education for nations' development.
a) believe b) believer c) believing d) belief

16. They offered to order pizza, and I went .... with that.
a) out b) on c) along d) around

17. Sleeping early and doing exercise will definitely help you .... well at school.
a) go b) build c) make d) do

18. The government is keen to make its employees feel ....
a) appreciated b) appreciate c) appreciative d) appreciation

19. Living in the city has taught me to .... the differences between people.
a) appreciated b) appreciate c) appreciative d) appreciation

20. .... is very essential these days especially for those who can't go to school.
a) Home-school b) Home-schooling c) Preschooler d) Home-schooled

21. We are all very keen .... sports especially football as we support the national team.
a) with b) on c) at d) in

22. The students were asked to carry out an important .... in the science laboratory yesterday. Longman
a) sport b) experiment c) experience d) complement

23. I think it's a .... of time to spend too much time playing computer games. Longman
a) benefit b) waste c) charge d) waist

24. STEM schools have the equipment to enable students to .... small engines. Longman
a) appear b) separate c) build d) explore

25. Those who never work hard will hardly .... in life and work. (السويس)
a) succeed b) success c) successful d) failure

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

26. Education is the process of .... (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)
a) bullying b) teaching c) booking d) housekeeping e) learning

27. Egypt is trying its best to .... enough electricity for its people.
a) do b) make c) give d) support e) generate

28. I always encourage my students to .... on their progress.
a) get b) help c) keep d) carry e) start

29. Allam's voice was too loud that all neighbours gathered in front of the door. The synonyms of the word "loud" are "........................".
a) boring b) low c) noisy d) horrible e) blaring

30. Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. The antonyms of the word "failure" are "........................".
a) collapse b) incompetence c) improvement
d) success e) breakdown

B Language

1 Past Simple زمن الماضى البسيط

مراجعة سريعة على الماضى البسيط.

Affirmative الإثبات	Subject فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل • Ramez played football yesterday. • They took many photographs last week.
Usage الاستخدام	يستخدم للتعبير عن: ١- حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى. • We went to the cinema two days ago. ٢- عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى ولم تعد تحدث الآن. • Laila always visited her aunt when she was ill. ٣- ترتيب الأحداث وتتابعها فى الماضى. • I went to the club and met my friends.
Negative النفى	Subject فاعل + didn't + + inf .... . • They didn't play football yesterday.
Question السؤال	(Wh-question) (Wh- word) + did + subj. + inf.? • What did he play yesterday? (Yes/No question) Did + subj. + inf.? • Did you play football yesterday?
Key words الكلمات الدالة	yesterday – last – ago – once – one day – in the past – in ancient times – in (2000)

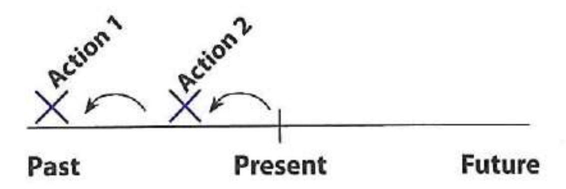
Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My football team won the match and I .... a goal.
   a) scored b) score c) have scored d) was scoring
2. Our brave soldiers .... the 1973 war against Israel.
   a) win b) won c) have won d) were wining
3. The football season .... a month ago.
   a) began b) was beginning c) had begun d) was begun
4. It .... difficult to use social networking sites many years ago.
   a) is b) has been c) was d) had been
5. A: What .... yesterday? B: I worked on my project.
   a) was doing b) had done c) did you do d) were you

2 Past Perfect زمن الماضى التام

The past perfect tense is used to indicate that an action occurred before another one in the past. يستخدم الماضى التام للإشارة إلى الأحداث التى سبقت مواقف محددة أو أحداث أخرى فى الماضى.



FORM التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات	**Subject** فاعل **+ had + P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل • I/He/They had attended the match before going to the party.
Negative النفى	**Subject** فاعل **+ hadn't + P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل • I/He/They hadn't attended the match before going to the party.
Question السؤال	**(Wh-question)** (Wh- word) + had + subject + P.P.? • What had you attended before going to the party? **(Yes/No question)** Had + subject + P.P.? • Had they attended the match before going to the party?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	**Object** مفعول **+ had + been + P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل • The match had been attended before going to the party.

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **An action was completed by an exact past time reference:**
نستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن اكتمال حدوث فعل بحلول وقت محدد فى الماضى.
By last Monday, the painter had painted my whole flat.

2 **An action was completed before another action.**
نستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن اكتمال حدوث فعل قبل فعل آخر.
I found the wallet and the money in my bag after I had looked for them everywhere.

KEY WORDS الكلمات الدالة

يستخدم الماضى التام غالبا مع الروابط التالية:



- After Kamel had finished his homework, he slept.

لاحظ

After + v-ing (مع عدم وجود فاعل), ... past simple (Active)

- After doing my homework, I slept.

After + being + P.P. (مع عدم وجود فاعل), ... past simple (Passive)

- After being arrested, the thief was sent to prison.

Before **By the time** قبل	+	**Past simple** ماض بسيط	+	**Past perfect** ماض تام

- Before we watched TV, we had done our homework.
- Marwan had finished his work by the time he helped his brother.

لاحظ

Before + v-ing (مع عدم وجود فاعل), ... past perfect (Active)

- Before sleeping, I had done my homework.

Before + being + P.P. (مع عدم وجود فاعل), ... past perfect (Passive)

- Before being punished, the student had made many mistakes.

ماض بسيط (منفى) **(Negative) past simple**	+	**till/ until** حتى	+	ماض تام **Past perfect**

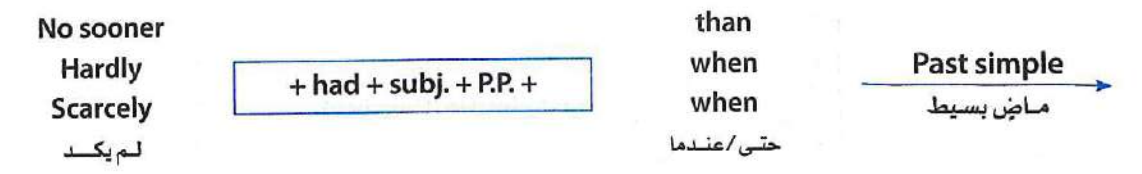
- We didn't watch TV until we had done our homework.
- The house wasn't cleaned until I had done it myself.
- Hany refused to come until I had phoned him.
- They couldn't go out until their father had arrived.

التعبير no sooner ... than يمكن أن يأتى فى منتصف الجملة ويمكن أن يأتى فى بداية الجملة، لاحظ:



Ayman had no sooner completed his studies than he travelled abroad.

I had hardly/scarcely bought my needs when I went home.

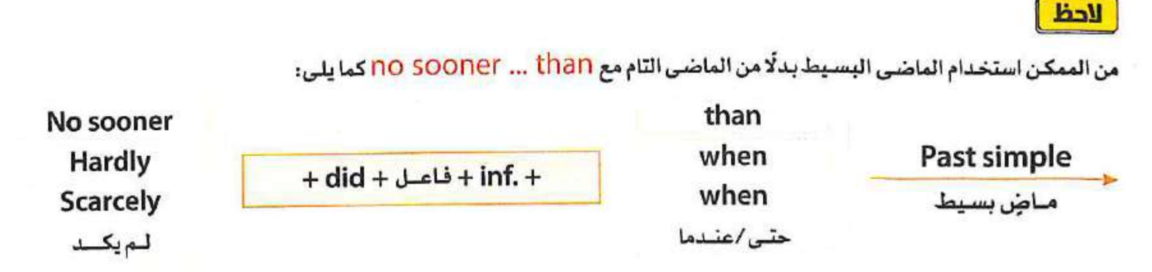


No sooner had Mido come home than he began to do his homework.

Hardly/Scarcely had he watched TV when he went to bed.

لاحظ

من الممكن استخدام الماضى البسيط بدلاً من الماضى التام مع no sooner ... than كما يلى:



No sooner did I see the accident than I called the police.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

It was only when + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

It was not until + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

After he had played the game, he went home.

= It was only when he had played the game that he went home.

= It was not until he had played the game that he went home.



Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على الماضى التـام والبسـيط:

يمكن استخـدام when كرابط زمنى بين الماضى التـام والبسـيط والحـدث الأقـدم يكون فى الماضى التـام، والحدث الأقرب يكـون فى الماضـى البسـيط، لاحـظ:

1

When	Past perfect, Past simple
	Past simple, Past simple
	Past simple, Past perfect

- When dad arrived, we had eaten our dinner.

(أكلنا العشاء أولًا ثم وصل والدى، أى لم يأكل العشاء معنا)

- When dad had arrived, we ate our dinner.

(وصل والدى أولًا ثم أكلنا العشاء، أى أكل العشاء معنا)

- When I had reached the station, the train left.

(وصلت للمحطة أولًا ثم غادر القطار المحطة، أى لحقت القطار)

- When I reached the station, the train had left.

(القطار غادر المحطة أولًا ثم وصلت للمحطة، أى فاتنى القطار)

2

كلمة on من الممكن استخدامها بدلًا من when كالتالى:

- When + past simple = On + (v-ing)

- When I met my friend, I knew what had happened.
  = On meeting my friend, I knew what had happened.

3

نستخدم (Having) بدون فاعل بدلًا من (After) لكن يأتى بعدها التصريف الثالث وهناك اختلاف بسيط بين المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول، لاحظ:

Having	P.P. • **Having** arrested the thief, the police sent him to prison.	**(Active)**
	been + P.P. • **Having** been arrested, the thief was sent to prison.	**(Passive)**

4

يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط فقط مع أدوات الربط الزمنية خاصة إذا كان ترتيب الحدثين منطقيًا أو الفارق الزمنى بينهما بسيطًا.

- After it got dark, we came back inside.
- He arrived before we sat down to eat.

5 -يمكـن استخـدام زمـن الماضى التـام وحده مع حـرف الجـر by على النحـو التالـى:

مـاضٍ تـــام ▶ By + (إشـارة للماضـى)

By 1990, our national team had qualified to the World Cup.

6 إضافة كلمة that بعد After/Before تعطى معنى مختلفًا، لاحظ:

after that = before before that = after

I had finished my homework, after that, I went to bed.

I arrived home, before that, I had visited my uncle.

7 يمكن استخدام الرابط because مع الماضى التام والبسيط ،لاحظ التالى:

I didn't buy bread because my mum had already bought some.

I applied for the job because I had closed my office.

8 القاعدة التى لا تتغير هى أن الحدث الأقدم يأتى فى زمن الماضى التام والأحدث يأتى فى زمن الماضى البسيط، ولا يمكن الجمع بين جملتى ماضٍ تام معا ولكن يمكن الجمع بين جملتين فى الماضى البسيط، لاحظ:

I had cleaned up after I had washed my face. (✗)

I cleaned up after I washed my face. (✓)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After Dina .... the book, she wanted to see the film.
   a) was finishing b) had finished
   c) has finished d) was finished
2. I .... the exam until I had read the questions carefully.
   a) don't answer b) didn't answer
   c) hadn't answered d) won't answer
3. A thief broke into their flat last week. Lots of valuables ممتلكات ثمينة ....
   a) are being stolen b) had stolen
   c) were stolen d) have been stolen
4. By the age of ten, Rana .... how to use the internet.
   a) was learning b) had learnt
   c) had been learnt d) has learnt
5. It was only .... I had found my book that I felt relaxed.
   a) while b) until c) before d) when



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After Medhat had left school, he .... to work in a company.
   a) goes b) had gone c) went d) was going
2. By the time we reached, they .... discussing the book; we couldn't participate.
   a) had finished b) were finishing c) have finished d) finished
3. The train .... when I arrived at the station. I didn't catch it.
   a) left b) was left c) had left d) has left
4. As soon as I met this man, I knew I .... him somewhere before.
   a) has seen b) have seen c) had seen d) was seeing
5. .... meeting my brother, I asked him to come with me to the dentist's.
   a) On b) The moment c) As soon as d) During
6. Having .... the shopping, mum started to prepare lunch.
   a) do b) she did c) done d) she had done
7. The house was dirty. We .... it for weeks.
   a) haven't cleaned b) hadn't cleaned c) weren't cleaning d) don't clean
8. I realised that I .... a silly mistake in the exam when I checked my answers.
   a) have made b) had made c) am making d) made
9. .... had he left home than he heard an explosion.
   a) Hard b) No sooner c) Before d) After
10. .... bought a new bag, I threw the old one away.
   a) After b) Having c) Being d) Had
11. The house was quiet when I got home. Everyone .... to bed.
   a) had gone b) has gone c) had been d) was going
12. When Amir went to the party, his friend .... They just shook hands.
   a) left b) had left c) was leaving d) leaves
13. Amgad admitted that he .... his brother's watch.
   a) was breaking b) would break c) has been broken d) had broken
14. Having .... in a friendly way, I felt so relaxed in the exam.
   a) treated b) had treated c) been treated d) have treated
15. Alaa didn't confirm attending the party until I .... him in person.
   a) had invited b) invites c) was inviting d) has invited
16. We weren't hungry because we .... our lunch.
   a) were already eating b) have already eaten
   c) had already eaten d) already eaten
17. I didn't buy the mobile .... the shop had been closed.
   a) until b) because c) before d) while
18. After the house ...., we furnished it.
   a) had painted b) had been painted c) has been painted d) is painted

19. The sky was cloudy, so it wasn't .... 11 a.m. that the sun appeared.
a) because b) before c) after d) until

20. Scarcely .... off when the storm broke out.
a) they had started b) they started
c) did they started d) had they started

21. Which one of the following sentences is CORRECT?
a) While I reached the station, the bus left. I missed it.
b) As soon as I finished my homework, a TV film had started.
c) I watched a film last night. Before that, I have done my homework.
d) Hardly had I arrived home when my phone rang.

22. One of the following sentences is WRONG. Which one is it?
a) After watching the film, my friend Ali arrived.
b) Having finished the report, I gave it to my manager.
c) As soon as seeing my teacher, I greeted him respectfully.
d) When I was on my way to school, I saw a terrible accident.

23. As soon as I .... out, it .... to rain heavily. Longman
a) went / had started b) will go / has started
c) go / started d) had gone / started

24. When I visited Faten, she .... lunch, so I didn't find any food left. Longman
a) will have b) was having c) has just had d) had just had

25. By the time the film started, my father .... asleep; he didn't watch the film as usual! Longman
a) hadn't fallen b) has fallen c) won't fall d) had fallen

26. When I went to the stadium, the match .... so I missed the exciting beginning. Longman
a) hadn't started yet b) had already started
c) hasn't started yet d) has already started

27. Having .... the good news, I hurried to tell my family. Longman
a) have received b) had received c) received d) receiving

28. .... he phoned Dalia before he went to see her in London? (الشرقية - أبو حماد)
a) Did b) Had c) Has d) Can

29. After .... at home by a governess, she married. (الإسماعيلية)
a) teaching b) had taught c) had learnt d) being taught

30. By midnight yesterday, my friend .... and broken his leg. (الشرقية - ديرب نجم)
a) fell b) has fallen c) had fallen d) was fallen

31. Scarcely .... the noise when we rushed to the spot. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر)
a) we did hear b) had we heard c) we had heard d) we heard

32. We didn't reach a solution to the problem until we .... it. (الشرقية - القنايات)
a) discuss b) had discussed
c) will discuss d) have discussed

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. .... is not allowed in school. We want our students to feel safe.
   a) Bullying b) Serving c) Nursing d) Cheating
2. Ahmed Khaled Tawfik was a great .... He wrote many stories, books and articles.
   a) author b) artist c) musician d) poet
3. Construction companies employ night guards to secure their .... against thieves.
   a) equipment b) information c) experience d) experiment
4. Lots of people .... in the importance of education to improve our economy.
   a) get b) appreciate c) hope d) believe
5. There were more than 250 victims of the .... plane crash that happened last week.
   a) terrible b) terrific c) terrified d) pleasant
6. The government is working hard to .... much more electricity for all parts of our country.
   a) take b) bring c) make d) do
7. Sharpening the saw منشار is not a/an .... of time. It will help you finish your work even faster.
   a) instance b) age c) plenty d) waste
8. Hala agrees .... me about sending our children to a boarding school.
   a) at b) with c) for d) on
9. "Studying school subjects at home" means ....
   a) house learning b) teach schooling
   c) educate schooling d) home-schooling
10. We weren't ready for the game. ...., we lost the match.
    a) From my point of view b) At first
    c) As a consequence d) On one hand
11. Business is not easy; for ...., Nokia company failed to cope with the modern market.
    a) instant b) instead c) instance d) incident
12. A: Mr Sherif is the best English teacher ever. B: I .... more. He's my favourite
    a) couldn't agree b) can disagree
    c) could disagree d) couldn't disagree
13. My first book sold 100000 copies. This means that it was ....
    a) succeed b) successfully c) a success d) a successful

14. My .... is losing money. I'm thinking about selling all books and closing it.
a) bookshop b) garden c) workshop d) shelf

15. A: I think public transport is good for the environment. B: I'd say the .... The buses are too old.
a) explanation b) opposite c) confidence d) doubt

Language

16. She refused to return the stolen mobile .... I had threatened to call the police.
a) until b) on c) before d) while

17. I had no sooner seen my daughter .... I asked her to tell me all about the exam.
a) than b) that c) when d) then

18. Nadine was late because she .... to set her alarm clock.
a) had forgotten b) has forgotten c) was forgetting d) forget

19. The children collected the fruit that .... from the tree.
a) had fallen b) could fall c) falls d) have fallen

20. Hardly .... home when I took off my clothes and slept.
a) I had arrived b) have I arrived c) I arrived d) did I arrive

21. .... washing my car, I took my family out for a drive.
a) While b) By the time c) As d) After

22. They didn't come to the cinema with us because they .... already seen the film.
a) have b) were c) had d) are

23. .... finished my work, I began to watch TV.
a) After b) Before c) During d) Having

24. I didn't watch the film .... I had already read the story of the film.
a) before b) because c) by the time d) unless

25. Nermeen was really hungry because she .... all day.
a) hadn't eaten b) hasn't eaten c) doesn't eat d) wasn't eating

26. Moaaz had scarcely bought a car .... he sold it again.
a) when b) that c) than d) then

27. My sister .... in Canada for two years before she moved on to London.
a) has lived b) was living c) is living d) had lived

28. Having graduated, he .... abroad.
a) travelled b) had travelled c) has travelled d) would travel

29. They said that the driver's speed .... the accident.
a) had been caused b) was caused
c) had caused d) has caused

30. After my work ...., I had a break.
a) had done b) had had done
c) had been done d) has been done

Study... Part 3 | Skills



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

How to write a summary:

1. Keep the plot.
2. Focus on the main events.
3. Try to mention all the main characters.
4. Omit the unimportant actions.
5. Make it interesting (use synonyms and don't repeat yourself).

MODEL SUMMARY

Summary of Jane Eyre

Jane Eyre was an orphan who lived with her cousins and her cruel, wealthy aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was unkind and they did not want Jane to live with them. Jane was sent away to school. The owner, Mr Brocklehurst, was very cruel, so the students lived unhappy lives. Finally, Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After two years, Jane decided to apply for a job as a governess.

She started to teach a young French girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind housekeeper. One night, there was a fire at Thornfield Hall and Jane saved Mr Rochester. He said that the fire was started by a servant called Grace, but Grace did not lose her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a secret in the house. Later, she discovered that the one who set the fire was Mr Rochester's insane wife, Bertha, who was trapped at the third storey طابق of the house. Jane was about to marry Mr Rochester until that happened. Jane left Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

She met her cousins by chance and got a job as a teacher in a charity school. St. John, one of her cousins, informed her that she had inherited a fortune of 20,000 pounds which they shared together. He wanted to marry her but she refused as she was in love with Mr Rochester.

Jane hurried back to Thornfield and found that Bertha lost her life in a fire she had set. Rochester saved the servants but lost his eyesight and one of his hands. Jane travelled on to Rochester's new residence, Ferndean, where he lived with two servants named John and Mary. At Ferndean, Rochester and Jane rebuilt their relationship and soon married. After two years of blindness, Rochester regained sight in one eye and was able to behold يرى their first son at his birth.

Practice Skills Exercises



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (الإسماعيلية)

In Egypt, tourism industry has come to hold a position of great importance lately. It is felt that it could help increase the national income. In some European countries, tourism has brought in millions of dollars yearly, although they lack the natural and historical attractions we have in Egypt. We could, for instance, establish tourist villages for children on the Red Sea. We could teach fishing, swimming, diving and sailing there. Another good idea would be a village in the New Valley for horse riding. And what about villages for people with health problems like rheumatism? The warm dry climate of Aswan and Helwan would help them get better.

Today, our tourist wants efficient and friendly service. They would probably prefer to try our samples of our local food rather than to eat the international meals which are served in some places.

It must also be remembered that most tourists nowadays are seldom rich. Many of them are students or hard-working employees. So, what is needed is not expensive hotels but clean comfortable places to sleep and eat in at reasonable prices. This would encourage Egyptians to travel more and more around their lovely country.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The writer feels that Egypt has got .... the other countries.
   a) less attractions than b) the least attractions of c) the same attractions as d) more attractions than
2. According to the passage, if someone has pains in his muscles and joints, he should go to ....
   a) Europe b) Aswan c) The Red Sea d) The New Valley
3. The underlined pronoun "it" in the first paragraph refers to ....
   a) tourism b) Egypt c) monument d) other countries
4. The synonym of the word "establish" in the first paragraph is ....
   a) sit down b) demolish c) set up d) vanish
5. The best title for this passage is "...................... in Egypt".
   a) Tourism b) Industry c) Farming d) National income
6. Most tourists nowadays have .... income.
   a) high b) law c) excellent d) average
7. Rheumatism is a/an ....
   a) equipment b) disease c) hotel d) historic attraction

(B) Translation

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. The difference between successful people and losers is that the successful refused to stay losers; they never stopped trying.

a) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والخاسرين هو أن الناجحين رفضوا أن يقيموا خاسرين ولم يتوقفوا أبدًا عن المحاولة.

b) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والفاشلين هو أن الناجحين رفضوا أن يظلوا فاشلين ولم يتوقفوا أبدًا عن العمل.

c) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والخاسرين هو أن الخاسرين رفضوا أن يظلوا ناجحين ولم يتوقفوا أبدًا عن المحاولة.

d) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والفاشلين هو أن الناجحين رفضوا أن يظلوا فاشلين ولم يتوقفوا أبدًا عن المحاولة.

2. Technology is a double-edged weapon as it's the ladder by which humanity promotes and develops, but it can also be a tool for destruction.

a) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين لأنها القائد الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للتدمير.

b) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين لأنها السلم الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للتدمير.

c) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين لأنها السلم الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للبناء.

d) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح مدمر لأنها السلم الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للتدمير.

3. Everyone's personality is as different and unique as everyone's fingerprints. We can usually see people's personality in how they behave with others.

a) إن شخصية كل فرد مختلفة ومتميزة مثل آثار الأقدام ونحن نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تعاملهم مع الآخرين.

b) إن شخصية كل فرد مختلفة ومتميزة كبصمات الأصابع ونحن لا نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تعاملهم مع البعض.

c) إن شخصية كل فرد مختلفة ومتميزة كبصمات الأصابع ونحن نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تعاملهم مع الآخرين.

d) إن شخصية كل فرد صعبة أو متميزة كبصمات الأصابع ونحن نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تواصلهم مع الآخرين.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. لم يكد يصل إلى مكتبه حتى طلب مشروبه المعتاد وباشر عمله بنشاط.

a) No sooner he had reached his desk that he ordered his unique drink and started working actively.

b) No sooner had he got to his office than he ordered his usual drink and started his work actively.

c) Hardly had he got office when he ordered his everyday drink and started his work active.

d) After he had reached his office, he refused his usual drink and started his work active.

5. لقد قامت الحكومة بإعداد خطة طموحة للنهوض بالتعليم ورفع مستوى المعلم وكذلك جذب الطلاب للحضور إلى المدرسة.

a) The government has done an ambitious plan to upgrade education, rise the teacher's level and attract students to attend school.

b) The government has made an ambition plane to upgrade education, raise the teacher's level and attach students to attend school.

c) The government has made an ambitious plan to upgrade education, raise the teacher's level and attract students to attend school.

d) The government has made an ambitious plan to update education, raise the teacher's level and attract students to go school.

6. بعد أن قامت وزارة الآثار بترميم طريق الكباش بالأقصر أقامت احتفالا كبيرا لافتتاحه حضره رئيس الجمهورية.

a) After the Ministry of Antiquities had restored Kebash Road in Luxor, it held a great celebration for its inauguration, which was attended by the President of the Republic.

b) After the minister of Antiquities had restored Kebash Road in Luxor, it had held a great celebrity for its inauguration, which was attended by the President of the Republic.

c) After the Ministry of Antiquities had restored Kebash Street in Luxor, it held a great celebration for its opening, which attended by the President of the Republic.

d) After the Ministry of Antiquities had restored Kebash Road in Luxor, it was holding a great celebration for its inauguration, which was attended by the President of the Republic.

(C) Writing

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The importance of education for a country's progress"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Unit 9 Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Marwan: Hi, Youssef. This is my friend Nour.

Youssef : (1).. .

Marwan: We're going to paint the walls of the community centre tomorrow.

Youssef : Great! (2)..?

Marwan: Yes, you can join us.

Youssef : (3)..?

Marwan: At 9 am tomorrow.

Youssef : Where can we meet?

Marwan: (4).. .

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Honesty has implications in .... with others.

a) dealing b) speaking c) walking d) a & b

2. Wickedness leads to the ....

a) whole fire b) hill fire c) hall fire d) hellfire

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is Itqan?

4. Why is respect an important value in our lives?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. The chef has all sizes of .... which he uses to cut food.

a) knives b) pens c) paddles d) sails

2. My wife had a .... on her wounded arm.

a) cloth b) bandage c) sheet d) cover

(B) Answer the following:

3. How did Hands help Jim on the ship?

4. What did Jim see Hands do when he went to get water for him?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

The good morals and values of the Egyptians appear in times of hardships and crises.

(B) Translate into English:

– دعا إبراهيم عليه السلام قومه إلى عبادة الله وحده.

Unit 9 Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options: *(2 marks)*

1. Kareem works .... his family and he is happy with that.
   a) in b) for c) with d) at e) on
2. The school is .... from my house, so I take two buses to reach there.
   a) at the corner b) near c) along d) far e) a long way

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *(12 marks)*

3. You should check your electrical .... regularly.
   a) equipment b) requirement c) settlement d) statement
4. We have some new .... in our department in the company.
   a) employers b) employs c) employees d) employment
5. It's said that .... children are introvert انطوائيين because they don't meet a lot of their peers.
   a) traditional b) home-schooled c) brilliant d) confident
6. English and science are my favourite .... I also study them online.
   a) subjects b) skills c) articles d) solvers
7. The new applicants will be trained to be problem .... in their departments.
   a) electricians b) solvers c) doers d) makers
8. The teacher asked us to wait for .... before starting the new lesson.
   a) a when b) instance c) a while d) while
9. Having .... the license, he bought a new car.
   a) obtain b) had obtained c) obtained d) obtaining
10. Students .... to help clean the garden around the school yesterday.
    a) sent b) is sent c) have sent d) were sent
11. I had finished my work before .... the office.
    a) left b) had left c) was leaving d) leaving
12. No sooner had they found the wallet .... they called the police.
    a) then b) that c) when d) than
13. My husband .... to go to a remote area for work.
    a) had forced b) was forcing
    c) was forced d) have been forced
14. By 2019, we .... building this flyover bridge.
    a) finish b) had finished
    c) finished d) had been finishing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: ***(7 marks)***

Every mammal needs sleep, as do birds and fish. But what about insects? Do they need sleep? Scientists have been trying to discover the truth about insect sleep behaviour for years. Scientists first thought insects did not need sleep. According to them, the insect brain was not complex enough to need it. Scientists said that some kinds of brain activity, like dreaming, were sleep behaviours. Insects do not dream, so scientists said that they do not sleep. They believed that insects rest, instead. However, new studies have shown that some insects may actually sleep. There are four types of behaviour during sleep. First, sleeping people and animals don't move much. They have a position for sleeping; for example, they lie down. Additionally, they don't wake up easily when hearing noises or seeing light. Lastly, they are able to come out of sleep quickly in response to some intense stimulants. Scientists have now seen similar behaviours in fruit flies. For example, fruit flies become still every night for about seven hours. At these times, they sit in a different way, let their antennae drop, and do not respond to quiet noises. The flies do begin to move around when louder noises are made. Scientists think that some insects may have their own unique kind of sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. How did scientists learn that insects sleep?
a) They used brain scanning machines.
b) They put flies in dark rooms.
c) They watched insects.
d) They took the antennae off flies.

16. Which of the following can animals do?
a) They can eat. b) They can sleep.
c) They can communicate. d) a, b and c.

17. What do fruit flies do for seven hours each day?
a) Sleep. b) Eat. c) Make noise. d) Fly.

18. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
a) a bug's dream b) sleep c) the insect d) a bug's

19. Why did scientists believe that insects do not need sleep?
a) Insects don't work hard. b) Insects can't close their eyes.
c) Their brain is simple. d) Insects don't live very long.

20. The best title for this passage is "................".
a) Insects' sleep d) Birds and snakes don't sleep
c) Sleepy animals d) Wasting time

21. While sleeping, you ....
a) move freely b) never move c) run d) barely move

22. Choose the correct English translation: *(2 marks)*

- تعتبر المدارس الداخلية حلًّا مثاليًا للطلاب من جميع أنحاء الجمهورية فهم يقضون معظم وقتهم فى المدرسة ويقومون بأنشطة مختلفة بجانب الدراسة.

a) Entering schools are considering an ideal solution to students from all over the republic as they spent most of their time inside school and do different activities besides study.

b) Local schools are considered an ideal solution to students from all over the republic as they spend most of their times inside school and make different activities beside study.

c) Boarding schools are considered an ideal solution to students from all over the republic as they spend most of their time inside schools and do different activities besides study.

d) Inside schools is considered an idle solution to students from all over the republic as they spend most of their time inside schools and do different activities besides study.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation: *(2 marks)*

- A job should not just be a source of money. It should also be a path for self-development. A very important goal is to find a job in a field you enjoy.

a) لا يجب أن تكون الوظيفة مجرد مصدر للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضًا طريقًا لمحاسبة النفس؛ ولذلك فإن إيجاد وظيفة فى مجال تستمتع به هو عامل مهم جدًا.

b) لا يجب أن تكون الوظيفة فقط مصدرًا للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضًا مؤشرًا لتطوير النفس؛ ولذلك فإن ترك وظيفة فى مجال تستمتع به هو هدف مهم جدًا.

c) لا يجب أن تكون الوظيفة فقط مصدرًا للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضًا طريقًا لضبط النفس؛ ولذلك فإن إيجاد وظيفة فى مجال تستمتع به هو هدف مهم جدًا.

d) لا يجب أن تكون الوظيفة مجرد مصدر للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضًا طريقًا لتطوير النفس؛ ولذلك فإن إيجاد وظيفة فى مجال تستمتع به هو هدف مهم جدًا.

24. Answer the following questions: *(1.5 marks)*

1. Why do you think that the Hispaniola kept changing its direction?
2. Jim wasn't afraid of the pirate on the ship, Mr Hands! Do you agree? Why?
3. Why do you think that Jim steered the ship slowly onto the beach?

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Has technology improved our world and our lives? *(3.5 marks)*

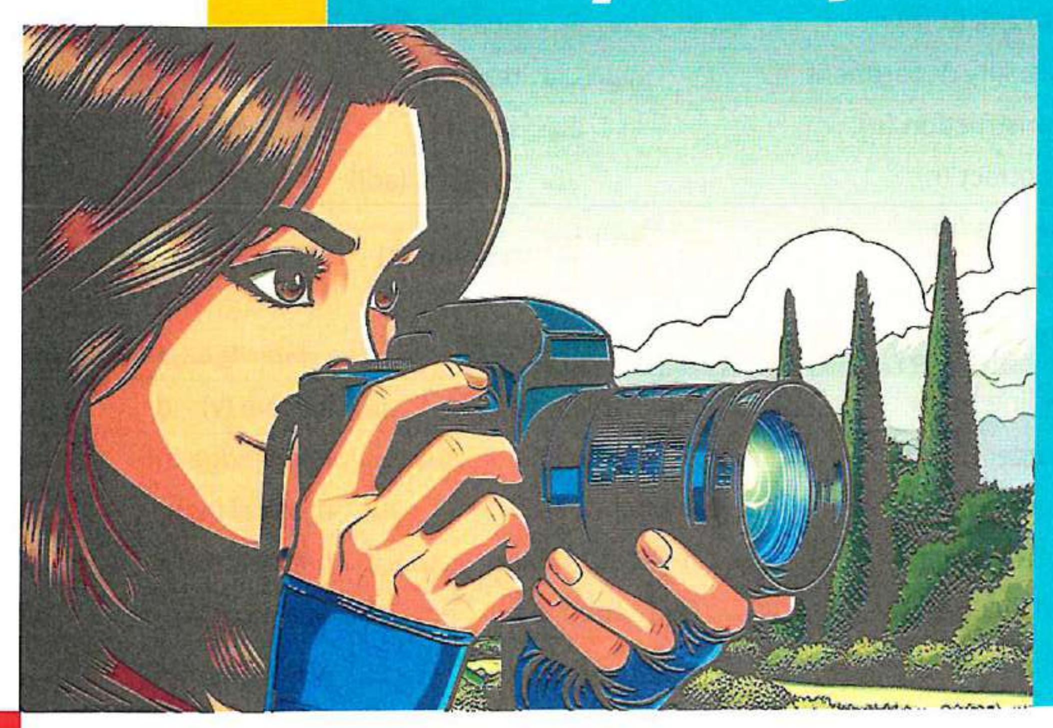
....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 308

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 10
What's your job?



Objectives

Reading : An article about jobs
Writing : An email asking for advice; a personal CV
Listening : Students at a job fair
Speaking : Talking about job opportunities
Language : Reported speech: Statement and questions
Life Skills : Self-management: Planning for the world of work

Study... **Part 1** | Lessons 1 & 2





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

agreement (n)	اتفاق	industry (n)	صناعة
apply (v) (y ied)	يقدم (طلبًا)	legal (adj)	قانونى
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب فى المهنة	practical (adj)	عملى
attendant (n)	مُرافق / عامل فى مكان عام	qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
casualty department (n)	قسم الطوارئ	rewarding (adj)	مُجزٍ
construction (n)	البناء	skill (n)	مهارة
contract (n)	عقْد	stressful (adj)	مرهق
degree (n)	درجة جامعية	training (n)	تدريب
events (n)	مناسبات / فعاليات		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

airline (n)	شركة طيران	develop (v) – ed	يطور	involve (v) – d	يتضمن
career (n)	حياة مهنية	eligible (adj)	مؤهل / جدير بـ	knowledge (n)	معرفة
care (n)	يهتم	expect (v) – ed	يتوقع	medical (adj)	طبى
certain (adj)	محدد	flight attendant	مضيفة طيران	natural (adj)	طبيعى
challenges (n)	تحديات	frightened (adj)	خائف	nursing (n)	تمريض
characteristics (n)	خصائص / سمات	graduate (v) – d	يتخرج	obviously (adv)	بوضوح
chemist (n)	كيميائى	hold (v)	يقيم / يعقد (مؤتمرًا / حفلًا)	option (n)	اختيار
college (n)	كُلية	improve (v) – d	يحسن / يتحسن	particular (adj)	خاص
communicator (n)	مُحاور / متواصل / لبق فى الحديث	incredibly (adv)	بشكل لا يصدق	products (n)	منتجات
compassion (n)	تعاطف	industries (n)	صناعات	progressing (n)	التقدم
compassionate (adj)	رحيم	Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	pursue (v) – d	يواصل / يطارد
deadline (n)	الميعاد النهائى	interesting (adj)	شيق	reassure (v) – d	يطمئن
despite (prep)	على الرغم من	international (adj)	دولى	reward (n)	مكافأة

route (n) طريق	tiring (adj) متعب	vast (adj) واسع /عريض
so far حتى الآن	trade (n) - (v) – d تجارة /حرفة /يتاجر	ward (n) جناح /عنبر(فى مستشفى)
the public (n) العامة /الجمهور	variety (n) تنوع	worries (n) مخاوف /قلق

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

charity (n) جمعية خيرية	book club (n) نادى القراءة	make (v) يصنع
cycle (v) – d يقود دراجة	global warming (n) الاحتباس الحرارى	weather (n) الطقس

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You will never get a good job if you don't have any ....
   a) constructions b) contracts c) qualifications d) compassions
2. Don't worry. It is .... to feel nervous before an interview.
   a) skilled b) natural c) abnormal d) eligible
3. The .... of the new road has now been completed.
   a) industry b) instruction c) destruction d) construction
4. My job's getting more and more .... I can't stand it.
   a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) stressed
5. The company has just won a/an .... to supply machinery to the government.
   a) contract b) interview c) compassion d) career
6. .... is one of the basic things that supports any country's economy.
   a) Industry b) Apprenticeship c) Training d) Qualification
7. Hisham was in the second year of his .... as a carpenter.
   a) instruction b) construction c) apprenticeship d) degree
8. Employees should acquire special .... before promotion.
   a) applications b) wards c) paintings d) skills
9. My daughter's lifelong wish is to become a .... as she likes flying so much.
   a) shop assistant b) flight attendant c) nurse d) researcher
10. Looking after small children can be very ....
    a) tiring b) qualified c) applied d) obvious

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a period of time فترة من الوقت	get a job يحصل على وظيفة	communicate ... to يوصّل ... إلى
at times فى بعض الأحيان	have/get a degree in يحصل على درجة علمية فى	essential for ضرورى لـ
do ... training يؤدى تدريبًا	break down يتعطل	late for متأخر على
do a degree يذاكر للحصول على درجة علمية	care for يعتنى بـ	look for يبحث عن
do something well يؤدى شيئًا جيدًا	cause worry يسبب قلقًا	popular with محبوب لدى
make furniture يصنع الأثاث	pursue a career يستمر فى مهنة	meet a challenge يواجه تحديًا
meet the deadline يفى /يلتزم بالموعد النهائى	feel good يشعر بتحسن	eligible for مؤهل لـ
not really ليس صحيحًا	have a talk with يتحدث مع	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحدٍّ	challenging	صعب/شاق
develop	يطور	development developer	تطور/تنمية مطور	developed developing	متطور نامٍ
frighten	يخيف	fright	خوف	frightened frightening	خائف مخيف
--------------------------		obviousness	وضوح	obvious	واضح
industrialise	يصنع	industry industrialist	صناعة رجل صناعة	industrial industrious	صناعى (متعلق بالصناعة) جاد فى العمل
qualify	يحصل على مؤهل/يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
reassure	يطمئن	reassurance	طمأنة	reassuring	مُطَمئن
reward	يكافئ	reward	مكافئة	rewarding	مُجزٍ
stress	يرهق	stress	ضغط عصبى	stressful stressed	مرهق متوتر
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	متنوع
--------------------------		eligibility	استحقاق/أحقية	eligible	مؤهل/جدير بـ/مستحق

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Egypt plans to industrialise its needs. (v)
The Egyptian industry is getting better. (n)
This industrial development is great. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
compassion	تعاطف	sympathy/mercy	cruelty/harshness/brutality	قسوة
construction	البناء	building/creation	destruction/ruin	الهدم
develop	يطور	advance/progress	decline/lessen	يتدهور
explain	يشرح	analyse/clarify	confuse/mix up	يربك /يحير
frightened	خائف	afraid/scared	unafraid/bold	غيرخائف /جرىء
incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق	amazingly/astonishingly	commonly/usually	بشكل عادى أو شائع
improve	يحسن	enhance/better/upgrade	deteriorate/decline	يتدهور
involve	يتضمن	include/contain	exclude/lack	لا يتضمن
reassure	يطمئن	assure/comfort	annoy/worry	يضايق / يقلق
rewarding	مجزٍ	fruitful/beneficial	unfruitful/valueless	غيرمثمر

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like the weather here in Egypt although it's hot ....
a) at all b) at times c) period of time d) sometime

2. Applicants must .... at least a degree in architecture to get the job.
a) do b) have c) make d) break

3. My son is still .... a degree in architecture. He likes it very much.
a) doing b) having c) making d) breaking

4. In this restaurant, you have many choices as there are .... dishes.
a) various b) varied c) vary d) variety

5. As he likes making films, my son hopes to .... his career in film-making.
a) apply b) pursue c) do d) produce

6. Mothers are those who always show compassion to their families. The synonym of the word "compassion" is "....................".
a) mercy b) cruelty c) stupidity d) harshness

7. To be able to meet our ...., we have to work together and forget our disputes.
a) compassion b) college c) chambers d) challenges

8. I do my best to improve my skills to be qualified for a good job. The synonym of the word "improve" is "..................".

a) rise b) decorate c) better d) beautify

9. While we were driving on the way to Tanta, our car broke ....

a) off b) down c) into d) away

10. Mr Hassan will .... for the job advertised online because it's rewarding.

a) apply b) supply c) look d) employ

Reading Text

What's your Job?

Ali works in the casualty department at a busy hospital. He says that, despite the long hours[1] and hard work, the job is incredibly rewarding.

Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed caring for people, so it seemed a natural thing to do. I decided to apply to nursing college, did my training and then got a job here.

Do you like your job?

Yes, I love it, although it is very stressful[2] at times. People are sometimes frightened, so part of my job is to reassure them, which can be hard.

Is there anything you don't enjoy?

Not really, although I work from 7 a.m. till 6 p.m. every day, which is very tiring.

What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?

You need to be a good communicator – a lot of nursing is about listening to people's worries and explaining what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good medical knowledge too, but compassion is really important.

Nadia is a scientist and works in a laboratory as a chemist.

Why did you choose to become a scientist?

My best subject at school was chemistry, so I decided to study it at university. After I graduated, I got a two-year contract[3] to work here.

What do you like best about your job?

I'm a very practical person and a lot of my job is looking at trying to improve products or develop new ones. I enjoy the challenges and the variety of my work.

Are there any challenges in your job?

Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on several products and each one has a deadline to meet.

What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?

Obviously, you need a degree in science, but you also have to be good at problem solving. It's important to be able to communicate your ideas to other people too, and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- كلمة despite تربط بين جملتين متناقضتين ويأتى بعدها noun أو v-ing.

٢- كلمة although تربط بين جملتين متناقضتين ويأتى بعدها جملة.

٣- الرابط after جاء بعده جملتان فى الماضى البسيط لعدم الحاجة لبيان فارق زمنى.

Listening Text (1)





At the Job Fair

Narrator Ahmed

Man : Did you find out about any job opportunities at the job fair, Ahmed?

Ahmed : I had a talk with a man from an IT company and he said that there were lots of jobs for young people in his company. He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to do a degree in Information Technology and he said 'no'.

Narrator Sarah

Woman : Hello, Sarah. Was the job fair interesting?

Sarah : Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.

Woman : Oh, what's that?

Sarah : I want to be a flight attendant for an international airline. I talked to a woman from an airline company and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak at least two[1] other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French. I asked her how many countries she has visited and she said that so far she'd been to over 40[2] – imagine that!

Narrator Omar

Fatima : Did you get any useful information about work at the fair, Omar?

Omar : Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to learn a trade. I spoke to a man who owns a construction company and I told him that I didn't really like studying and that I wanted to do something practical[3].

Fatima : Well, you've always been really good at making and fixing things. Mum and dad agree, too.

Omar : I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether I had had any work experience and I told him that I'd been helping[4] our uncle make furniture for a few years. He said that would be useful[5] and that I should try and get an apprenticeship in a local company.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- التعبير at least بمعنى على الأقل يأتي بعده العدد.

٢ - ٣ - ٤ - ٥ - لاحظ الكلام المنقول Reported speech.

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)



Scan & listen



Important Messages

Samir : Hello, this is Samir. The bus has broken down so I'll be late for the meeting.

Hassan : Hello, my name's Hassan. I read the story that is online and I really like it.

Dalia : Hi Nabila, this is Dalia. I'm sorry you're ill and didn't come to school today, but you don't need to worry, there isn't much homework to do.

Mum : Hi Laila, mum here. I'm working late this evening. There is some fish and rice in the fridge so you can cook it yourself[1] if you're hungry.

Tarek : Ahmed, it's Tarek[2]. Have you seen the news? Turn on the TV, because it's very exciting.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- يمكن استخدام الضمائر المنعكسة مثل yourself بدون حرف الجر by.

٢- يمكن استخدام الضمير it في حالة أننا نذكر شخصًا بأنه فعل شيئًا، أو تعريف نفسنا عند الرد على الهاتف.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	care for = look after يرعى / يعتنى بـ	He thanked the nurses who had cared for him.
	take care of يعتنى بـ	I take care of my little sister when our parents are out.
	care about + (something) يهتم بشىء	The only thing he seems to care about is money.
2	apply for + (وظيفة)	She applied for a job as a secretary.
	apply to + (شركة / شخص / مؤسسة)	He applied to three universities and was accepted in all of them.
3	qualify in يحصل على مؤهل فى ... (تخصص معين)	My brother qualified in English literature last year.
	qualify as يتأهل كـ ... (وظيفة)	My sister qualified as a teacher five years ago.
	(be) qualified to + inf. يصبح مؤهلًا لـ ...	He is qualified to teach English.
4	graduate from يتخرج فى (كلية)	I graduated from Cairo University.
	graduate in يتخرج فى (سنة / تخصص)	I graduated in 2010. I graduated in medicine.
	a graduate of خريج لـ (مكان)	I am a graduate of Cairo University.
5	although على الرغم من (تتبع بجملة)	Reda refused to eat although he was hungry.
	despite على الرغم من (تتبع بـ n./v-ing)	Despite being hungry, Reda refused to eat.
	but لكن (تتبع بجملة)	Reda was hungry, but he refused to eat.
	so لذلك (تتبع بجملة)	Reda was hungry, so he ate.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was very happy when my son qualified .... an engineer.

a) like	b) to
c) as	d) for

2. Uncle Gamal has taken .... of us since our father died.

a) reward	b) concern
c) care	d) turn

3. In 1995, I graduated from Tanta University .... teaching.

a) in	b) as
c) of	d) from

4. Nadia is taking .... her baby while working from home.

a) after	b) care after
c) care of	d) care for

5. Mr Hossam is .... to deal with adults.

a) qualify	b) qualified
c) qualification	d) qualifier

6. My daughter is .... of Mansoura University.

a) graduated	b) a graduate
c) graduation	d) graduate

7. Ali has applied .... the job advertised in the newspapers.

a) for	b) in
c) to	d) at

8. Shaimaa could do a degree in education .... having two babies.

a) although	b) but
c) so	d) despite

9. Shaimaa could do a degree in Education .... she has two babies.

a) although	b) but
c) so	d) despite

10. To get this job, you need to have ....

a) no languages at least	b) at least language
c) at least three languages	d) three languages at least



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. This is an easy game. You don't need special .... to play it.
   a) charities b) skulls c) attendants d) skills
2. I am getting more and more .... My work is tiring.
   a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) stressed
3. Teachers' salaries are not very .... although they have a great role in society.
   a) stressful b) rewarding c) practical d) qualified
4. We have several .... for vacation destinations, but I think Sharm is the best.
   a) options b) contracts c) constructions d) skills
5. Manal decided to pursue her .... as a flight attendant working for EGYPTAIR.
   a) position b) career c) industry d) care
6. The .... of the new flat that I had bought was not legal, so I reported it to the police.
   a) agreement b) argument c) contact d) contract
7. My friend left school with no ...., so it is not easy for him to find a job.
   a) attendants b) contracts c) industries d) qualifications
8. Could you tell me about the shortest .... from here to the train station, please?
   a) rate b) method c) route d) root
9. I don't like studying and reading, I'd like to do something ....
   a) practical b) stressful c) frustrating d) obvious
10. I think it is very difficult to meet Friday's .... as we have a lot to do.
    a) airline b) headline c) deadline d) dead time
11. Mr Hossam is really .... to do his job efficiently. He is a very successful director.
    a) graduated b) qualified c) specialised d) educated
12. People who need urgent treatment should go to the .... department at hospitals.
    a) compassion b) medical c) casualty d) reassurance
13. Those who have the desire to save people, especially children, from poverty and violence are ....
    a) compassionate b) cruel c) eligible d) violent
14. We should cooperate to make use of our .... deserts by reclaiming them.
    a) fast b) caring c) eligible d) vast
15. The queen's .... always help her to get dressed.
    a) attendants b) skills c) challenges d) contracts
16. The government is planning for the .... of many new roads and bridges.
    a) construction b) destruction c) connection d) contradiction

17. As a model prisoner, he became .... for release after serving half his sentence.

a) avoidable b) involved c) frightened d) eligible

18. I was nervous on my first day at college, but seeing some friends .... me.

a) worried b) reassured c) stressed d) contracted

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19. Nowadays, I'm .... a degree at Cairo University to be an engineer.

a) making b) having c) doing d) playing

20. I usually enjoy .... a talk with old people. They are very wise.

a) doing b) making c) having d) taking

21. There is a .... of dishes in this restaurant. You have many choices.

a) various b) varied c) vary d) variety

22. A medical professional must be ...., caring, and have excellent communication skills. [Longman]

a) compassionate b) compassionately
c) compassion d) uncompassionate

23. Marwan should .... football training at least once a week.

a) do b) make c) give d) take

24. My brother has a .... in engineering. [Longman]

a) mark b) license c) degree d) sign

25. When Ali left school, he had a/an .... with a construction company that builds hotels in big cities. [Longman]

a) leadership b) ownership c) apprenticeship d) citizenship

26. I was late for work because the bus had broken .... and the driver failed to start the engine again. [Longman]

a) down b) in c) out d) off

27. Climbing the mountain was very .... but amusing. (الإسماعيلية)

a) challenge b) challenging c) changes d) danger

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

28. This match is incredibly exciting: they've got two goals in two minutes. The synonyms of the word "incredibly" are ....

a) amazingly b) commonly c) fruitfully d) appreciatively e) astonishingly

29. Don't try to reassure me because I understand it's very dangerous. The antonyms of the word "reassure" are ....

a) annoy b) assure c) enhance d) worry e) support

30. Teachers at schools must .... students as they are responsible for them.

a) care after b) care for c) take for d) take care of e) look for

31. Yusuf .... Cairo University. He got his certificate last year.

a) graduates in b) is a graduate of c) graduate of
d) graduated from e) graduation of



Reported Speech الكلام المنقول

الفرق بين الكلام المباشر وغير المباشر

1 Direct Speech الكلام المباشر

He said, "I have studied English with my friends".

– هو نص الكلام كما قاله صاحبه دون أى تعديل أو تغيير، ويوضع بين علامات اقتباس quotation marks "................".

2 Indirect Speech (Reported Speech) الكلام غير المباشر

He said (that) he had studied English with his friends.

– هو الكلام المنقول عن صاحبه وتُغير الأزمنة والضمائر على حسب المتكلم والشخص المنقول كلامه.

She said (that) it was a really interesting job.

– وتختلف قواعد نقل الكلام باختلاف أنواع الجمل، فهناك جمل خبرية وجمل أمرية وجمل استفهامية:

Statement الجملة الخبرية

لتحويل الجملة الخبرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر ... تتبع التالى:

1 تحويل فعل القول.

say → say	say to → tell	said → said
says → says	says to → tells	said to → told

لاحظ

– أن التفرقة بينهما فى الاختيارات تكون على حسب وجود فاعل أو مفعول (شخص مخاطب) بعدهما مباشرة، كالآتى:

say/says/said	(that)	+ subj. فاعل	+ verb فعل + ...
tell/tells/told	object اسم شخص أو ضمير	+ (that)	+ subj. + verb فعل + ...

She said she had left the house early. Subj.
She told me (that) she had woken up late. Obj.
He said his father would travel the next day. Subj.
He told his father he wanted to go out with his friends. Obj.

– من الممكن استخدام كلمات أخرى بدلًا من said مثل:

(informed أخبر – explained فسر – promised وعد – illustrated وضح, etc.)

He explained that he was checking the windows.

2 نحذف علامات الاقتباس ونربط بكلمة that ومن الممكن حذفها.

He said to me, "I have seen an accident in the street".
He told me (that) he had seen an accident in the street.

3 تحويلات الضمائر داخل علامات الاقتباس (إن وجدت).

- ضمائر المتكلم: يتم تغييرها على حسب الشخص المتكلم خارج علامات الاقتباس.

I	→	he/she	our	→	their	mine	→	his/hers
my	→	his/her	me	→	him/her	us	→	them
we	→	they						

He said to me, "I will go to the party with my friends".

He told me that he would go to the party with his friends.

- ضمائر المخاطب: يتم تغييرها على حسب الشخص المخاطب خارج علامات الاقتباس.

you فاعل	→	I – he – she – we – they
you مفعول	→	me – him – her – us – them
your صفات ملكية	→	my – his – her – our – their

She said to Mona, "You can attend the lecture with your colleagues tomorrow".

She told Mona (that) she could attend the lecture with her colleagues the next day.

I said to my mother, "I will come with you to the wedding party".

I told my mother (that) I would come with her to the wedding party.

- باقي الضمائر: لا تتغير داخل علامات الاقتباس ... مثل: (he – she – it – they – her – him – their – them)

I said to Amany, "He is watching the football match".

I told Amany (that) he was watching the football match.

4 تحويل زمن الجملة (وفيها تتحول الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضى إذا كان فعل القول ماضيا).

Direct مباشر	Indirect/Reported غير مباشر
مضارع بسيط (التصريف الأول للفعل) He said, "I play football well".	ماضٍ بسيط (التصريف الثانى للفعل) He said that he played football well.
مضارع مستمر (am/is/are) + (v-ing) He said, "I'm watching a film".	ماضٍ مستمر (was/were) + (v-ing) He said that he was watching a film.
مضارع تام (has/have) + P.P. She said, "I have slept early".	ماضٍ تام had + P.P. She said that she had slept early.
ماضٍ بسيط (التصريف الثانى للفعل) She said, "I ate all the food in the fridge".	ماضٍ تام had + P.P. She said that she had eaten all the food in the fridge.
will can + inf. may She said, "I will cook dinner early".	would could + inf. might She said that she would cook dinner early.

لاحظ

- يختلف تحويل must على حسب استخدامها ومعناها فى الجملة.

must + inf.	تحول إلى: had to + inf.	يجب (إلزام)	- Mona said, "I must study my lessons tomorrow". - Mona said that she had to study her lessons the next day.
	تحول إلى: must have + P.P.	بالتأكيد (استنتاج)	- Mona said, "He must be ill today". - Mona said that he must have been ill that day.

وتظل must+ inf. بلا تغيير مع القوانين الثابتة.

He said, "Drivers must follow the traffic rules".
He said that drivers must follow the traffic rules.

5 تحويل أسماء الإشارة وظروف المكان والزمان.

Direct مباشر	Indirect/Reported غير مباشر
yesterday	the day before/the previous day
tomorrow	the next day/the following day
now	then
tonight	that night
next	the following
today	that day
ago/last	before/the previous/earlier
here	there
this	that
these	those

He said to me, "I will travel to Alexandria tomorrow".
He told me that he would travel to Alexandria the following day.
She said to her mother, "I phoned you yesterday".
She told her mother that she had phoned her the day before.

لاحظ

- عند وجود جملتين داخل علامات الاقتباس نربط بينهما بـ (and that/and added that).

He said, "I didn't attend the party. My father was ill".

He said that he hadn't attended the party and added that his father had been ill.

- لاحظ استخدام الأزمنة التالية مع بعض الكلمات الدالة عليها فى غير المباشر.

before/the previous	→	Past perfect ماضٍ تام
then	→	Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر
the following/the next	→	would + inf.
	→	Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mostafa .... that he lived near Alexandria.

a) said b) told c) asked d) wondered

2. Ramy said that he .... a special cake the following day.

a) is making b) will make c) was making d) had made

3. Noha told me that she .... a new film on TV then.

a) is watching b) was watching
c) had watched d) would watch

4. Marwan said that he had done all his work ....

a) the following week b) the week after
c) the previous week d) then



ملاحظات هامة على الكلام المنقول:

1 لا يتغير زمن الجملة أو أسماء الإشارة وظروف المكان والزمان فى الحالات التالية ونكتفى فقط بتغيير الضمائر:

إذا كان فعل القول مضارعا.

Hana says, "I am watching TV now".
Hana says that she is watching TV now.

2 إذا كان ما بداخل علامات الاقتباس حقيقة علمية ثابتة يبقى الزمن مضارعا بسيطا.

Ali said to his son, "The sun rises in the morning".

Ali told his son that the sun rises in the morning.

3 فعل القول (ماضٍ) مع وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الكلام فى الحال أو قبل فترة بسيطة ... مثل:

just now – a moment/minute ago – a short time ago – ....

He said just now, "No one is allowed to leave".

= He said just now that no one is allowed to leave.

4 الحالة الصفرية والثانية والثالثة من الحالات الشرطية لـ If.

He said to me, "If you boil water, it turns into steam".

He told me that if I boil water, it turns into steam.

Eman said to me, "If you had played well, you would have won the game".

Eman told me that if I had played well, I would have won the game.

لاحظ

– الحالة الأولى لـ If تتحول إلى الحالة الثانية.

- Ali said, "If I study hard, I will pass the test easily."

  Ali said that if he studied hard, he would pass the test easily.

– لا تتحول الأزمنة بعد التعبيرات التالية: would rather/would like/had better/it is time

Ali said, "I'd like to watch the new film".

Ali said that he'd like to watch the new film.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali says that he .... very tired at the moment.
   - a) had
   - b) has
   - c) is
   - d) was
2. The teacher said that the moon .... its light from the sun.
   - a) gets
   - b) had got
   - c) get
   - d) got
3. My uncle said just now that he .... us at home.
   - a) will meet
   - b) was meeting
   - c) had met
   - d) meet
4. The teacher told him that he could ask her advice if he .... any problems.
   - a) will have
   - b) had had
   - c) was having
   - d) had
5. Ali told his father a moment ago that he .... to buy a new bag.
   - a) wants
   - b) had wanted
   - c) will want
   - d) is wanting



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sally said that they .... sushi two days before.
   a) would eat   b) had eaten   c) ate   d) were eating
2. Dad .... me, "I'm travelling to Aswan tomorrow".
   a) asked   b) said to   c) explained   d) agreed
3. Maher said that he .... a friend at the station later that day.
   a) is meeting   b) was meeting   c) meets   d) had met
4. Mona .... if she came early, she would call me.
   a) asked   b) told   c) said   d) wanted to know
5. I informed my teacher that I wouldn't be able to attend ....
   a) the last lesson   b) the following lesson
   c) the previous lesson   d) the lesson before
6. The teacher said if we .... red and yellow colours, we .... orange which is my favourite.
   a) mix/ get   b) mix/ will get   c) mixes/ gets   d) mixed/ got
7. My son told me that he .... with his friends the next day.
   a) will travel   b) would travel
   c) had travelled   d) travels
8. Noha explained that they .... to Dubai the year before.
   a) have been   b) have gone   c) went   d) had gone
9. The chef said that one of their ovens .... the day before.
   a) was repairing   b) had repaired
   c) was being repaired   d) had been repaired
10. I told my friend that I .... to the countryside the following week.
   a) am travelling   b) will travel   c) was travelling   d) had travelled
11. Dalia .... her teacher had given her a reward that day.
   a) agreed   b) told   c) said   d) complained
12. Mona .... her friend she was ill and couldn't go to school.
   a) told   b) tells   c) asked   d) said
13. Said said that he .... his friends the previous week.
   a) had met   b) would meet   c) was meeting   d) met
14. Monira has just told Amira that they .... to their friend's wedding tonight.
   a) would go   b) have gone   c) were going   d) are going
15. He admitted that he .... late the night before.
   a) has arrived   b) arrives   c) would arrive   d) had arrived

16. They told us ………………… we worked hard, we would reach our goals easily.
a) unless b) if c) that d) what

17. Our teacher ………………… all of us about the results of the final exams.
a) said b) wanted to know c) inquired d) told

18. She ………………… her friend had an accident, but I don't know whether she is Rania or not.
a) said b) told c) say d) tells

19. Ola said that she ………………… me as soon as she arrived.
a) calls b) had called c) will call d) would call

20. "I'm going out," announced Bassam. Bassam announced that he ………………… out.
a) went b) will go out c) was going d) is going

21. "This year we've been to Matrouh," said Mai. Mai said they ………………… to Matrouh that year.
a) have being been b) have been
c) 've gone d) 'd been

22. "You must sleep early today". - My father told me that I ………………… early that day.
a) must sleep b) must have slept
c) had to sleep d) was sleeping

23. I was ………………… that the meeting had been postponed for unknown reasons. Longman
a) said b) ordered c) advised d) told

24. She says that she ………………… drawing; it is her favourite hobby. Longman
a) liked b) was liking c) like d) likes

25. Ahmed ………………… he was able to write the report on his own. Longman
a) inquired b) ordered c) said d) told

26. Faten says that she ………………… her old car because it usually breaks down. Longman
a) was going to sell b) is going to sell
c) have sold d) has been sold

27. The teacher told us that the earth ………………… around the sun. (الشرقية - بلبيس)
a) turn b) turned c) turns d) had turned

28. She said that her mother ………………… her with her homework then. (الإسماعيلية)
a) had helped b) helped c) was helping d) helping

29. Adham ………………… his father watched the match with his friends. (الجيزة - العمرانية)
a) told b) promised c) asked d) said

30. Hani said that he ………………… a new flat yet. (الفيوم - أبشواى)
a) didn't find b) hasn't found c) hadn't found d) wasn't found

Test yourself Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Ali usually .... to school as he likes riding bikes.
   a) runs b) cycles c) walks d) flies
2. My brother will .... for a passport next week as he wants to travel abroad.
   a) apply b) care c) look d) employ
3. Omar began his .... as a blacksmith a year ago. His dream is to own a workshop.
   a) attendant b) construction c) degree d) apprenticeship
4. I talk to English people online to improve my language. The synonym of the word "improve" is "....................".
   a) enhance b) decline c) disorder d) break
5. An attendant is a person whose job .... helping the public.
   a) applies b) qualifies c) involves d) evaluates
6. The new hotel is currently under .... The minister will inaugurate يفتتح it next month.
   a) damage b) structure c) destruction d) construction
7. The manager is searching for people with certain ....
   a) contracts b) characteristics c) characters d) deadlines
8. My sister decided to .... a party to celebrate her daughter's success.
   a) get b) carry c) hold d) expect
9. What are the skills that make you .... for this job?
   a) eligible b) public c) particular d) incredible
10. We were surprised that our team won the match .... their bad performance.
    a) despite b) although c) because d) owing to
11. The government tries to develop new .... in order to reduce unemployment.
    a) connections b) communicators c) degrees d) industries
12. There is a .... in my job. I do something different every day.
    a) vary b) varying c) various d) variety
13. The legal agreement between people is called a ....
    a) certificate b) degree c) qualification d) contract
14. I think .... experience is more useful than any degree nowadays.
    a) simple b) medical c) compassionate d) practical
15. If you want to travel to different places by plane, you should go to a/an .... company first.
    a) fly line b) air flyer c) airline d) flight line

Language

16. Sara told me that she .... a job interview the previous day.
   a) had   b) will have   c) had had   d) has
17. Manar told me that she .... her homework then.
   a) was doing   b) had done   c) did   d) is doing
18. Nada .... me that she would like to go out for shopping.
   a) told   b) asked   c) said   d) advised
19. The doctor told me that he .... able to meet me until the next day.
   a) won't be   b) isn't   c) wouldn't be   d) hadn't been
20. Ibrahim said that his father .... him to make bread the day before.
   a) taught   b) would teach   c) had taught   d) teaches
21. Hamdy told me that he .... the film about global warming.
   a) hadn't seen   b) wasn't seen   c) doesn't see   d) is seeing
22. Maher said he .... to London the week before.
   a) has flown   b) had flown   c) is flying   d) was flying
23. He said that he .... a training course the previous week.
   a) had done   b) would do   c) did   d) was doing
24. My teacher agreed that it .... a good idea to revise every day.
   a) was   b) will be   c) has been   d) was being
25. Farida .... me if she had won the competition, she would have been happy.
   a) asked   b) said   c) told   d) inquired
26. The social studies teacher told us that Asia .... the largest continent in the world.
   a) was   b) is   c) has been   d) will be
27. Maged told us that his family .... a house in the countryside two months before.
   a) bought   b) had bought   c) would buy   d) has bought
28. Kareem told me that he .... me to repair my car the following day.
   a) helped   b) had helped   c) would help   d) will help
29. The article says that there .... an increase in the number of university students next year.
   a) will be   b) had been   c) was   d) would be
30. My mother .... when she visited her father, she found him very ill.
   a) said   b) told   c) asked   d) wanted to know

Study... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

attention to detail الاهتمام/الانتباه للتفاصيل	good communicator (n) محاور جيد	plumber (n) سباك
baker (n) خباز	hard-working (adj) مجتهد	punctual (adj) منضبط فى المواعيد
caring (adj) مهتم / مراع للآخرين	honest (adj) أمين/صادق	reliable (adj) موثوق به
confident (adj) واثق	jobs (n) وظائف	shop assistant (n) بائع فى محل
farmer (n) مزارع/فلاح	loyal (adj) مخلص	team-player (n) شخص يجيد العمل الجماعى
flexible (adj) مرن	office worker (n) عامل فى مكتب	vet (n) طبيب بيطرى

Vocabulary on Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص الاستماع

adapt (v) – ed يتأقلم/يتكيف	fire engine (n) سيارة مطافئ	require (v) – d يتطلب
bring (v) يُحضر	firefighter (n) رجل مطافئ	sirens (n) صفارات الإنذار
career (n) حياة مهنية	jobs fair (n) معرض الوظائف	situation (n) موقف
community (n) مجتمع	job opportunities فرص عمل	sound ed (v) (n) يصدر صوتًا/صوت
dream job (n) وظيفة الأحلام	main (adj) رئيسى	teammate (n) عضو الفريق
experience (n) خبرة	necessary (adj) ضرورى	
fancy (v) (~~y~~ ied) يتخيل/يريد (يفكر حيال شىء)	non-biased (adj) غير متحيز	

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

aged (adj) فى سن	interests (n) اهتمامات	personal qualities (n) صفات شخصية
availability (n) التوافر	office worker (n) عامل فى مكتب	professional (adj) (n) محترف
cuisine (n) فن الطبخ	patient (adj) صبور	
immediate (adj) فورى	pay (n) (v) أجر/يدفع	

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions
التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

Bachelor's Degree in English درجة البكالوريوس فى اللغة الإنجليزية	bring along يحضر شخصًا/شيئًا فى مكان	sit at يجلس على
free-time activities أنشطة وقت الفراغ	Do you fancy ...? هل تود/ترغب فى ...؟	suitable for مناسب لـ
take/do a course يأخذ «كورس»	lessons on/in دروس فى/على	work in يعمل فى
great at عظيم فى	Post Graduate Certificate in Education شهادة الدراسات العليا فى التربية	work with يعمل مع
adapt to يتأقلم مع	plenty of الكثير من	when necessary عند الضرورة

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which word refers to a group of people living in the same area and sharing common interests?
a) Charity. b) Network. c) Community. d) Organisation.

2. After the player scored a goal, his .... carried him around the field.
a) classmates b) team-players c) firefighters d) teammates

3. To be a good teacher, you must be .... with your students.
a) patient b) dishonest c) aged d) various

4. The .... did a great job when they rescued all the people in the burning house.
a) engines b) firefighters c) conductors d) street fighters

5. I've heard from .... sources that the company is in trouble.
a) flexible b) patient c) necessary d) reliable

6. Our cat was very ill and we took it to the ....
a) vet b) chemist c) dentist d) cuisine

7. I usually ask my students to make notes of the .... points only, not everything.
a) mean b) main c) trivial d) minor

8. Thanks to our great teacher, the response to our questions is ....
a) hard-working b) immediate c) unknown d) late

9. People in Ukraine rush يسرعو to shelters when they hear the warning ....
a) bellows b) sirens c) cries d) bombs

10. The popular desserts in the Egyptian .... include baqlawa, basbousa and kunafa.
a) cook b) oven c) cooker d) cuisine

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
experience	يجرب	experience	خبرة/تجربة حياتية	experienced	ذو خبرة
---------------------------		flexibility	مرونة	flexible	مرن
---------------------------		honesty	أمانة	honest	أمين
rely on	يعتمد على	reliability reliance	الموثوقية الاعتماد	reliable	موثوق
---------------------------		availability	الإتاحة / التوافر	available	متاح

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Mary relies on her children to do housework. (v)
The company's reliance on youth makes it successful. (n)
Mr Ashraf is a reliable lawyer. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
exciting	مثير	thrilling/inspiring	boring/dull	ممل
flexible	مرن	adjustable/malleable	inflexible/rigid	غير مرن
honest	أمين / صادق	trustful/faithful	dishonest/untruthful/deceitful	غير أمين
loyal	مخلص	faithful/devoted	disloyal/unfaithful	غير مخلص
main	رئيسى	major/basic	secondary/minor	ثانوى
necessary	ضرورى	essential/vital	additional/inessential/extra	إضافى
reliable	موثوق به	dependable/trustworthy	unreliable/uncertain	غير موثوق به

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It can be challenging to adapt .... life in a different city.
   - a) at
   - b) to
   - c) for
   - d) with
2. To keep healthy, you should make sure you drink .... of water.
   - a) variety
   - b) quality
   - c) plenty
   - d) penalty
3. I called three car rental companies, but there was no .... for the holiday weekend.
   - a) available
   - b) availability
   - c) punctuality
   - d) punctual
4. I called three car rental companies, but there were no cars .... for the holiday weekend.
   - a) available
   - b) availability
   - c) punctuality
   - d) punctual
5. Reda has been driving for 30 years, so he is an .... driver.
   - a) experience
   - b) experimental
   - c) experiencing
   - d) experienced
6. The manager warned the employees not to bring their children ....
   - a) along
   - b) out
   - c) in
   - d) on
7. Give me your honest opinion. The synonym of the word "honest" is "....................".
   - a) trustful
   - b) dishonest
   - c) inspiring
   - d) doubtful
8. Salem is flexible about making appointments; he will help us. The antonym of the word "flexible" is "....................".
   - a) malleable
   - b) rigid
   - c) dishonest
   - d) strong
9. I raise my children to be reliable persons and problem solvers. The synonym of the word "reliable" is "....................".
   - a) essential
   - b) trustworthy
   - c) unreliable
   - d) unfaithful
10. The main reason for increasing crimes is the problem of unemployment. The antonym of the word "main" is "....................".
    - a) major
    - b) important
    - c) secondary
    - d) trusty



Reading Text



My Dream Job

Name : Mohammed
Age : 23
Dream job : Firefighter
Skills : You should be:

- a team-player
- reliable
- a good communicator
- flexible

Workplace : Central Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter. When I was a little boy, I played with toy fire engines and sometimes watched the fire engines driving[1] down the streets with their sirens sounding. I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was outside, exciting and had a lot of variety.

Firefighting can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your teammates and also be happy to adapt to different situations when necessary[2].

Do you fancy a career as a firefighter?[3] If you want an exciting job helping the community, come and visit me on Stand 21 at the Jobs Fair.

Date: 23 May

Time: 9.00 – 14.00

If you're not interested in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along[4] – you never know what career is out there for you!



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- الفعل watch يأتي بعده مفعول ثم v-ing ليفيد مشاهدة جزء من الحدث، أما مع مشاهدة الحدث كله فنستخدم المصدر.

٢- الرابط when من الممكن أن يأتي بعده صفة، وهنا بمعنى عند الضرورة.

٣- لاحظ هذا التعبير بمعنى «هل تود؟».

٤- لاحظ هذا التعبير بمعنى تحضر أشخاصًا معك للمكان.



Suitable Jobs

The world of work is vast. There are routes into employment for everyone, with options to study at university, through apprenticeships or progressing through work experience.

Job fairs are often held to give non-biased information about many industries.

They can tell you about what qualifications, skills and experience you will need, and you can also find out about what you can expect to earn.

Every job has its challenges and rewards which can affect a person's decision about whether to pursue a career. Equally, some characteristics are essential for certain jobs. For example, a medical professional must be compassionate, caring and have excellent communication skills.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	at the age of = aged في سن	My son started to read (at the age of/aged) four.
	in the age of في عصر	We are living in the age of technology.
2	adapt to (n./v-ing) يتأقلم أو يتكيف مع	Children can adapt easily to the new environment.
	adapt ... for يجعل ....مناسبًا لـ	Mr Reda adapted the new techniques for older students.
	(be) adapted for يحول إلى (عمل أدبي)	Many novels have been adapted for television like "Cinderella".
	adopt يتبنى	He had no children, so he decided to adopt a child.
3	- pay (somebody) for (something) - pay (somebody) + (something) - pay (somebody) to + inf. يدفع مقابل	- Mum paid for my driving lessons. - He didn't even offer to pay me for the ticket. - I paid him $5. - Rana paid some kids to sweep the floor.
	- pay (in) cash يدفع (نقدًا) - pay by (cheque/credit card) يدفع بشيك أو بكارت ائتمان	- You'd get a discount for paying in cash. - Can I pay by credit card?

4	**experience** الخبرة: ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين (لا تُـعد)	Do you have any previous experience of this type of work?
	experience(s) مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات فى الحياة (تُـعد)	I had a bad experience with fireworks once.
	experiment(s) تجربة علمية داخل المعمل (تُعد)	Many people do not like the idea of experiments on animals.
5	**work** عمل /مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	It is difficult to find work in the present economic climate.
	job وظيفة (اسم يعد)	I'm thinking about applying for a new job.
	career الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد	What made you decide on a career as a vet?
	profession مهنة (الاسم من الوظيفة)	He left the teaching profession in 2002 to start his own business.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Did she pay you .... taking care of her kids?
   a) with b) in c) for d) to
2. The garden is too messy; we'll need to pay .... do the gardening.
   a) someone to b) to someone to c) for someone d) someone for
3. Reem always pays .... cash. She never uses a credit card.
   a) in b) for c) at d) by
4. After he retired, he wrote a book about his .... as a war reporter.
   a) experiences b) experimentations c) experiments d) experts
5. The story was adapted .... young learners.
   a) for b) to c) at d) with
6. Her son still hasn't been able to find a ....
   a) job b) work c) career d) profession
7. She spent most of her .... working as a doctor in India.
   a) job b) profession c) work d) career
8. .... the age of technology, we can do lots of things.
   a) At b) On c) In d) Around
9. .... the age of ten, I could ride a bike by myself.
   a) At b) On c) In d) Of
10. Researchers often do .... on animals, especially rats and monkeys.
    a) experiences b) experiments c) experience d) works

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Listening & Workbook

1. After years of studying at the Faculty of Law, Maha finally began her .... as a lawyer.
   a) account b) career c) work d) situation
2. We can offer you .... working hours to make your work easier.
   a) flexible b) confident c) exciting d) fixed
3. Passengers on the plane are .... by law to fasten their seatbelts.
   a) acquired b) inquired c) required d) fancied
4. We need somebody who is completely .... for this job. They will deal with a lot of money.
   a) flexible b) dishonest c) aged d) honest
5. I like this website as I can get .... information from it.
   a) silly b) miserable c) reliable d) unreliable
6. I .... that I heard footsteps behind me. I turned around but found no one.
   a) required b) fancied c) found d) paid
7. A wife and a husband should be .... to each other to succeed in their life.
   a) patient b) loyal c) royal d) cruel
8. Zainab could get a .... as a receptionist in a famous hotel.
   a) job b) profession c) career d) work
9. The scientists are doing some .... to see if they can find a cure for this disease.
   a) experiences b) professions c) experiments d) interests
10. When I saw the fire .... coming, I hurried to guide them.
    a) engines b) cars c) sirens d) places
11. Before taking any action, I always get .... advice from my lawyer.
    a) amateur b) flexible c) professional d) available
12. To get the job, you must have at least three-year ....
    a) experiment b) expert c) experience d) experiences
13. The teacher asked us a question and he wanted a/an .... answer.
    a) immediate b) excited c) main d) patient
14. Many people have left their rural ريفى .... to find work in the city.
    a) communities b) companies c) families d) states
15. The .... is someone who can make bread and cakes, especially to sell them.
    a) barber b) baker c) plumber d) blacksmith
16. A .... is someone who belongs to the same group as you.
    a) college b) teammate c) firefighter d) follower

17. What kind of personal .... do you look for in an employee?
a) quantities b) applications c) amounts d) qualities

18. Attention to .... is essential in the job of an engineer.
a) detail b) confidence c) sound d) voice

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19. Islam is .... and the manager says that we can depend on him.
a) rely b) reliability c) reliance d) reliable

20. Many students like to .... on themselves for money not their parents.
a) reliable b) reliance c) rely d) reliability

21. My father sat .... the table and called us to have dinner with him.
a) at b) on c) under d) with

22. Sally never arrives late; she is really...................... . Longman
a) careless b) avoidable c) punctual d) funny

23. A good employee must be .... enough to adapt to different situations quickly. Longman
a) reachable b) flexible c) narrow-minded d) rigid

24. Finally, I .... the training courses that are necessary to get the job I wanted. Longman
a) explored b) fabricated c) created d) did

25. When I travelled to Europe, I couldn't adapt .... its weather. (الفيوم - أبشواى)
a) with b) to c) on d) for

26. My aunt doesn't have children, so she has decided to .... a girl. (الشرقية - شرق الزقازيق)
a) adapt b) adopt c) grow d) bury

27. I got a/an .... to fix the kitchen tap. (بنى سويف - إهناسيا)
a) mechanic b) carpenter c) plumber d) architect

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

28. Mohammed is very flexible, he'll go along with anything. The antonyms of "flexible" are "......................".
a) adjustable b) trustful c) rigid d) inflexible e) malleable

29. It was necessary for Radwa to sleep early. The synonyms of the word "necessary" are "......................".
a) allowed b) inessential c) banned d) essential e) vital

30. I am going to .... a course to improve my English before travelling.
a) do b) make c) take d) catch e) keep

31. Firefighters have the ability to adapt to different situations .... necessary.
a) on b) while c) if d) during e) when

32. The film was so exciting that I saw it twice. The antonyms of the adjective "exciting" are "......................".
a) thrilling b) inspiring c) boring d) long e) dull

B Language

Reported question السؤال المنقول

عند تحويل الجملة الاستفهامية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتى:

1 يتحـول فعـل القـول said إلى:

تساءل inquired – أراد أن يعرف wanted to know – تساءل/تعجب wondered – سأل asked

Ali said, "When will you travel?"
Ali asked (wondered – wanted to know – inquired) when I would travel.
She said to me, "How long have you stayed in Luxor?"
She asked me how long I had stayed in Luxor.

لاحـظ

عند وجود مفعول لا يمكن استخدام wondered - wanted to know - inquired ونستخدم asked فقط.

2 إذا بدأ السؤال بفعـل مسـاعـد أو ناقص (سؤال بـ «هل») تحـذف علامات الاقتباس ونربـط بـ if أو whether.

She said, "Have you enjoyed the journey?"
She wanted to know if/whether I had enjoyed the journey.

لاحظ أنه عند وجود or not فى نهاية الجملة يمكن استخدام if/whether أما إذا جاءت فى وسط الجملة فنستخدم whether فقط:

He asked me if/whether I had travelled or not.
He asked me whether or not I had travelled.

3 إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهـام نربـط بنفس الأداة.

The teacher said to us, "Why are you making so much noise?"
The teacher asked us why we were making so much noise.

4 يحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية (نقدم الفاعل على الفعل) مع ملاحظة حـذف do – does ويصبـح الفعل (ماضيًا بسيطًا) وتحـذف did ويصبـح الفعـل (ماضيًا تـامًا).

Nour said, "How did you go out in such bad weather?"
Nour wondered how I had gone out in such bad weather.

5 الضمائر داخل علامات الاقتباس تتحول حسب الضمائر خارجها كما سبق ذكره.

6 يتغير الزمن من المضارع إلى الماضى داخل علامات الاقتباس إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا.

7 الأزمنة داخل علامات الاقتباس تبقى كما هى إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا (ask – asks) أو عند وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الفعل منذ فترة قصيرة جدًا (just now) أو كان السؤال يعبر عن حقيقة.

8 تحـول الكلمات الدالة على الزمان والمكان كما سبق ذكره.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ayman .... me when I had posted the letter to my sister.
   a) said b) asked c) told d) b & c
2. The referee .... whether the ball touched my hand or not.
   a) said b) wanted to know c) asked how d) wondered Ali
3. Magdy asked me if .... to the cinema the week before.
   a) had I gone b) I had gone c) did I go d) I would go
4. I want to know if .... at school now.
   a) does he b) has he c) he is d) is he
5. Sara asked me .... I had travelled to Alexandria by train.
   a) if b) how c) where d) that

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على الكلام المنقول.

من الممكن أن يتحول فعل القول said إلى بعض الكلمات حسب غرض الجملة كما يلى:

1 فى جملة العرض تتحول said إلى offered to + inf. كما يلى:

Subject + offered to + inf.

He said, "Can I help you?" = He offered to help me.

2 فى جملة الاقتراح تتحول said إلى suggested كما يلى:

Subject + suggest + (v-ing)

Subject + suggest + that + subject + (should) + inf.

He said, "What about playing football today?"

= He suggested playing football that day.

= He suggested that we (should) play football that day.

3 فى جملة الاتهام تتحول said إلى accused كما يلى:

Subject + accused + obj. اسم شخص/ضمير **of + (v-ing)/noun**

The police said to the criminal, "You have killed the woman on purpose".

= The police accused the criminal of killing the woman on purpose.

4 فى جملة الإنكار تتحول said إلى denied كما يلى:

Subject + denied + (v-ing)

Subject + denied that + جملة

The thief said, "I didn't steal the money". = The thief denied stealing the money.

= The thief denied that he had stolen the money.

5 في جملة الاعتذار تتحول said إلى apologised كما يلي:

Subject + apologised for + (v-ing)
Subject + apologised that + جملة
Subject + apologised to + object + for + (v-ing)

Amal said, "I'm sorry I didn't do my homework".
= Amal apologised for not doing her homework.
= Amal apologised that she hadn't done her homework.
He said to his teacher, "I'm sorry for coming late".
= He apologised to his teacher for coming late.

6 في جملة النصيحة تتحول said إلى advised كما يلي:

Subject + advised + obj. اسم شخص/ضمير + to + inf.

My mother said to me, "You should study hard."
= My mother advised me to study hard.

7 في جملة الطلب تتحول said إلى asked.

Subject + asked + obj. اسم شخص/ضمير + to + inf.

Mona said to me, "Can you open the door?"
= Mona asked me to open the door.

8 في حالة الاعتراف تتحول said إلى admitted.

admitted (to) + (v-ing)

She said, "I did this crime".
= She admitted doing that crime.

9 في حالة الشكوى تتحول said إلى complained.

complained + that + subject + verb

The mother said, "The children are still making noise".
= The mother complained that the children were still making noise.

10 في حالة الوعد تتحول said إلى promised.

promised to + inf.
promised that + subject + verb

He said, "I'll buy you a gift".
= He promised to buy me a gift.
= He promised that he would buy me a gift.

11 في حالة التحذير تتحول said إلى warned.

warned + (to + inf.)
warned + against + v-ing

He said to me, "Don't cross the road".
= He warned me not to cross the road.
= He warned me against crossing the road.

12 في حالة الإصرار تتحول said إلى insisted.

insisted on + (v-ing) /insisted that + subject + verb

He said, "I will leave now".
= He insisted on leaving then. = He insisted that he left then.

13 في حالة الرفض تتحول said إلى refused.

refused + (to + inf.)

He said to Adel, "I won't give you any money".
= He refused to give Adel any money.

14 لاحظ التركيب التالي ويسمى سؤالاً غير مباشر Indirect Question ولكن ليس منقولاً.

Do you know
(Can/Could) you tell me ⟶ **wh- word + subj. + v + ...?**

Do you know why she left the country?
Could you tell me what you want to eat?

ـ أما إذا كانت أداة الاستفهام هي who فتتبع بالفعل مباشرة.

Can you tell me who stole your book?

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you please tell me where ....?
a) is the station b) the station is c) the station be d) was the station

2. The boss said, "I will give you double your salary." The boss .... to do so.
a) warned b) threatened c) offered d) accused

3. She said to me, "Can you send me your CV?" She ....
a) asked me sending her CV b) suggested me to send my CV
c) asked me to send my CV d) wondered me to send her CV

4. Samir denied .... the new vase.
a) broke b) breaking c) break d) to break

5. "Pass me the chocolate cake please." Omar said. Omar .... me to pass it.
a) promised b) asked c) threatened d) warned



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dad asked me .... I scored a good goal.
a) that b) not to c) if d) to

2. The driver asked if .... help him.
a) can he b) could I c) I can d) I could

3. The cashier asked me .... I would pay in cash or by credit card.
a) whether b) who c) that d) what

4. He wants to know if .... her lessons now.
a) she was studying b) was she studying
c) she is studying d) is she studying

5. Eman asked if I knew that ....
a) had she been ill b) she has been ill
c) she had been ill d) has she been ill

6. Huda asked Hala .... she was doing anything the next day.
a) unless b) whether c) that d) what

7. My grandfather asked me whether I .... ice cream or fizzy drinks.
a) am preferring b) have preferred c) preferred d) will prefer

8. Mr Ashraf .... me if my parents knew where I was.
a) told b) wondered c) inquired d) asked

9. He said, "I'm sorry for not coming early". He .... to me for not coming early.
a) confessed b) apologised c) admitted d) promised

10. He said, "I will definitely pay for you." He .... for me.
a) insisted on paying b) insisted to pay
c) said I should pay d) denied paying

11. Nora has just asked me how long .... to finish my work.
a) will I take b) I had taken c) did I take d) I will take

12. Ahmed usually asks me if I .... English or French.
a) enjoys b) enjoy c) had enjoyed d) could enjoy

13. Can you .... me why your brother left us?
a) ask b) say c) tell d) want to know

14. Ali suggested that he .... with us to the meeting.
a) go b) is going c) going d) to go

15. The policeman said, "...................... park your car in this area".
a) Not to b) To c) Don't d) Mustn't

16. The detective المحقق wanted to know .... the cause of the accident.
a) why b) what c) no word d) whether

17. Amgad wondered .... my father had a car or a bike.

a) unless b) what c) whether d) no word

18. A lot of students wanted to know .... the results of the last exam.

a) what b) who c) no word d) whether

19. Soha said, "I'm the one who stole the money." This means that she ....

a) apologised for stealing it b) denied stealing it
c) admitted to stealing it d) refused to steal

20. Rady said, "Shall I carry the bag for you?" This means that he ....

a) said that he could carry the bag for me
b) told me that he shall carry the bag for me
c) offered to carry the bag for me
d) wondered if he would carry the bag for me

21. No one knows why .... angry. Longman

a) was she b) is she c) she had been d) she is

22. Hatim asked .... or not we would join the trip to the Pyramids. Longman

a) if b) when c) whether d) how

23. Tamer .... me why I had travelled to London the week before. Longman

a) wanted to know b) inquired c) asked d) ordered

24. Yasser asked the tourist .... he came from. Longman

a) when b) where c) that d) if

25. Samir asked me how .... the problem alone. Longman

a) will I solve b) had I solved c) I had solved d) I will solve

26. Ramy asked Amr .... going for his holiday. (السويس)

a) when he was b) where is he c) where was he d) where he is

27. Rana asked Fatma if .... that their friend Alaa had been ill. (الشرقية - ديرب نجم)

a) does she know b) she knew c) did she know d) she knows

28. Mohammed denied .... the mirror of the car. (الشرقية - ديرب نجم)

a) breaks b) broke c) to break d) breaking

29. The manager asked the secretary .... she had sent the email or not. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر)

a) unless b) weather c) when d) whether

30. Hana asked Eman if .... to the book club that afternoon. (الشرقية - القنايات)

a) she is going b) is she going
c) she was going d) was she going

31. Ahmed .... his brother to give him a lift to work because he was late. (بورسعيد)

a) asked b) questioned c) said d) wondered

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I usually go to the jobs .... to search for suitable opportunities.
   a) fare b) fall c) fair d) fur
2. I'm ...., but I think my daughter's paintings were the best.
   a) biased b) non-biased c) based d) non-based
3. Adel is a ....; he is good at working in a group and always offers help.
   a) team-played b) team-player c) team-play d) team-playing
4. Mr Said is known for being the most helpful one in his ....
   a) communication b) community c) training d) casualty
5. All Egyptian citizens must be totally .... to our country, Egypt.
   a) disloyal b) punctual c) flexible d) loyal
6. The air raid غارة جوية .... sounded to warn everyone in the city that an attack was coming.
   a) bellows b) sirens c) cries d) bombs
7. As a teacher, it is very important to be .... for my classes.
   a) punctual b) virtual c) patient d) flexible
8. When applying for a job, you often have to mention your .... and hobbies.
   a) situations b) sirens c) careers d) interests
9. The play is very popular, so we should check the .... of the tickets before going to the theatre.
   a) availability b) value c) loyalty d) variety
10. My nephew asked me about the personal .... necessary to be a successful lawyer.
    a) quantities b) hygiene c) qualities d) customs
11. Sometimes, parents should try to be .... with their children in some situations.
    a) flexible b) disloyal c) industrial d) necessary
12. Hana studied hard and so she was .... of passing all her exams.
    a) punctual b) confident c) honest d) loyal
13. Salah is the best one to speak for the team; he is a good ....
    a) contributor b) distributor c) communicator d) caller
14. I like your new car. How much did you pay .... it?
    a) for b) with c) by d) at
15. Rich people sometimes .... a child or more as a sign of social participation المشاركة المجتمعية.
    a) adapt b) adore c) adopt d) change

Language

16. Amgad asked Hossam when he ....

a) will graduate b) would graduate c) has graduated d) graduates

17. She .... her father to get the full mark in the next exams.

a) asked b) said c) thought d) promised

18. I didn't know .... the shop was shut or not.

a) why b) that c) unless d) whether

19. Huda asked .... our mother had made for dinner.

a) how b) why c) what d) when

20. They .... me whether I was ill.

a) said b) told c) wanted to know d) asked

21. Zaki wanted to know where .... his laptop.

a) did he put b) he had put c) he puts d) had he put

22. I asked my husband how many pounds .... the day before.

a) he had earned b) had he earned
c) has he earned d) he has earned

23. Salah wonders why I .... them all about our plan.

a) have told b) had told c) was telling d) were telling

24. Esraa asked me if .... an apple.

a) can she get b) she can get c) she could get d) she will get

25. I asked Yousra if she was enjoying the book she ....

a) read b) was reading c) will read d) would read

26. Sara .... for an apple as she was hungry.

a) told b) said c) wondered d) asked

27. The teacher asked Ahmed .... all the way on foot.

a) would he come b) if did he come
c) if he came d) if does he come

28. Mona asked Tamer, "How often .... your grandparents?"

a) you visit b) you are visiting c) you will visit d) do you visit

29. Mona asked Tamer how often .... his grandparents.

a) he visited b) did he visit c) he will visit d) does he visit

30. Ali said, "If I were you, I'd read this book". - Ali .... me to read that book.

a) let b) advised c) ordered d) discouraged

Study... Part 3 | Skills



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

• **Job skills on a CV:**

When you write your CV to apply for a job, you should write the information that makes you acceptable for it:

1. Your personal information; (name – place of birth – date of birth – address – marital status ...)
2. List your skills and personal qualities.
3. Write about your experience and the things you have done.
4. Personal statement where you have to describe yourself including your skills in sentences.
5. List your hobbies, interests and free time activities.

MODEL ESSAY

An essay about my dream job

Introduction	Everyone of us surely has a dream to be achieved in his/her life. As for me, I always dream of becoming a doctor. This is my dream job and I am trying hard to achieve it. I would like to be a doctor, as I want to help sick people to become healthier. Also, I can help my parents when they are sick. I would really like to be a surgeon like Dr Magdi Yacoub, who has made great achievements in the field of heart surgery.
Main body	To become a successful doctor, I think that I have to read a lot of books because doctors are required to know well about the human body. In addition, I have to study English and many other languages very hard because most of medical terms are in English. Above all, I have to make a constant effort in my secondary study to get into the Faculty of Medicine as it is the first step to be a doctor.
Conclusion	In conclusion, I think I have the qualities to be a successful doctor. I am patient with people and I will be patient with the sick. I am working hard as I like my work and I always want to be better. I also have the ability to love and serve those who are sick or in need.

Practice
Skills Exercises



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم لهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (القاهرة - إدارة السلام)

In the seventeenth-century Florentine textile industry, women were employed primarily in low-paying, low-skill jobs. To explain this segregation of labour by gender, economists have relied on the useful theory of human capital. According to this theory, investment in human capital—the acquisition of difficult job-related skills—generally benefits individuals by making them eligible to engage in well-paid occupations.

Women's role as child bearers, however, results in interruptions in their participation in the job market (as compared with men's) and thus reduces their opportunities to acquire training for highly skilled work. In addition, the human capital theory explains why there was a high concentration of women workers in certain low-skill jobs, such as weaving, but not in others, such as combing or carding.

There were, however, differences in pay scales that cannot be explained by the human capital theory. For example, male construction workers were paid a significantly higher wage than female taffeta weavers. The wage difference between these two low-skill occupations stems from the segregation of labour by gender: because a limited number of occupations were open to women, there was a large supply of workers in their fields, and this "overcrowding" resulted in women receiving lower wages and men receiving higher wages.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage talks about .... industry in the seventeenth century.
a) the dull b) the flourishing c) the delayed d) the funny

2. Women's opportunities to acquire training for highly skilled work .... their role as child bearers.
a) increase due to b) reduce because of
c) develop d) improve

3. There was a high concentration of women workers in certain low-skill jobs, such as ....
a) constructing b) driving
c) weaving d) bringing kids up

4. The underlined word "segregation" refers to ....
a) men and women b) old and young people
c) kids and women d) textiles

5. The overcrowding in taffeta weavers resulted in ....
a) high wages b) low wages c) increasing money d) rich women

6. Men got higher wages because they could work in the field of ....
a) child bearers b) weaving c) construction d) combing

7. The word "occupations" is the synonym of the word "......................".
a) tasks b) professions c) operations d) functions

(B) Translation

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Sinai is a dear part of our country. It isn't a mere desert in the northeast of Egypt. It is a symbol of our struggle against enemies throughout history.

a) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى ليست مجرد صحراء فى شمال غرب مصرولكنها رمزلكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.

b) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى مجرد صحراء فى شمال شرق مصرولكنها شكل بسيط لكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.

c) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى ليست مجرد صحراء فى شمال شرق مصرولكنها رمزلكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.

d) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى ليست مجرد صحراء فى شمال شرق مصرولكنها رمزلمقابلة الأعداء على مر التاريخ.

2. Man is sociable by nature. Because of this fact, people should pay full attention to everything they do, as it affects society around them either positively or negatively.

a) إن الإنسان اجتماعى بطبيعته وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص أن ينتبهوا جيدا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.

b) إن الرجل اجتماعى بطبيعته وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص ألا ينتبهوا جيدا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.

c) إن الإنسان ليس اجتماعيًا بطبيعته وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص أن ينتبهوا جيدا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على البيئة من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.

d) إن الإنسان اجتماعى بطبيعته وبالرغم من هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص أن ينتبهوا جيدا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.

3. Candidates for the jobs must have knowledge of at least one foreign language and they should also have computer skills.

a) يجب على المرشحين للوظائف أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغة أجنبية واحدة على الأقل وأيضًا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الإلكترونى.

b) يجب على المرشحين للوظائف أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغتين أجنبيتين على الأقل وأيضًا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الآلى.

c) يجب على المرشحين للوظائف أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغة أجنبية واحدة على الأقل وأيضًا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الآلى.

d) المرشحون للوظيفة يجب أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغة أجنبية واحدة أخيرًا وأيضًا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الآلة الحاسبة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. يجب علينا أن نقلل التلوث البيئى عن طريق زراعة الأشجار وتقليل استخدام الطاقة داخل البيت وخارجه.

a) We wish to reduce environmental pollution by planting trees and reducing the use of power inside or outside homes.

b) We must reduce environmental pollution by planting trees and reducing the use of power inside and outside homes.

c) Environmental pollution must reduce by planting trees and increasing the use of power inside or outside homes.

d) We must reduce environmental pollution by plant trees and reducing the use of oil inside and outside the homes.

5. لكل فرد فى المجتمع حلم يتمنى تحقيقه فى المستقبل ويجب عليه العمل بجد لكى يتمكن من تحقيقه.

a) Everyone in society have a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work with hardness to achieve it.

b) Everyone in society has a dream he hopes to achieve in the future and they should work hard to succeed it.

c) Everyone in society has a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work hard to achieve it.

d) Everyone in community have a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work hardly to achieve it.

6. أعلنت وسائل الإعلام أنه ستكون هناك محادثات بين طرفى الحرب فى الأسبوع القادم برعاية الأمم المتحدة.

a) The media announced that there will be talks between the two warring parties next week under the auspices of the Uniting Nations.

b) The media announced that there have been talks between the two warring parties next week under the auspices of the United Nations.

c) The media announced that there would be talks between the two warring parties the following week under the auspices of the United Nations.

d) The media announced that there are talks between the two warring parties next week under the auspices of the British Council.

(C) Writing

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Do you have the required skills to get your favourite job?

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Unit 10 Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Assistant : How can I help you?

Sameh : (1).. .

Assistant : Okay. What's wrong with the TV?

Sameh : The screen is broken.

Assistant : (2)..?

Sameh : No, I didn't open the box until I had reached home.

Assistant : (3)..?

Sameh : No, thank you. I want my money.

Assistant : (4).. .

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Truthfulness leads to ....
   a) darkness b) monotheism
   c) righteousness d) falsehood
2. One of the Islamic demands is to .... the possible excellence in life.
   a) deny b) look at c) admire d) fulfil

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why do Muslims need to strive to achieve excellence?
4. What are the essential virtues in Islamic teachings?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. There was a terrible crash, but we all were happy to find all people ....
   a) dead b) live c) alive d) died
2. The .... say that you can't park your car here.
   a) rules b) roles c) rail d) rolls

(B) Answer the following:

3. How did Jim describe his approach to the fort to avoid being seen as a pirate?
4. How did Silver describe Jim when defending him from the other pirates?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Parents should care for their children and guide them to continue the journey of life safely.

(B) Translate into English:

- إن الله يحب إذا عمل أحدكم عملًا أن يتقنه.

Unit 10 Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options: *(2 marks)*

1. Teachers should have compassion for their students. The synonyms of the word "compassion" are "..................".

a) creativity b) mercy c) cruelty d) brutality e) sympathy

2. The great writer met his end .... 69.

a) at the age of b) in the age of c) aged d) when e) since

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *(12 marks)*

3. If you're looking for a job, you need to be .... in order to find one quickly.

a) flexible b) unlucky c) fixed d) dull

4. A lot of patience is .... to look after a child.

a) sounded b) explained c) required d) seemed

5. A/An .... is someone whose job is to repair water pipes, baths, toilets, etc.

a) worker b) shop assistant c) officer d) plumber

6. My son failed the same exam twice. He can't be ....

a) loyal b) careless c) hard-working d) annoyed

7. Candidates should have training and .... experience in basic electronics.

a) practical b) clear c) qualified d) replied

8. We can cooperate with each other to help poor people in local ....

a) communities b) companies c) compounds d) states

9. Ahmed asked me where .... the day before.

a) did I go b) I went c) had I gone d) I had gone

10. All the doctors .... there is nothing wrong with my stomach.

a) were saying b) tell c) told d) say

11. Khadeja said that China .... a densely populated مكتظة بالسكان country.

a) would be b) will be c) had been d) is

12. Leila said that she .... her clothes every day.

a) cleaned b) was cleaning c) has cleaned d) would clean

13. They .... going to the library and I thought it was a good idea.

a) suggested b) told c) said d) ordered

14. Nadeen said she had not visited her relatives ....

a) then b) the day after

c) the previous day d) the following day

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: *(7 marks)*

Nowadays, more and more businesses are allowing employees to work at least part of the week from home. The idea of "telecommuting" isn't that new and for many it's been technically possible since the Internet became widely accessible. Some employers, however, have been less willing to allow the practice for fear that employees who were not being watched would become lazy and undisciplined. Actually, recent evidence has shown that these fears are mostly unjustified and that businesses can actually save a lot of money on rent by converting more of their staff over to telecommuters.

The major difference is that most communication is done using the telephone, email and instant messaging. Some employers allow workers to choose which hours they will work, others require them to be online during a normal work day. Either way, most telecommuters have the freedom to work from home or wherever else they would like. Yet telecommuters often find that their freedom comes with a cost.

Those who work outside the office may discover that their employers are more willing to ask them to work long or strange hours. In situations where there are other family members at home, it can be difficult to keep work life and home life separate. They don't spend enough quality time with those whom they look after.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. What does the word 'telecommuting' mean?

a) Travelling on the train.
b) Playing games on the internet.
c) Doing business online.
d) Working from the office.

16. What do the underlined words "quality time" refer to?

a) Time spent with children at home.
b) Time spent with friends at a café.
c) Time spent with employers.
d) Time spent with your colleagues at work.

17. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) employers
b) telecommunications
c) employees
d) companies

18. Employees may not work well at home because they ....

a) are bad people
b) aren't watched
c) can't work at home
d) have children

19. Which one of the following is the passage mainly about?

a) Why people can telecommute more easily today than in the past.
b) The idea of working from home for employers and employees.
c) The benefits companies can get from having telecommuters.
d) The way telecommuters do their jobs from home using the internet.

20. Some employers fear that telecommuting may make some employees ....

a) active b) inactive c) energetic d) powerful

21. How can telecommuters communicate with their employers?

a) By sending emails.
b) By using the telephone.
c) By writing letters to them.
d) Both a & b.

22. Choose the correct English translation: *(2 marks)*

- إن استصلاح المزيد من الصحراء وتطوير طرق الزراعة لإنتاج المزيد من المحاصيل هما الحلان الإيجابيان لمشكلة نقص الطعام.

a) Reclaiming more deserts and developing farming methods to produce more food are the positive solution to the problem of food shortage.

b) Reclaiming more deserts and developing farming methods to produce more crops are the two positive solutions to the problem of food shortage.

c) Reforming more deserts and developing farming methods to reduce more crops are the both positive solution to the problem of food shortage.

d) Reforming more desserts and developing farming methods to produce more yields are the two positive solutions to the problem of food short.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation: *(2 marks)*

- It is the responsibility of parents, school and universities to enlighten young people on the destructive effects of drug taking and bad company.

a) إن تنوير الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتعاطى العقاقير الطبية والصحبة السيئة هو مسئولية الآباء والمدرسة والجامعات.

b) إنها لمسئولية الوالدين والمدرسة والجامعات أن ينوروا الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتعاطى المخدرات والشركة السيئة.

c) إن تنوير الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتعاطى المخدرات والصحبة السيئة هو مسئولية الآباء والمدرسة والجامعات.

d) إن تعليم الشباب الآثار الغريبة لتعاطى المخدرات والصحبة السيئة هو مسئولية الوالدين والمدرسة والجامعات.

24. Answer the following questions: *(1.5 marks)*

1. Jim returned to the fort and entered without being seen. What does this show you about the guards in the fort?
2. Do you think that Silver likes Jim or not? Give reasons for your answer.
3. Do you like Jim's character? Why?

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

How we can prepare young people for their future employment. *(3.5 marks)*

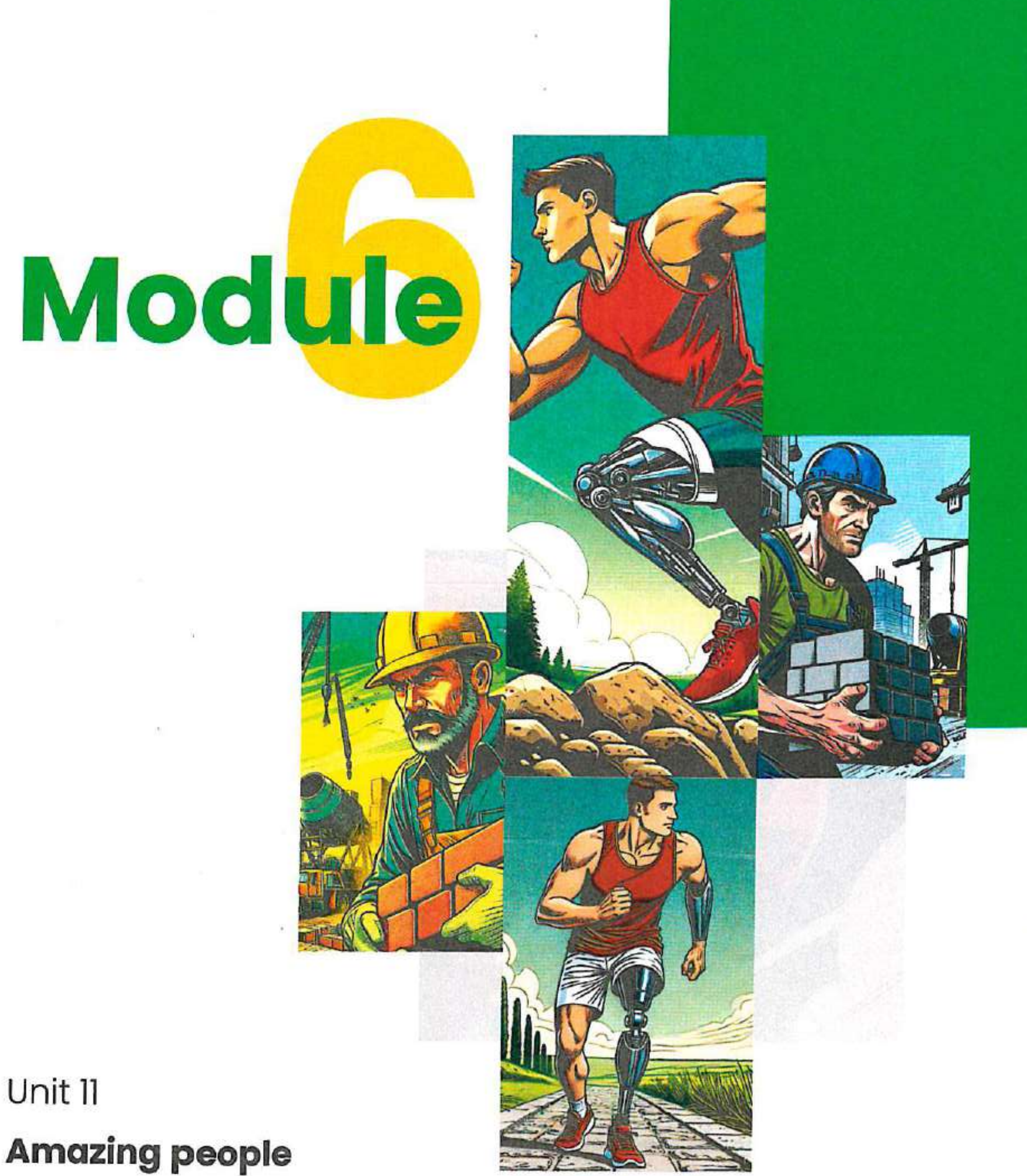
....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 309

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Module 6



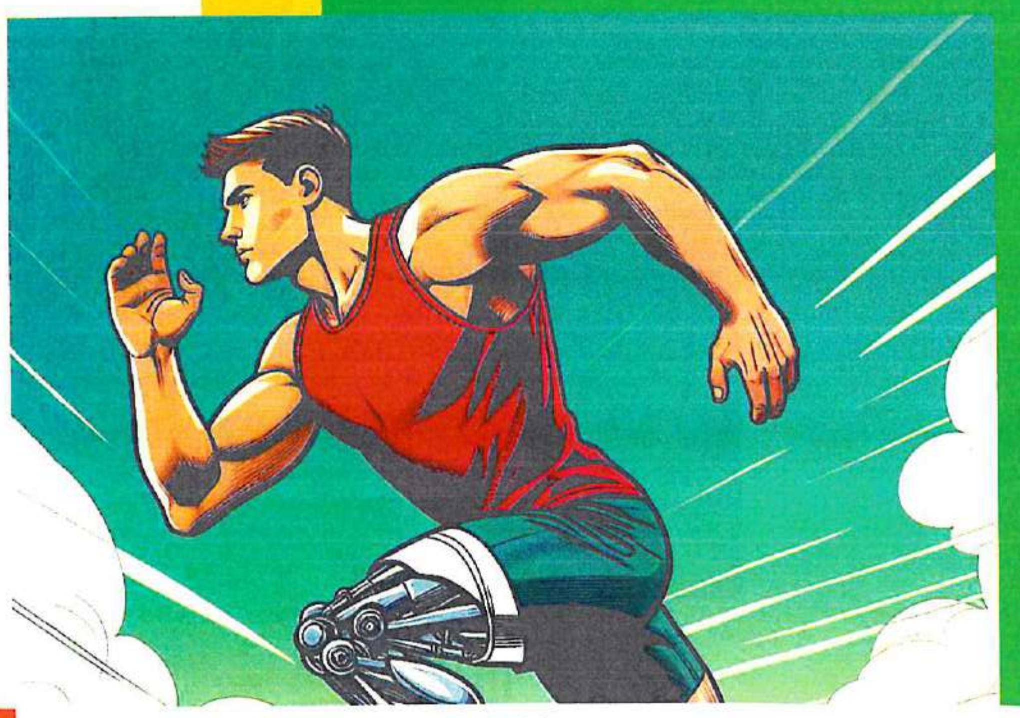
Unit 11

Amazing people

Unit 12

Hard work

Unit 11
Amazing people



Objectives

Reading : An article about athletes with disabilities
Writing : A paragraph on a disabled person you like; an email to arrange a job interview
Listening : A radio interview about equal opportunities
Speaking : Making complaints and polite responses
Language : Relative clauses
Life Skills : Respect for diversity; creativity; cooperation



Study... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

achieve (v) – d	يحقق/ينجز	fighting (n)	قتال	powerlifter (n)	لاعب رفع الأثقال
achievement (n)	إنجاز	highs and lows (n)	نجاحات وإخفاقات	powerlifting (n)	رفع الأثقال
activist (n)	ناشط	kung fu (n)	رياضة الكونج فو	ramp (n)	منحدر (مدخل مخصص لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)
campaign (n) (v) – ed	حملة/يقوم بعمل حملة	medal (n)	ميدالية	spina bifida (n)	تشقق العمود الفقرى (شلل الحبل الشوكى)
compete (v) – d	يتنافس	muscle (n)	عضلة	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك
disability (n)	إعاقة	polio (n)	شلل الأطفال		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

actually (adv)	بالفعل	equal (adj)	متساوٍ	paperwork (n)	عمل ورقى
affect (v) – ed	يؤثر على	especially (adv)	خصوصًا	Paralympian (n)	لاعب باراليمبى
amazing (adj)	مذهل	existing (adj)	موجود	Paralympic (adj)	باراليمبى (متعلق بالألعاب الأولمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	guest (n)	ضيف/نزيل	personally (adv)	شخصيًا
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	impact (n)	تأثير	physical (adj)	بدنى
awful (adj)	فظيع	inspire (v) – d	يلهم	podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية
benefits (n)	فوائد	issue (n)	قضية/موضوع	practice (n)	تدريب
brilliant (adj)	رائع/ذكى	media (n)	الإعلام	preserve (v) – d	يحافظ
campaigner (n)	مدافع/مؤيد	member (n)	عضو	promote (v) – d	يرقى
chance (n)	فرصة	metal disc (n)	قرص معدنى	race (n)	سباق/سلالة
campus (n)	الحرم الجامعى	notice (v) – d	يلاحظ	retire (v) – d	يتقاعد/يعتزل
champion (n)	بطل رياضى	organisation (n)	منظمة	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
ensure (v) – d	يؤكد/يضمن	outstanding (adj)	مميز/بارز		

Workbook Vocabulary   مفردات كتاب التدريبات

area (n)	منطقة/مجال	hit (v)	يضرب/يركل	running (n)	رياضة الجرى
arm (n)	ذراع	lift (v) – ed (n)	يرفع/مصعد	snowboarding (n)	التزلج على الجليد
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات	passenger (n)	راكب	windsurfing (n)	التزلج على الماء

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is a person who strongly works to achieve social change.
   a) athlete   b) powerlifter   c) activist   d) runner
2. The hospital entrance must have a .... for wheelchairs and gurneys نقالات.
   a) cliff   b) runway   c) ramp   d) landslide
3. .... is an ancient Chinese fighting art in which you attack people with your hands and feet.
   a) Handball   b) Kung fu   c) Boxing   d) Snorkeling
4. Because of his bravery in rescuing many people, he was awarded a ....
   a) gift   b) medal   c) ring   d) ramp
5. The government should exert more effort to .... the safety of the racers.
   a) ensure   b) guess   c) require   d) inspire
6. All citizens should have .... rights, regardless of their race or gender.
   a) equal   b) different   c) unequal   d) social
7. As a result of a car accident, he now uses a .... to get around.
   a) wheelchair   b) chair   c) waterwheel   d) wheel
8. The film about a cancer survivor .... me deeply.
   a) affected   b) effected   c) reflected   d) lifted
9. These exercises will help you to build .... and increase stamina.
   a) benefits   b) issues   c) muscles   d) organs
10. Ali still takes part in marathons although he has only one leg. He never lets his .... stop him.
   a) ability   b) opportunity   c) achievement   d) disability

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

above heads	فوق الرءوس	get into	يدخل/ينخرط	member of	عضو في
battle against	يكافح ضد	give a talk	يلقى خطابًا	play in a wheelchair	يلعب على كرسى متحرك
campaign for	يدافع عن	go up	يصعد/يرتفع	refer to	يشير إلى
come fourth	يأتى فى المركز الرابع	have a disability	لديه إعاقة	retire from	يتقاعد/يعتزل من
compete in	يتنافس فى	hit the ball	يضرب الكرة	stay fit	يحافظ على لياقته
do for living	يعمل من أجل كسب المال للعيش	impact on	تأثير على	successful in/at	ناجح فى
do/play/practise sport	يمارس الرياضة	in charge of	مسئول عن /يرأس	take part in	يشارك فى
effect on	تأثير على	make a difference	يصنع اختلافًا	wider range of	مجموعة كبيرة من
fight with hands and feet	يقاتل بالأيدى والأقدام	make changes	يقوم بتغييرات	win a medal	يفوز بميدالية
get from ... to ...	ينتقل من ... (مكان) إلى ...	make it difficult to	يجعلها صعبة		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف/يفعل	action activist	سلوك/تمثيل ناشط	active	نشيط
achieve	يحقق	achievement achiever	إنجاز منجز/شخص ناجح	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
campaign	يقوم بعمل حملة	campaign campaigner	حملة مُدافع/مؤيد	------------------------	
compete	يتنافس	competition competitor	منافسة متنافس	competitive	تنافسى
disable	يُعطل/يعيق	disability	إعاقة	disabled	معاق
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهم
organise	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة منظم	organised	مُنظَّمٌ
retire	يتقاعد	retirement	تقاعد	retired	متقاعد

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Examples

Watching too much TV affects our sight badly. (v)
Watching TV for a long time has a bad effect on our sight. (n)
Reading books is effective in fighting ignorance. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	accomplish/attain	abandon/neglect	يهجر/يهمل
amazing	مذهل	astonishing/surprising	believable/usual/expected	معقول/معتاد/متوقع
compete	يتنافس	contest/challenge	surrender/give up	يستسلم
difference	اختلاف	distinction/variation	similarity/harmony	تشابه/تناغم
inspire	يلهم	stimulate/encourage	discourage/depress	يثبط
personally	شخصيًا	privately/individually	generally/publicly	عمومًا
physical	بدنى/مادى	bodily/materialistic	mental/psychological/spiritual	عقلى/نفسى/روحى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The manager of the factory .... a wonderful talk that inspired all workers.
a) gave b) took c) added d) impacted
2. Prices of main products began to go .... again. Products are very expensive now.
a) down b) over c) off d) up
3. Our national team .... second in the last African Nations Cup.
a) arrived b) did c) came d) won
4. Disabled people can play tennis .... wheelchairs.
a) in b) on c) for d) at
5. My father worked hard for years and made a great .... during his life.
a) achieve b) achieved c) achieving d) achievement
6. She started to campaign .... equal rights between women and men.
a) to b) with c) in d) for
7. It is difficult for a small shop to compete with the big supermarkets. The antonym of the word "compete" is ....
a) contest b) give up c) challenge d) expect
8. There is no difference between the two pictures; both are the same. The synonym of the word "difference" is ....
a) competition b) distinction c) similarity d) harmony

9. Going to the war zone inspired the poet to write this poem. The synonym of the word "inspired" is "..................".
a) depressed b) paid c) encouraged d) discouraged

10. The girl suffered years of physical and mental abuse إيذاء. The antonym of the word "physical" is "..................".
a) bodily b) imaginative c) materialistic d) psychological

Reading Text (1)

Amazing People

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a champion in Kung fu and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible car accident, he now has a disability which means he has to use a wheelchair. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped(1) his love of sport. He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis. He has competed in many international wheelchair tennis competitions and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing achievement, but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who are in wheelchairs to stay fit, and gives talks to help other people with disabilities.

Amany Ali

Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic powerlifter who won a bronze medal in the 2016 Paralympic Games in Brazil. Amany had an illness called polio when she was younger and this affected the muscles in her feet. She did not start powerlifting until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport. She achieved her Paralympic success in Brazil aged 40, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before(2) the competition, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also came fourth in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.

Tanni Grey-Thompson

Tanni Grey-Thompson is a British Paralympian wheelchair racer who has a medical condition(3) called spina bifida. She is unable to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to get around. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in Seoul in 1988. Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in athletics events from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including 11 gold medals. Since she retired from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked(4) for many different organisations which help people, especially disabled people and women, to enjoy the benefits of sports.

Notes on some sentences: **ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:**

١- كلمة that هنا فاعل يشير للجملة التى قبلها.
٢- تأتى before بعد المدة وليس قبلها.
٣- لاحظ استخدام who كضمير وصل يشير لشخص.
٤- يمكن استخدام Since فى بداية الجملة ويأتى بعدها ماضٍ بسيط ثم مضارع تام.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Charity Organisation

Nadia : Hello everyone and welcome to the podcast. Every week we talk to a different guest about his job. Today we have a very special guest who's a charity activist from Egypt. Her name is Leila El-Baz. Leila, who has been an equal opportunities campaigner for almost ten years now, is here to talk about trying to change the world. Thank you very much for joining us, Leila.

Leila : Great to be here, Nadia.

Nadia : So tell us a little bit about yourself, Leila. Where are you from?

Leila : I'm from Alexandria, which is a city[1] in the north of Egypt, but I work in Cairo now.

Nadia : What did you study?

Leila : I studied sociology which I found really interesting.

Nadia : And how did you get into working for charities supporting equal opportunities? It's not something that everyone does for living, is it?

Leila : No, I guess it isn't, but it's a brilliant job. I would recommend it to all young people because you can really make a difference – that's why I love it so much. I started campaigning for disabled people when I was at university actually. One of my best friends was disabled and she used a wheelchair. I noticed that she was having lots of problems just trying to get from one classroom to another, or from the library to the cafeteria. There were steps everywhere and hardly any lifts or ramps to help disabled people[2] get from one floor to the next.

Nadia : Wow. That's awful.

Leila : Yes, I know, so my friend and I decided to try to make changes in our university. We asked the teachers to talk to the people who were in charge of the university about the issue and they did.

Nadia : What happened next?

Leila : Well, after about a year, we got four new lifts and lots of ramps. The university also promised to think about disabled students when they build new parts of the campus or change existing buildings.

Nadia : That's excellent.

Leila : When I finished studying, I got a job at a charity which helps disabled young people find jobs. That was really interesting.

Nadia : But, now you campaign for equal opportunities for a wider range of people – not just people with disabilities – is that right?

Leila : Yes, that's right. Now I work for an organisation called Open Eyes which campaigns in lots of different areas. We try to ensure that people who are different to other people, in one way or another, still have the same chances in life.

Nadia : That sounds like great work to be doing, but is there anything you don't like about your job?

Leila : Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but, in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do paperwork too, you know!



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- ضمير الوصل which هنا جاء مع المكان لوصفه.

٢- لا يستخدم the مع هذا الاسم لأننا نتحدث بشكل عام عن فئة من الناس ولكن يمكن أن نقول the disabled بدون people وتعطى نفس المعنى.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



Wheelchair tennis

Some amazing athletes compete in different sports even when they have a disability. For example, some play tennis in wheelchairs. The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the players need to have strong muscles in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few achieve as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four gold medals between 2000 and 2012.

Olympic sports

Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as cycling and swimming. Some of the most famous Olympians are runners such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, windsurfing became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and snowboarding in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, powerlifting. That means that great Egyptian powerlifter, like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

play — تستخدم (play) غالبًا مع الألعاب التى تستخدم فيها الكرة:

(football – basketball – hockey – ...)

I used to play basketball when I was in high school.

go — تستخدم (go) غالبًا مع الرياضات والأنشطة التى تنتهى بـ (ing):

(swimming – running – scuba diving – ...)

My grandfather and I go swimming every time I visit him.

do — تستخدم do غالبًا مع الرياضات التى لا تحتاج إلى أدوات لممارستها:

(gymnastics – karate – martial arts – athletics – yoga)

وتستخدم (play/do) مع كلمة (sport):

Do you do any sports? — Yes, I play hockey.

يمكن استخدام (been) بدلًا من (gone) مع الرياضات المنتهية بـ (ing) فى هذا السياق، لاحظ:

Have you ever gone swimming? — Have you ever been swimming?

2

affect = influence يؤثر على (بدون حرف جر)	Smoking affects/influences our health badly.
effect = influence = impact تأثير (ويأتى معهم حرف الجر on)	Smoking has a bad effect/influence/impact on our health.
effective = influential مؤثر/فعال	This drug is effective for this disease. Mohamed Sobhy was an influential actor in the 20th century.

3

campaign for يقوم بحملة لصالح ...	He is busy campaigning for re-election and did not have time to discuss the new problems.
campaign against يقوم بحملة ضد	A group of people is campaigning against the destruction of the rainforests.

4

(in the north/south of = in northern/southern) + place فى شمال/جنوب ...	Alexandria is a city in the north of /northern Egypt.

5	compete for	يتنافس من أجل	The stores have to compete for fame and good reputation السمعة.
	compete to	ينافس لـ	Several companies are competing to get the contract.
	compete against	يتنافس ضد	I had to compete against 19 other people for the job.
	compete with	يتنافس مع	They found themselves competing with foreign companies for a share of the market.
	compete in/at	يتنافس/يشارك فى	How many runners will be competing in the marathon? Professional athletes may now compete at the Olympics.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Visitors to the city can .... sailing off the island.
   a) play b) go c) do d) make
2. The government should campaign .... car accidents in all mass media.
   a) for b) with c) to d) against
3. The government campaigned .... following the traffic rules in all mass media.
   a) for b) with c) to d) against
4. Some amazing athletes compete .... different sports even when they have a disability.
   a) in b) with c) to d) against
5. Being rich and famous has no .... our decision.
   a) affect on b) effect c) impact on d) affect
6. Rania raises money to help .... How supportive she is!
   a) the disabled b) disabled c) a disabled d) a & c
7. Rania raises money to help .... people. How supportive she is!
   a) the disabled b) disabled c) a disabled d) a & c
8. Aswan is in .... Egypt.
   a) southern b) the south of c) southern of d) a & b
9. Egypt competes .... some other countries in the field of growing cotton.
   a) against b) to c) at d) in
10. At the weekend, I .... karate in the club.
   a) play b) go c) do d) make

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. Nader is a .... boy who can use the computer professionally.
a) normal b) awful c) equal d) brilliant

2. Rania Elwani was the greatest Egyptian .... swimmer.
a) hero b) championship c) power d) champion

3. Alexandria Governorate started a .... to stop people throwing rubbish on the beach.
a) campaign b) course c) flight d) war

4. Mohamed Salah is an .... player; he plays for Liverpool.
a) amazed b) amazing c) amazement d) amaze

5. The child needs help as he was born with ....
a) ability b) polio c) campaign d) support

6. Amal eventually .... her goal of becoming a flight attendant.
a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved

7. Riding a bike is good for strengthening the leg ....
a) ramps b) athletes c) castles d) muscles

8. The government is trying hard to pay attention to the .... of homeless children.
a) tissue b) notice c) issue d) race

9. The marketing team in our factory launched an advertising .... all over the country.
a) paperwork b) inspiration c) campaign d) sociology

10. His participation in that game was .... We all liked him so much as it was a wonderful level.
a) disappointing b) awful c) terrible d) outstanding

11. I usually put on my earbuds and listen to some .... on my way to work.
a) podcasts b) campaigns c) movies d) posts

12. Every team needs a leader who is able to .... its members.
a) pull b) conspire c) inspire d) lift

13. The boy lived a very hard life as he couldn't move because he suffered from ....
a) spina bifida b) headache c) spine d) flu

14. The .... of something refer to successful and unsuccessful times.
a) heights and laws b) highs and lows
c) highs and laws d) heights and lows

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

15. The results of the tests will .... what treatment you need.
a) determine b) determination c) determined d) determines

16. The foreign coach said that winning the cup was ...., especially with these amazing players.
a) achieve b) achievement c) achievable d) achieving

17. We .... diving away from the coral reefs of the Red Sea last summer.
a) went b) took c) came d) played

18. My little daughter took .... the school writing competition.
a) a part in b) place in c) on d) part in

19. Ali is very happy as he has .... first in the final exams.
a) gone b) come c) won d) got

20. This charity helps disabled people find jobs. It campaigns .... equal job opportunities.
a) for b) with c) by d) of

21. A .... is a sloping surface that joins two places of different levels. [Longman]
a) camp b) ramp c) race d) rose

22. Our company is .... with foreign companies to increase its sales. [Longman]
a) competing b) completing c) achieving d) believing

23. We are going to launch a .... against pollution in our town. [Longman]
a) company b) campaign c) camp d) campfire

24. .... is the scientific study of societies and the behaviour of people in groups. [Longman]
a) Sociology b) Psychology c) Archaeology d) Geology

25. The discovery of DNA was a major scientific .... (الإسماعيلية)
a) attraction b) achievement c) engagement d) attachment

26. .... is a physical condition that limits someone to do something. (الجيزة - العمرانية)
a) Diversity b) Stability c) Possibility d) Disability

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

27. I have to go to the school with Omar personally; they want me. The synonyms of the word "personally" are ".....................".
a) mentally b) practically c) generally d) privately e) individually

28. Ahmed Zewail inspired many young people to study their lessons hard. The antonyms of the word "inspired" are ".....................".
a) discouraged b) stimulated c) competed d) depressed e) surrendered

29. To keep healthy and energetic, you must .... sport.
a) do b) have c) make d) add e) play

30. You must do your best to be successful .... your work.
a) of b) with c) at d) in e) by



Relative clauses — عبارات الوصل

- تستخدم ضمائر الوصل للربط بين جملتين ولإضافة معلومات عن اسم شخص /شيء / مكان / زمان، وضمائر الوصل هي:

who/that	whom/that	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

- تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر في الجملة الثانية.
- غالبًا ما يأتي ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

هناك نوعان من عبارات الوصل:

1. Defining relative clauses:

١- عبارات الوصل المحدَّدة تعطي معلومات ضرورية عن شخص أو شيء، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Mr Nader is the person that/who teaches us maths.
Al-Ahram is the newspaper that/which I read every day.

2. Non-defining relative clauses:

٢- عبارات الوصل غير المحددة (مع الفاصلات) تعطينا معلومات إضافية (يمكن حذفها) عن شخص أو شيء، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Mr Nader, who teaches us maths, will be absent tomorrow.
Al-Ahram, which is a daily newspaper, is read by millions of people.

لاحظ

لا تستخدم that في هذا النوع من عبارات الوصل "Non-defining relative clauses".

who = that

تحل who محل فاعل عاقل وتوضع بعد الفاعل الذي تشير إليه، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منها.

Ahmed is my friend. He teaches English well.
Ahmed, who teaches English well, is my friend.
This is the boy. He broke the vase.
This is the boy who (that) broke the vase.

whom = who = that

تحل whom محل مفعول عاقل ويأتي بعدها الفاعل، ويمكن استخدام that/who بدلًا منها.

Ahmed is my brother. You met him yesterday.
Ahmed, whom (who) you met yesterday, is my brother.

يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول (يأتى بعده فاعل + فعل).

That's the man. You are talking about.

That's the man (whom/who/that) you are talking about.

That's the man you are talking about.

لاحظ

عند وجود حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل مع العاقل نستخدم whom فقط وليس who – that.

فعل + فاعل + **whom** + حرف جر + اسم عاقل	فعل + **who/that** + اسم عاقل

فعل + فاعل + **whom/who/that** + اسم عاقل

That's the man about whom you are talking.

ولكن عند وجود حرف الجر فى نهاية الجملة من الممكن استخدام who – whom – that.

That is the man who/whom/that you are talking about.

which = that

تحل which محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل وتوضع بعد الاسم الذى تشير إليه، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منها.

The books are all mine. They are on the shelf.

The books which are on the shelf are all mine. (بعدها فعل فهى تحل محل الفاعل)

I opened the window. It overlooks the garden.

I opened the window which (that) overlooks the garden.

The book is useful. You read it.

The book which (that) you read is useful. (بعدها فاعل فهى تحل محل المفعول)

لاحظ

إذا حلت which محل المفعول (وجاءت بعدها جملة) يمكن حذفها.

The book which you read is useful.

The book you read is useful.

إذا جاء حرف جر فى نهاية الجملة يبقى كما هو أو يوضع قبل (which) وليس that.

He bought a new car. He drove us to the cinema with it.

= He bought a new car which he drove us to the cinema with.

= He bought a new car with which he drove us to the cinema.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sadio Mané, ... was born in 1992, plays with Ronaldo in Saudi Arabia.

a) whose b) that c) who d) whom

2. Cairo, ... is Egypt's biggest city, is full of historic places.

a) in which b) which c) who d) whom

3. My sister, ... is now living in Alexandria, has just had a baby.

a) whose b) who c) that d) where

4. The house, ... was built in 1889, was famous for its huge entrance.

a) who b) which c) that d) whom

5. Damanhour, in .... Adham was born, is in northern Egypt.

a) who b) which c) that d) whom

whose

تستخدم whose للملكية (عاقل وغير عاقل) وتحل محل ('s) أو صفات الملكية (... his, her, its, their) أو ما يعبر عن الملكية.

The boy got high marks. His father is a teacher.

= The boy whose father is a teacher got high marks.

لاحظ

يمكن استخدام حرف الجر قبلها ولا تستخدم that بدلًا منها.

My uncle travelled abroad. We live in his house.

= My uncle, in whose house we live, travelled abroad.

الاسم بعد whose لا يأتي قبله أي أداة أو ضمير ولا يكون اسم شخص.

اسم + **whose** + اسم

I met Ali ~~whose his father~~ is a doctor.

I met Ali whose father is a doctor.

لاحظ

هناك فرق بين whose و who's بالرغم من أنهما نفس النطق.

who's = who is/ who has

Mohammad Salah is the player who's wearing T-shirt number 10. = who is

Mona is the student who's done all her homework. = who has

where

تستخدم where مع المكان ويأتى بعدها جملة (نشاط أو حدث متعلق بالمكان).

This is the house. We live here now.
= This is the house where we live now.
Alexandria is a nice city. I like to live there.
= Alexandria is a nice city where I like to live.

لاحظ

عند وجود حرف جريدل على المكان نستخدم which ولا نستخدم where.

Alexandria is a nice city. I like to live in it.
= Alexandria is a nice city in which I like to live.
= Alexandria is a nice city which I like to live in.

نستخدم which مع المكان عندما يأتى كمفعول (وهنا يأتى بعدها فعل).

This is the house. It was built last year.
= This is the house which was built last year.

when

تستخدم مع الزمان (الوقت).

Summer is a hot season. We usually go to Alexandria in summer.
= Summer is a hot season when we usually go to Alexandria.

لاحظ

– عند وجود حرف جريدل على الزمان نستخدم which ولا نستخدم when.

This is the time at which I like to have my lunch.

– نستخدم which مع الزمان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث فى ذلك الوقت.

Summer is the time which is very hot.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hosny has a beautiful son .... name is Osama.
a) whose b) which c) who's d) that
2. Alexandria, ... my mother was born, is in northern Egypt.
a) to which b) which c) that d) where
3. My teacher, ... very clever, makes me study hard.
a) who b) that is c) whose d) who's
4. I like the author .... plays are shown everywhere.
a) who b) whose c) who's d) which
5. Ramadan is the time .... we fast from dawn to sunset.
a) who b) whose c) when d) which



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohamed Abo Trika, ... was born in 1978, is a famous retired footballer.
a) whose b) that c) who d) whom
2. Alexandria, ... is Egypt's second biggest city, is a wonderful place for a holiday.
a) that b) which c) where d) in which
3. Cleopatra, ... was very beautiful, was the last pharaoh of Egypt.
a) that b) whose c) which d) who
4. I met the doctor .... car was stolen last week.
a) who's b) that c) whose d) which
5. The river .... runs through our city is the main source of our water.
a) where b) whose c) which d) what
6. The waiter, ... is wearing a white shirt, helped us a lot.
a) who b) that c) whom d) whose
7. Mr Alaa .... is standing there is my neighbour from the old district.
a) which b) that c) whom d) with whom
8. The street, ... we cleaned yesterday, was so dirty.
a) where b) when c) what d) which
9. The dog barked نبح at the time .... it saw a stranger entering the house.
a) where b) when c) which d) that
10. The writer .... books have been translated into many languages is a famous children's writer.
a) who b) whose c) who's d) whom
11. The writer .... books the trips with our company is a famous children's writer.
a) who b) whose c) who's d) whom
12. I like the manager .... kind and co-operative.
a) who b) who's c) whose d) that
13. The car for .... I paid a lot of money is very high-tech.
a) that b) who c) which d) whose
14. The man from .... you bought this camera is waiting outside.
a) whose b) whom c) which d) who
15. The sweater .... my father bought me is very big.
a) what b) whose c) whom d) which

16. The pen, ... you are writing, is my brother's.
a) where b) which c) whose d) with which

17. The man next to .... I sat on the plane was talking all the time.
a) who b) that c) where d) whom

18. There's a library nearby .... I like to spend my time reading.
a) that b) whom c) where d) whose

19. I admire the teacher .... I borrowed this wonderful book.
a) who b) from who c) whom d) from whom

20. I work for a supermarket chain .... head office is in Cairo.
a) who b) where c) whose d) which

21. This is the mobile phone for .... I paid a lot of money.
a) that b) which c) what d) whose

22. The man .... I met for lunch yesterday was an old friend of mine.
a) to whom b) who's c) whose d) no word

23. I visited my uncle in the new factory .... he works in. Longman
a) where b) which c) who d) when

24. This is the shop from .... I bought the new T-shirt. Longman
a) what b) that c) which d) where

25. "Around the World in Eighty Days", ... I read last week, is a very interesting novel. Longman
a) where b) which c) what d) that

26. Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is .... my father was born. Longman
a) where b) which c) what d) where's

27. An orphan is a child .... parents are dead. (السويس)
a) who b) whose c) whom d) which

28. The book about Dickens, ... my friend gave me, is very interesting. (الإسماعيلية)
a) who b) when c) that d) which

29. Summer is the season .... we usually travel abroad. (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)
a) where b) which c) who d) when

30. Yesterday, I went to the chemist's .... I bought a cough medicine. (الشرقية - العاشر من رمضان)
a) when b) who c) which d) where

31. The teacher .... activity is admired by many people has got the prize of the ideal teacher. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر)
a) who b) which c) whose d) whom

Test yourself Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. If we lost this match, we would be out of the ....
   a) championship b) practice c) media d) complement
2. Kung fu players fight .... their hands and feet.
   a) about b) over c) in d) with
3. I don't see Ahmed go to work. What does he .... for living?
   a) do b) make c) have d) support
4. Managing your time is the first step to .... your goals.
   a) campaign b) fight c) achieve d) arrive
5. The producer decided to launch an advertising .... before finishing the film.
   a) campaign b) company c) attitude d) polio
6. Hossam has been .... from the assistant manager to the manager of the company.
   a) lifted b) promoted c) owned d) competed
7. It is forbidden to smoke at the .... The university security will fine you.
   a) campus b) battle c) podcast d) field
8. .... are needed at exits and entrances for wheelchair users.
   a) Stairs b) Ladders c) Ramps d) Races
9. The issue of "unemployment" has been discussed a lot in the ....
   a) charity b) laboratory c) condition d) media
10. Despite having a/an......................, Ibrahim Hamadtou beat normal players in tennis table.
    a) loyalty b) grade c) identity d) disability
11. The company sales improved greatly after a .... campaign.
    a) determination b) decision c) marketing d) powerlifting
12. Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic .... who can lift weights perfectly.
    a) medal b) powerlifter c) gardener d) passenger
13. The metal disc that you can win when you play a sport is called a ....
    a) medal b) CD c) CV d) muscle
14. The greatest .... I have ever made is doing a degree in management.
    a) achievement b) athletics c) statement d) organisation
15. When I travel to Dahab, I like to .... windsurfing.
    a) play b) do c) go d) have

Language

16. I would like to live in a country .... there is plenty of sunshine.

a) when b) which c) where d) whose

17. The nurse, ... responsibility is to look after young children, has worked in the hospital for ten years.

a) who b) which c) whose d) who's

18. Makram is a famous architect .... designs amaze whoever sees them.

a) whose b) who c) which d) whom

19. We phoned Ali .... house we had our lunch to thank him.

a) whose b) in whose c) where d) whom

20. The top drawer is the one .... I keep my belongings ممتلكاتى.

a) what b) which c) when d) where

21. Naguib Mahfouz, ... books have been translated into many languages, is a remarkable writer.

a) who b) whose c) that d) who's

22. I want you to know the name of the actor .... played the role of King Lear.

a) which b) whose c) whom d) who

23. They have bought a machine .... prints names on badges.

a) that b) what c) who d) whose

24. Egypt is the land .... people of different cultures can live peacefully.

a) which b) where c) when d) no word

25. The room .... we decorated last year needs new decoration now.

a) where b) that c) in which d) when

26. Can you show me the photo .... you have taken?

a) what b) who c) when d) no word

27. Countries .... imports are more than their exports have economic problems.

a) whose b) which c) that d) who's

28. Isn't that the pharmacy .... you get your medicine?

a) which b) from which c) on which d) by which

29. There is a florist's over there .... I usually get flowers for my wife.

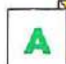
a) that b) where c) which d) no word

30. The room .... I sleep is very nice. I really feel comfortable.

a) when b) where c) that d) which

Study... **Part 2** | Lessons 3 & 4





A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

award-winning (adj) الحائز على جائزة	employee (n) موظف	soup (n) حساء/شوربة
book (v) – ed يحجز	hole (n) ثقب/حفرة	staff (n) هيئة العاملين
bother (v) – ed يضايق	loud (adj) عالٍ/صاخب	stamina (n) القدرة على التحمل
colleague (n) زميل عمل	persevere (v) – d يثابر/يصر	strength (n) قوة
complain (v) يشتكي	polite (adj) مهذب	support (v) – ed يدعم
complaint (n) شكوى	promote (v) – d يرقي/يرفع من شأن	train (v) – ed يتدرب
dedicate (v) – d يكرس	prove (v) – d يثبت	training (n) تدريب
department (n) قسم	sacrifice (n) (v) – d تضحية/يضحي	
determination (n) عزم/إرادة	sales (n) مبيعات	

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

afraid (adj) آسف/خائف	marketing (n) التسويق	repair (v) – ed يصلح
apologise (v) – d يعتذر	noisy (adj) مزعج	reply (v) – ~~y~~ied/(n) يرد/رد
interview (n) حوار صحفي/مقابلة شخصية للحصول على وظيفة	perhaps (adv) ربما	undercooked (adj) نيء/غير مطهي جيدًا
manager (n) مدير	regards (n) تَحِيّات/تَمَنّيات	

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all should .... our national team in the matches to come.
   a) train b) support c) challenge d) lean
2. The clock was so .... that it kept me awake.
   a) noisy b) crowded c) calm d) nosy
3. There was a/an .... with the Prime Minister on television last night.
   a) appointment b) meeting c) interview d) complaint
4. Anwar told me that his father sent me his ....
   a) thinking b) determination c) regards d) appoints
5. The manager hasn't replied to the .... I have made.
   a) interview b) complaint c) agreement d) decision

6. Don't .... your father with your questions, he is very busy.
a) please b) gather c) mislead d) bother

7. Startups الشركات الصاعدة tend to increase their .... by low-cost advertisements.
a) industries b) production c) products d) sales

8. We respect Dr Magdi Yacoub because he .... his life to his country.
a) shared b) brought c) participated d) dedicated

9. Haneen sent me a .... letter thanking me for my invitation.
a) smart b) polite c) rough d) nasty

10. My son is mistaken. He has to .... to his friends.
a) continue b) request c) apologise d) thank

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

get home	يعود للمنزل	I'm afraid	أنا آسف	turn the music down	يخفض صوت الموسيقى
make a complaint	يقدم شكوى	interest in	اهتمام بـ	a reply to	رد على
make a noise	يصدر ضوضاء	qualified for	مؤهل لـ	response to	رد على
make sure	يتأكد	receive training	يتلقى تدريبًا	suitable for	مناسب لـ
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	sorry about	يأسف بشأن		
hear from	يسمع من	take place	يحدث		

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
determine	يصمم/يحدد	determination	تصميم/ عزم	determined	مصمم/عازم
employ	يوظف	employer employee employment	صاحب العمل موظف توظيف	employable	قابل للتوظيف
repair	يصلح	repair	إصلاح	repairable	يمكن إصلاحه
support	يدعم	support supporter	دعم داعم/مشجع	supportive supporting	داعم
manage	يدير	manager management	مدير إدارة	manageable	يمكن التحكم فيه/سلس

Examples تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Employers employ hard-working employees. (n) (v) (n)

Few graduates are employable nowadays. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
support	يدعم	encourage/aid		neglect/ignore	يتجاهل
bother	يضايق	annoy/harass		please/satisfy	يسعد/يرضى
loud	مرتفع (للصوت)	noisy/blaring		calm/quiet	هادئ
polite	مهذب	mannerly/civilised		rude/impolite	وقح
repair	يصلح	fix/mend		break/damage	يكسر/يحطم

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm .... Mr Othman is not in now. Could you leave a message?
   a) qualified b) pleased c) afraid d) polite
2. The factory is very big and has about 1000 ....
   a) employees b) employers c) employs d) employment
3. You must improve your working skills to be ....
   a) employ b) employable c) employment d) employee
4. Don't bother your classmates by your silly jokes. The word "bother" gives the same meaning as ....
   a) please b) annoy c) satisfy d) fix
5. This house is very small. It is not really suitable .... a large family.
   a) for b) to c) with d) at
6. Your voice is too loud. Can't I hear? The opposite of the word "loud" is ....
   a) noisy b) damaged c) calm d) nice
7. The soup was very cold, so he wanted to .... a complaint to the restaurant manager.
   a) do b) have c) give d) make
8. We still haven't received a reply .... our offer.
   a) for b) to c) with d) from
9. Good .... is the key to success in everything in life especially business.
   a) manager b) manage c) management d) manage
10. If you don't speak German, you're not qualified .... being a secretary in our company.
   a) to b) with c) for d) at

Reading Text (Workbook)



What's your Complaint

Conversation One

Hana : Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint. My phone doesn't work.

Assistant: I do apologise. Perhaps we can repair it.

Conversation Two

Hany : I'm sorry to bother you, but you're very tall. I can't see the play.

Man : I'm sorry about that. I'll change places with my wife. She is shorter.

Conversation Three

Heba : I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Waitress : I'm afraid he's out at the moment. Can I help you?

Heba : Yes, the problem is that my meat is undercooked.

Waitress : I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal.

Listening Text





I want to complain

Conversation One

Woman 1 : Excuse me; I'd like to make a complaint. My soup is cold.

Woman 2 : I do apologise. I'll make sure you get another soup which is hot.

Conversation Two

Old Man : I'm sorry to bother you, but the music is really loud.

Man 1 : I'm sorry about that. I'll make sure my son turns the music down.

Conversation Three

Old Woman : I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Woman 3 : I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you?

Old Woman : Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours late. How am I going to get home this evening?

Woman 3 : I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can book a taxi for you.

Video Script

The Paralympics

To become an award-winning Paralympian is an outstanding achievement. These athletes battle against physical disabilities to prove their strength, stamina and determination.

Competing in the Paralympics often means a life dedicated to training and often requires a lot of sacrifices to be successful. Even simple tasks can be difficult with a disability which is why they are so inspiring.

Many Paralympians inspire people to persevere to achieve their dreams. They often dedicate their time to promoting their sport and helping young people find opportunities to train.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**interview**	مقابلة شخصية (للوظيفة) مقابلة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية/صحفية)	I've got an interview for a job as a reporter. My favourite player has an interview on TV tonight.
	appointment	موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص فى وقت معين)	I have an appointment to see the doctor next Saturday.
	conference	مؤتمر	The company is holding a conference to listen to the activists' demands.
	meeting	اجتماع	They organised meetings on a number of important political issues.
2	**crew**	طاقم السفينة أو الطائرة	The crew on board the ship fought with each other.
	staff	هيئة عاملين/موظفين	We have 30 part-time members of staff.
3	**hear from**	يتلقى رسالة من	Have you heard from Ahmed?
	hear of/about	يسمع أخبارًا عن	She disappeared and was never heard of again.
4	**colleague**	زميل عمل	All his colleagues said that he was a hard-working person.
	classmate	زميل دراسة	Osama has been my classmate for years. We are in the same class.

5	train	يتدرب	I asked my daughter to train to be an air hostess.
	training	تدريب	The workers of the company will do a training soon.
	trainer	مدرب	Captain Ali is my trainer.
	trainee	متدرب	There are a lot of trainee doctors in hospitals.
6	complain to	يشكو إلى شخص	I will complain to the manager.
	complain about/of	يشكو من شيء	I will complain about his mistake.
	complain of	يشكو من مرض	I complain of a bad cold.
	complain that	يشكو أن ويأتي بعدها جملة	I will complain that he is rude to me.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When my brother started his new job, all his .... were friendly and helpful.
   a) colleagues b) neighbours c) classmates d) children
2. I think that most young men hear .... Mohamed Salah.
   a) from b) by c) off d) of
3. Qualified .... are needed for the new language centre in the city.
   a) trainees b) trainers c) trains d) training
4. Mona is being .... as a flight attendant at the moment.
   a) trainee b) training c) trained d) train
5. I have a/an .... with Dr Rashid at 3 p.m; he's going to examine my teeth.
   a) conference b) appointment c) interview d) meeting
6. In his latest TV ...., the famous singer talked about his health problems.
   a) meeting b) conference c) interview d) appointment
7. Two members of our .... will accompany the students on a school trip.
   a) crew b) cast c) staff d) stuff
8. The ship sank and unfortunately all the .... were lost.
   a) staff b) flight attendants
   c) crew d) flock
9. People are always complaining .... the bad weather.
   a) to b) about c) with d) that
10. People are always complaining .... the weather is bad.
   a) to b) about c) with d) that

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. Yasin didn't watch out for the .... in the middle of the road, so he fell in it.
   a) hole b) hill c) hell d) hall
2. I don't like living in the city as it is always so .... and crowded.
   a) quiet b) noisy c) relaxing d) empty
3. This is the .... room. No customer is allowed to enter.
   a) crew b) stuff c) staff d) club
4. My uncle is a professor at the .... of economics at Cairo University.
   a) department b) equipment c) development d) improvement
5. Emad works in ....; he takes a commission عمولة on the deals he makes.
   a) training b) sales c) regards d) seals
6. I am going to .... my weekend to some voluntary work in my local community.
   a) bother b) persevere c) dictate d) dedicate
7. If you make a mistake, you should .... first.
   a) inspire b) support c) apologise d) enjoy
8. I didn't like that meal as it was ....
   a) noisy b) delicious c) undercooked d) old-fashioned
9. Parents now make a lot of .... to give their children a better tomorrow.
   a) progress b) donation c) podcasts d) sacrifices
10. The bank is said to .... small projects.
   a) suspect b) bother c) support d) punish
11. Hasan .... a holiday for a fortnight أسبوعين in Paris. One week isn't enough to enjoy the city.
   a) booked b) persevered c) kept d) trained
12. Our TV has broken down, but someone is coming to .... it tomorrow.
   a) reform b) reclaim c) reuse d) repair
13. Those who desire to succeed in business need great ....
   a) failure b) campus c) insurance d) determination
14. If playing music .... you, I can stop it at any time you want.
   a) interests b) neglects c) improves d) bothers
15. The International Peace .... will be held in Europe soon.
   a) Meeting b) Interview c) Conference d) Appointment

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16. This company's .... is very serious and strict with the workers.
a) employer b) employee c) employment d) employ

17. Being an .... doesn't make much money. I think you should start a business.
a) employer b) employment c) employee d) employable

18. The next election in my area will take .... on April 15th.
a) part b) turns c) place d) a place

19. Ghada is very ...., she always makes time to listen to her friends' problems.
a) support b) supportive c) supporting d) supported

20. Someone has .... a complaint about the poor customer service in the mall.
a) taken b) received c) done d) made

21. I respect all my .... in the company. They are all very helpful.
a) colleagues b) colleges c) classmates d) passengers

22. During my sickness, Kareem was very .... I owe him a favour.
a) support b) supportive c) supporter d) supports

23. The team do hard .... at the beginning of every season.
a) train b) trainer c) trainee d) training

24. The team .... daily at the beginning of every season.
a) train b) trainer c) trainee d) training

25. Hassan Shehata was the .... of the Egyptian National Team for years and won many championships.
a) training b) trainer c) trained d) training

26. I made a bad mistake for which I have to .... Longman
a) recognise b) realise c) memorise d) apologise

27. You can .... a complaint when you receive bad treatment. Longman
a) make b) sit c) do d) cause

28. The company has launched an advertising .... in the hope of attracting new customers. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر)
a) competiton b) race c) campaign d) charity

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

29. I'm sorry to .... you, but the music is really loud. Longman
a) bother b) believe c) annoy d) relieve e) deceive

30. My father prefers to repair everything by himself. The antonyms of the verb "repair" are "....................".
a) fix b) damage c) reform d) support e) break

31. The real leader is the one who supports his employees. The synonyms of the word "support" are "....................".
a) aid b) neglect c) avoid d) suspect e) encourage

32. A robbery .... last week, and a huge amount of money was stolen from the bank.
a) took part b) took place c) took apart d) occurred e) took the place





ملاحظات هامة على عبارات الوصل:

1

يمكن حذف who/which/that من الجملة فى هذه الحالات:

- إذا جاء بعدها مبنى للمجهول، ونستخدم .P.P فقط.

who/which + (be) + P.P. = P.P.

The school which was built last year is wonderful.

= The school built last year is wonderful.

The boy who was punished yesterday got the worst marks.

= The boy punished yesterday got the worst marks.

- فى حالة المبنى للمعلوم إذا كانت متبوعة بـ be + v.ing، ونستخدم v.ing.

who/which + be + v.ing = v.ing

The man who is wearing the black suit is my father.

= The man wearing the black suit is my father.

- إذا جاء بعدها فاعل وكانت تشير للمفعول مع بقاء الجملة كما هى.

who/which + فاعل + فعل = فاعل + فعل

The match which/that I watched was great.

= The match I watched was great.

2

من الممكن استخدام that محل who – which، ولكن لا يأتى قبلها حرف جر ولا يأتى قبلها (,).

Ali, ~~that~~ is my friend, plays football well. (✗)

Ali, who is my friend, plays football well. (✓)

This is the mobile ~~for that~~ I paid a lot of money. (✗)

This is the mobile for which I paid a lot of money. (✓)

3

عند وجود صيغة التفضيل superlative مع غير العاقل نستخدم that وليس which، أما مع العاقل فمن الممكن استخدام that – who.

This is the most expensive present that I have ever got.

Ali is the fastest student that/ who/ whom I have ever met.

4

مع الكلمات (all – the only) نستخدم that.

I didn't get all that you asked me.

5

نستخدم what لتشير إلى مفعول ليس موجودًا فى الجملة:

جملة + what + فعل

What + فعل , ...

What + فعل + فاعل , ...

I didn't try to bring what the teacher asked me.
He couldn't remember what we told him.
What makes us happy is to see our children happy.
What I have said must be done.

6

من الممكن أن تشير which إلى عبارة أو جملة كاملة قبلها.

We got the full mark in our exams, which made us so happy.
She went to the zoo with her brother, which was the best thing that happened to her.

7

يتم اختيار حرف الجر مع which/whom على حسب الفعل وما يتناسب معه من حروف الجر المختلفة.

The problem about which we were talking had been settled.
The restaurant to which I usually go is clean.

8

تستخدم which للمكان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث داخل المكان.

Cairo, which is the capital of Egypt, is very crowded.
Cairo, which I love most, is the capital of Egypt.

9

لاحظ هذه التعبيرات التى تستخدم لتوضيح السبب the reason why = the reason for which.

I knew the reason why he left his job. = I knew the reason for which he left the job.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The girl .... in the street is trying to catch the bus.
a) runs b) is running c) who running d) running

2. .... you're saying is totally wrong.
a) Which b) That c) What d) No word

3. Have you seen .... I bought from London?
a) what b) which c) that d) where

4. This is all .... I have done.
a) which b) whose c) that d) where

5. Friday is the only day .... I get up late.
a) no word b) which c) on when d) on which



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dr Aisha used to go with her father to meetings, ... she learned to negotiate.
   a) in where b) about which c) to which d) at which
2. Suzan asked me where I had been, ... I replied, "I can't tell you."
   a) about which b) in which c) to which d) at which
3. The writer wrote many books .... she argued for a more positive role for women.
   a) in which b) to which c) about which d) at which
4. The man .... on the train last week was an old classmate.
   a) whose meeting b) meeting c) who met d) I met
5. I can't remember .... you told me about Amin.
   a) who b) which c) whom d) what
6. I don't want to tell anyone .... has happened between us.
   a) that's b) what c) who d) no word
7. Can you show me the road .... to the amusement park, please?
   a) leading b) which leading c) leads d) lead
8. These are the fields .... we reclaimed to grow crops.
   a) in which b) for which c) at which d) that
9. I can't remember the name of the person .... I got this information.
   a) from where b) from which c) to whom d) from whom
10. This is the shelf .... I put my English books.
    a) which b) who c) whom d) where
11. I've just read an article .... the writer suggests solutions to most of our problems.
    a) of which b) with which c) in which d) in that
12. She didn't expect .... her friend said about her.
    a) when b) what c) where d) who
13. This is the picture .... with natural colours.
    a) we painted it b) which we painted it
    c) painting d) painted
14. .... you told me can't be believed.
    a) Who b) Where c) What d) That
15. The first one .... I met this morning was my father.
    a) no word b) which c) where d) whose
16. Students .... late will not be allowed to enter.
    a) arrived b) arriving c) arrive d) to arrive

17. My uncle is the person .... I received a letter last week.
a) who b) from whom c) to whom d) whom

18. Vegetables .... a lot of water don't freeze well.
a) which containing b) contain
c) containing d) are containing

19. The big projects .... out all over Egypt will increase the national income.
a) are carried b) carry c) carrying d) carried

20. Nour could finish the book .... the day before.
a) I'd lent her b) that I'd lent her it
c) which I'd lent it her d) what I lent her

21. The World Cup is the greatest football championship .... I know.
a) which b) that c) who d) what

22. "Oliver Twist", ... by Charles Dickens, was a great success. Longman
a) writing b) written c) was written d) which written

23. People .... stealing are imprisoned. Longman
a) who caught b) caught
c) who catch d) who are catching

24. I like the worker .... painting my flat now. Longman
a) who's b) whom c) whose d) who

25. We bought a big saw, with .... we cut up all the wood. Longman
a) which b) whose c) that d) what

26. The woman .... a green blouse is my sister. Longman
a) wears b) wearing c) worn d) wear

27. The boy .... in the garden is my son. (الجيزة - العمرانية)
a) who playing b) plays c) who play d) that plays

28. The novel, ... by the young author, was a great success. (الدقهلية - الجمالية)
a) writing b) written c) was written d) which written

29. The man .... that bus is my brother. (الشرقية - ديرب نجم)
a) that driving b) whom drives c) who driving d) driving

30. They said something very cruel, ... I think they should apologise. (الفيوم - أبشواى)
a) on which b) at which c) about which d) for which

31. I can't achieve all .... I want now but maybe in the future. (القاهرة - المطرية)
a) which b) whose c) when d) that

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The main hospital in the city has a .... of around 150 people.
   a) member b) staff c) stuff d) crew
2. Please can you tell me where the accounts .... is?
   a) pavement b) movement c) department d) sector
3. I usually like to start with .... before having my main meal.
   a) soap b) soul c) pool d) soup
4. Please send my .... to your parents. I hope they are well.
   a) regrets b) regards c) challenges d) apologises
5. The rice was ...., so mum took it to the oven again.
   a) cooked b) undercooked c) well-cooked d) overcooked
6. Rady always got along well with his .... in the same company.
   a) classmates b) colleagues c) colleges d) champions
7. There is a .... in the roof, which needs to be repaired.
   a) hole b) hall c) half d) hoof
8. We should receive training in how to .... the disabled.
   a) support b) supply c) sort d) suspect
9. I want to make a ...., please. This shirt shrank when I washed it.
   a) campaign b) complement c) complaint d) requirement
10. Farmers who work in the hot weather have .... and physical strength.
    a) blaring b) response c) appointment d) stamina
11. Is it too late to .... the damage we have done to our planet?
    a) prepare b) form c) pair d) repair
12. The street was so .... that it kept me awake all night yesterday.
    a) calm b) noisy c) helpful d) annoyed
13. Turn the music ...., please. I have a headache.
    a) up b) on c) down d) of
14. Mohammad Salah proved to be a/an .... football player, not only a performer.
    a) noisy b) trouble maker c) award-winning d) full-time
15. Kamal was exhausted, so he looked .... to the end of his shift.
    a) for b) forward c) at d) with

Language

16. Saad has just told a joke, ... I kept laughing for a while.

a) which b) at which c) on which d) for which

17. Making my family happy and relaxed is all .... I want and work for.

a) which b) when c) where d) that

18. I always like to buy cotton .... Egypt.

a) that from b) from c) is from d) which from

19. Kareem says he's busy, ... he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.

a) to whose b) by whom c) for that d) by which

20. I could not decide .... to wear for the wedding party.

a) which b) what c) that d) who

21. Wael did something wrong .... which he said sorry.

a) to b) in c) at d) about

22. I had a talk with the worker .... my office.

a) cleaning b) cleaned c) cleans d) who cleaning

23. Did you like the room .... we stayed in?

a) where b) when c) no word d) whose

24. I have been reading about famous women .... I have found interesting.

a) which b) who c) whose d) when

25. The party .... by Ahmed gave us much pleasure.

a) organising b) organised c) was organised d) which organised

26. She looked in the mirror to see .... the new dress was like.

a) what b) whose c) how d) which

27. I cannot remember the reason .... he left.

a) what b) for c) why d) when

28. I didn't get the job .... because I didn't have the required qualifications.

a) which I applied for it b) I applied for it c) I applied for d) that I applied for it

29. Mona's father .... goes swimming every Friday.

a) , that is 60, b) who is 60 c) , who is 60, d) that he is 60

30. A house with a garden and my lovely children playing around are all .... I dream of.

a) that b) who c) which d) when



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

- **How to write a professional email:** كيفية كتابة إيميل بشكل احترافى

From : The email address of the applicant إيميل الشخص المرسل
To : The email address of the company إيميل الشخص المرسَل إليه
Subject : Applying for a job الموضوع

Dear Sir or Madam,

Introduction

I am writing and sending this email after seeing your advertisement for a vacant job in your company. I am interested in working for your company.

Subject

(Give some details about yourself – your qualifications – your qualities – if you have a disability or not – asking some questions about the company)

Ending the email

I look forward to hearing from you soon.
Best regards,
(Your name)

MODEL ESSAY

The person you admire and respect

Introduction

Everyone has an example to follow in their life, someone that they admire and respect. Someone that has a great influence on them. As for me, the person I admire most is neither a world-famous person nor a millionaire. I admire my great brother.

Main body

Hard work was and still part of his life, but still he smiles all the time. His life can be a good example of a person who has suffered a lot, but has never asked for help or complained. He always advises me not to feel helpless in life and try to live my life in a way that people can remember me with pride and respect.

My brother worked in many places and travelled to many countries to earn his living. Now, he works for himself as he has his own factory in which he makes clothes. He has a wonderful family whom I love very much. He has really helped me a lot to study and have my own private life.

Conclusion

Finally, I can say that my brother is a good example for me and for his family. And we all admire and respect him.

Practice... Skills Exercises



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم لهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Drugs are substances, such as opium and cocaine, that induce sleep and fill the addict with temporary high spirits. Once the effect of the dose has died away, the addict gets nervous and restless and cannot control their speech or movement.

Addiction, in most cases, is not connected with poverty as poor people cannot afford drugs that are usually very costly. Cocaine-taking costs a lot and is, therefore, beyond the means of many people. It is something very strange that almost all addicts know the destructive effects of drug-taking, but they cannot stop it.

Most important, still, is the fact that parents must take due care of their children, so that they may not be associated with addicts and bad friends who may tempt them to take to drugs. It is the responsibility of parents, schools and universities to point out the destructive effects of drug-taking. Prevention is better than cure.

Some young people may become drug addicts because of bad upbringing. This may be due to the absence of a good example or a disconnected family. To fight drug-taking, careful studies are made of addicts, including their ages, the kinds of drugs they take and their effect on them.

The radio, television and the press should concentrate on drug-taking to show addicts the destructive results of addiction and the fatal consequences of drug-taking which end in death or madness.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Drugs fill the addicts with temporary high spirits. This means that addicts ....

a) always feel happy and pleased
b) never feel happy or pleased
c) feel happy only for a short time
d) feel happy for a long time

2. Sometimes good upbringing is missing because ....

a) parents give due care to their children
b) parents look after their children
c) the good example and a connected family are missing
d) parents are not responsible for the upbringing of their children

3. .... can lead some young people to become drug addicts.

a) The good example
b) A connected family
c) Bad upbringing and bad company
d) Death and madness

4. The role of mass media, as mentioned in the passage, is to ....

a) encourage addicts to take drugs
b) highlight the consequences of drugs
c) hide the consequences of drugs
d) build health care centres

5. According to the passage, ... are less prone to عرضة لـ addiction.
a) the young b) the rich c) the sophisticated d) the poor

6. Cocaine is beyond the means of most people as ....
a) it is rare b) it is expensive c) it is harmful d) it is available

7. The best title for the passage is "................".
a) Parents' roles b) Drugs' addiction c) Means of media d) Poverty

(B) Translation

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Good citizens are those who dedicate themselves, their time and money to the welfare of their families.

a) إن المواطنين الصالحين هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية عائلاتهم.
b) إن المواطنين الأغنياء هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية مجتمعهم.
c) إن المواطنين الصالحين هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لمناقشة عائلاتهم.
d) إن المواطنين الجيدين هم هؤلاء الذين يؤجلون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية عائلاتهم.

2. Do you think that punishment stops children from making mistakes? Many experts believe punishment is a negative way to bring up children.

a) يعتقد البعض أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء، الكثير من الخبراء يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة إيجابية لتربية الأطفال.
b) هل تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ الكثير من الخبراء يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة سلبية لتربية الأطفال.
c) هل تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ الكثير من الخبراء يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة سلبية لتنمية الأطفال.
d) تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ الكثير من السياسيين يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة سلبية لتربية الأطفال.

3. Our armed forces stand against any outside or inside threat so that we can live with a feeling of security and safety.

a) تقف قواتنا المسلحة ضد أى تهديد خارجي أو داخلى لكى نتمكن من العيش ونحن نشعر بالأمن والرخاء.
b) تقف قواتنا المسلحة ضد أى تهديد خارجي أو داخلى لكى نتمكن من العيش ونحن نشعر بالأمن والأمان.
c) تقف قواتنا المسلحة أمام أى تهديد من العدو لكى نتمكن من العيش ونحن نشعر بالأمن والأمان.
d) إن قواتنا المسلحة تقف ضد أى مساعدة خارجية أو داخلية لكى نتمكن من العيش ونحن نشعر بالعزة والفخر.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. علينا أن نفتخر بلاعبينا ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة والذين حققوا إنجازات رياضية عظيمة لم يستطع تحقيقها اللاعبون الأصحاء.

a) We should be proud of our athletes with special needs who made great sports achievements that able-bodied athletes couldn't make.
b) We must be proud of our athletes with special need who made great sports achievements that normal athletes couldn't make.
c) We should be pride of our athletes with special needs who did great sports achievements that able-bodied athletes couldn't make.
d) We should be proud of our Paralympians with special needs who made great sports achievements that strong athletes couldn't make.

5. إن منتدى الشـباب الذى يتم عقده كل عام فى مصر فرصة عظيمة للشـباب من مختلف دول العالم كى يتبادلوا الخبرات والثقافات.

a) Youth Forum what is held every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth for all over the continent to exchange experience and cultures.

b) Youth Forum that helds every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth from all over the world to change experiences and cultures.

c) Youth Forum that is stood every year in Egypt is a greet chance for youth from all over the world to exchange experience and lectures.

d) Youth Forum that is held every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth from all over the world to exchange experiences and cultures.

6. نملك جميعنا جوهرة ثمينة داخل الجمجمة والتى تعتبر أكثر أهمية من أى جهاز حاسـب آلى. إنه المخ الذى بدونه لا يسـتطيع الإنسان أن يتحرك أو يفكر.

a) What a precious gem inside the skill which is important than any computer; it is the brain without which man can't move or think.

b) We have a precious gem inside the skull which is more important than any computer; it is the brain without which man can't move or think.

c) We have a precious gem inside the skull which is more important than any computer; it is the mind without that the man can't work or think.

d) What a precious gem inside the skull whom is more important any computer; it is the brain without which man can't move or think.

(C) Writing

3 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"Someone has achieved success despite many difficulties."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Waiter : Good evening, sir.
Guest : Good evening.
Waiter : Can I take your order?
Guest : (1)..?
Waiter : Excellent and fresh curry rice, sir.
Guest : (2)... .
Waiter : (3)..?
Guest : Two pieces of roast chicken and a bottle of water.
Waiter : Any soup, sir?
Guest : No, thanks. (4)..?
Waiter : Half an hour, sir.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Spectators realised that Abraham's God .... him from the fire.
   a) signed b) saved c) served d) survived
2. Abu Hurayra was a very .... and devoted person.
   a) pious b) bias c) bios d) base

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What was Abu Hurayra gifted with?
4. Why is Lady Khadijah's rank so high?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Do you think Ukraine and Russia can .... to end the war between them?
   a) compete b) quarrel c) negotiate d) forgive
2. Finally, the two robbers were .... and sent to prison. [Longman]
   a) amused b) arrested c) set free d) rested

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did Silver want in return for helping the doctor and Jim?
4. Why did Silver show the treasure map to the other pirates?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Sleep is our ultimate escape from what life has thrown on us during our day.

(B) Translate into English:

- ينبغى على الشباب أن يحرصوا على العلم وأن يتحلوا بالشجاعة فى قول الحق.

Unit 11 Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options: *(2 marks)*

1. The music is too loud, and the neighbours may be upset. The synonyms of the word "loud" are "..................".

a) noisy b) calm c) blaring d) rude e) low

2. Don't bother your brother while he is studying. The antonyms of the word "bother" are "..................".

a) neglect b) break c) please d) satisfy e) damage

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *(12 marks)*

3. Ramzy is a/an .... in the field of animal rights. He works hard to save some rare species.

a) athlete b) powerlifter c) activist d) runner

4. In our history, there are many great leaders who .... for Egypt's independence.

a) achieved b) improved c) inspired d) campaigned

5. Amr worked hard for years and finally made a great .... He owns a group of companies.

a) achievement b) disability c) competition d) loss

6. We need to .... our local brands to boost تعزز the economy.

a) support b) let c) allow d) give

7. I try hard to .... a difference to my friends' lives. I can't deny their help to me in the past.

a) do b) make c) break d) receive

8. The .... of this restaurant are all well-qualified for their jobs. They are very great.

a) customers b) gang c) crew d) staff

9. The boy .... replies convinced the teacher got a reward.

a) whose b) who's c) that d) who

10. The house .... I live is surrounded by trees.

a) what b) where c) whose d) whom

11. Fatma won the prize .... surprised me a lot.

a) where b) whom c) which d) that

12. Ahmed is the manager .... I have sent this email.

a) to whom b) from whose c) who d) that

13. Edison, ... invented the light bulb, was born in London.

a) whom b) who c) that d) when

14. The man .... you had lunch yesterday is my boss.

a) who b) whose c) with whom d) whom

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: ***(7 marks)***

Teenagers today live in a very competitive world. It is more important than ever to succeed at school if you hope to have a chance in the job market afterwards. It's no wonder that many young people worry about letting down their parents, their peers and themselves. In trying to please everyone, they take on too many tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends. The result is that young people suffer from stress. There are different ways of dealing with stress. Everyone knows that caffeine, whether it is in the form of coffee or soft drinks, keeps you awake and alert. But caffeine is a drug which can become addictive. In the end, like other drugs, caffeine only leads to more stress. A better way to deal with stress is to exercise. Research has proved that physical exercise is a good release for stress, because it increases certain chemicals in the brain which calms you down. Enough sleep is also an important way of avoiding stress and of staying healthy and full of energy. Another way to avoid stress is by managing your time effectively. It is better to do a few tasks really well, than lots of tasks badly. Know your limits and try not to take on too much. Finally, if it all gets beyond your control, don't panic or get hysterical.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. The best title for this passage is "..................".

a) Teen activity b) Teen stress c) Teen hobby d) Teen culture

16. Having a lot of burdens results in ....

a) happiness b) success c) stability d) stress

17. One of the following DOESN'T help in relieving stress. It is ....

a) exercise b) enough sleep
c) time management d) caffeine

18. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) coffee b) sport c) stress d) caffeine

19. The writer advises the teens to do things ....

a) within control b) out of control c) out of reach d) beyond control

20. The writer is for the idea of the .... of work.

a) amount b) quantity c) quality d) mass

21. To avoid stress, we should ....

a) have enough sleep b) do lots of tasks even badly
c) get hysterical d) both b & c

22. Choose the correct English translation: *(2 marks)*

- للرياضة دوركبيرفى محاربة وحل المشكلات الاجتماعية مثل الجريمة والعنف والإدمان وأيضا تساعد الأطفال والشباب على تكوين شخصية مؤثرة.

a) Sport have a great role in fighting and solving social problems as crime, violence and addiction. Also, it helps children and youth to have an effective character.

b) Sports has a great role in fighting and solving social problems such as criminal, violence and addiction. Also, it helps children and youth to have an effective character.

c) Sports have a great rule in fighting and solving social problems such as crime, violence and addiction. Also, it helps children and youth to have an accepted character.

d) Sport has a great role in fighting and solving social problems such as crime, violence and addiction. Also, it helps children and youth to have an effective character.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation: *(2 marks)*

- There are many things to be said in favour of technological advancement. It undoubtedly makes people's lives easier.

a) هناك عدة أشياء من الممكن أن تقال فى صالح التقدم التكنولوجى فهو تقريبًا يجعل حياة الناس أسهل.

b) هناك عدة أشياء من الممكن أن تعاد فى صالح التطور التكنولوجى فهو بلا شك يجعل حياة الناس أسهل.

c) أشياء عديدة من الممكن أن تقال ضد التقدم التكنولوجى فهو بلا شك يجعل حياة الناس أكبر.

d) هناك عدة أشياء من الممكن أن تقال فى صالح التقدم التكنولوجى فهو بلا شك يجعل حياة الناس أسهل.

24. Answer the following questions: *(1.5 marks)*

1. Why did Silver think he was right when he came to an agreement with the doctor?
2. Why do you think Silver made George guard the fort all night alone?
3. Prove that Dr Livesy was an honest doctor, whoever he dealt with.

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How society can help the disabled." *(3.5 marks)*

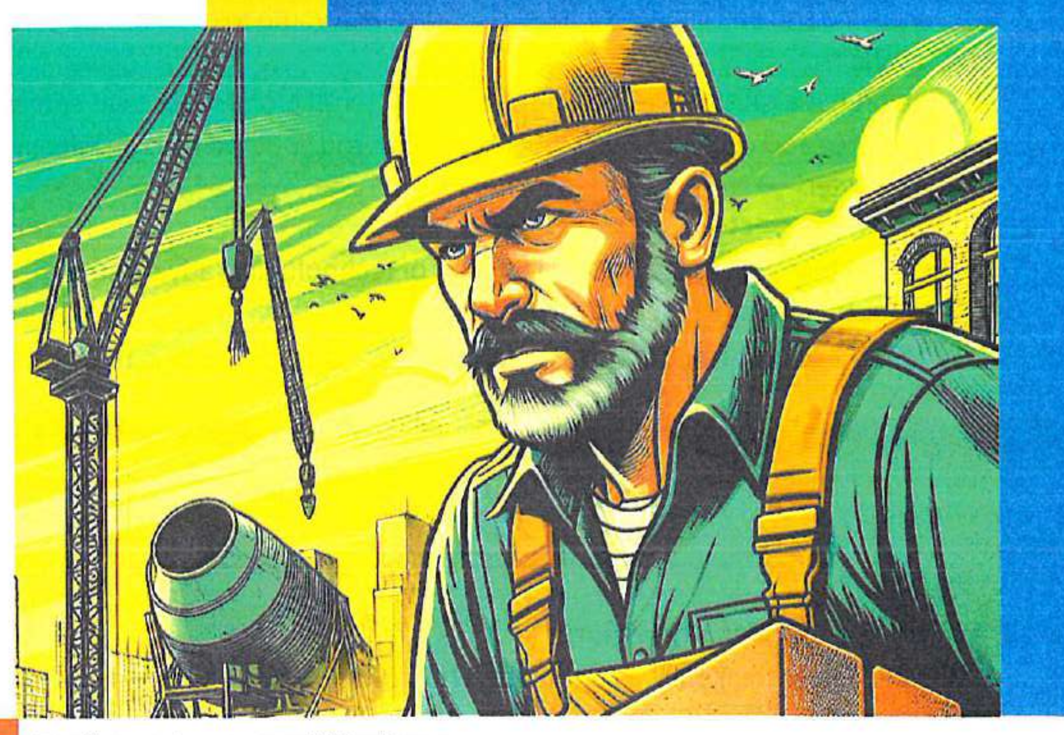
....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 310

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 12
Hard work



Objectives

Reading : A summary of *Silas Marner*

Writing : A novel review; a short story

Listening : A conversation about how people work

Speaking : Explaining mysteries

Language : Modal verbs of possibility: *can't, might, must*

Life Skills : Project – research and present a famous mystery



Study... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

disappear (v) - ed	يختفى	guilty (adj)	مذنب/مجرم	solve (v) – d	يحل
engaged (adj)	مرتبط/ة - مخطوب/ة	mystery (n)	لغز/غموض	weaver (n)	نساج (صانع النسيج)

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

alone (adv) (adj)	بمفرده	fireplace (n)	المدفأة	prove (v) – d	يثبت/يبرهن
artificial intelligence (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعى	forget (v)	ينسى	remember (v)– ed	يتذكر
call (v) – ed	يسمى/ينادى	instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك	sick (adj)	مريض
cottage (n)	كوخ/بيت ريفى	important (adj)	مهم	steal (v)	يسرق
crazy (adj)	مجنون/غريب	local people (n)	السكان المحليون	strange (adj)	غريب
customer (n)	زبون	machinery (n)	الميكنة/الآلات	surprised (adj)	مندهش
decide (v) – d	يقرر	manual labour (n)	عمل يدوى	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
earlier (adv)	فيما مضى	offer (v) – ed (n)	يعرض/عرض		
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	operate (v) – d	يُشغل	unpleasant (adj)	غير سار
empty (adj)	فارغ/(حياة) بلا هدف	ordinary (adj)	عادى		

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

pale (adj)	شاحب/باهت	special (adj)	خاص	trust (v) – ed (n)	يثق/ثقة
skill (n)	مهارة	thin (adj)	نحيف		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was thoughtful of my friend to .... his seat on the bus to an old lady.
   a) stick b) offer c) afford d) support
2. The disappeared bags of money were a .... which nobody could solve.
   a) machinery b) guilt c) weaver d) mystery
3. Rahma has to work hard to .... that she really deserves the job.
   a) improve b) trust c) prove d) appear
4. I'm a regular .... and you should give me a big discount.
   a) customer b) doctor c) mystery d) weaver
5. I couldn't understand how to .... the new washing machine.
   a) regulate b) cooperate c) operate d) stimulate
6. You must organise your time and work .... to succeed.
   a) currently b) equally c) efficiently d) especially
7. The police are looking for the two girls who .... while walking home from school.
   a) appeared b) missed c) disappeared d) lost
8. Men usually do hard .... labour which means they work with their hands.
   a) manual b) automatic c) machine-made d) computerised
9. My sister had such a/an .... experience at the park that she refused to go there again.
   a) attractive b) horrified c) pleasant d) unpleasant
10. The job of the .... nearly disappeared because machines now do all the work.
   a) interviewer b) teacher c) weaver d) trader

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) engaged to مخطوب/ة لـ	forget about ينسى بشأن	solve the mystery يحل لغزًا
be in a relationship في علاقة	friendly to ودود لـ	take care of يعتنى بـ
(be) married to متزوج/ة من	get a good grade يحصل على درجة جيدة	join in يشارك/ينضم
come from يأتى من	get married يتزوج	remember about يتذكر بشأن
compared to بالمقارنة بـ	guilty of مذنب بشأن	run away from يهرب من
disappear from يختفى من	hide from يخفى من	sorry about آسف بشأن
do a lot of practice يؤدى تمرينات كثيرة	important to هام لـ	decide on يختار بعد تفكير
earn money يكسب مالًا	live lonely lives يعيش حياة وحيدة	the early years السنوات الأولى
feel sorry for يشعر بالأسف لـ	new to the village جديد على القرية	win first place يحصل على المركز الأول

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
disappear	يختفى	disappearance	اختفاء	disappeared	مختفٍ
-------------------------------		guilt guiltiness	ذنب ذنب	guilty	مذنب
mystify	يحير/يسبب غموضًا	mystery	لغز/غموض	mysterious	غامض
prove	يثبت	proof	دليل/برهان	proven	مثبت
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	قابل للحل
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	trusting trusted	يثق فى الآخرين بسهولة موثوق فيه
weave	ينسج/يصنع النسيج	weaving weaver	صناعة النسيج نساج (صانع النسيج)	-------------------------------	

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Don't give up, and solve your problems. (v)
There must be a solution for any problem. (n)
All problems on earth are solvable. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
disappear	يختفى	vanish/conceal	appear/come out	يظهر
earlier	فيما مضى	former/previous	later/next	فيما بعد
empty	فارغ	blank/unfilled/vacant	filled/full	مملوء
guilty	مذنب	convicted/accusable	guiltless/innocent	غيرمذنب
pale	شاحب/باهت	faint/faded	bright/glowing	لامع/متوهج
prove	يثبت	confirm/determine	disprove/deny	ينكر/ينفى
special	خاص	particular/specific/private	general/public	عام
surprised	مندهش	astonished/shocked	unsurprised/aware	غيرمندهش
unpleasant	غيرسار	nasty/undesirable	pleasant/cheerful	سار

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is better for anyone to forget .... their problems to be able to work well.
a) about
b) with
c) from
d) at

2. If Hala can't cook the dinner for us today, I will do it ....
a) instead of
b) for
c) instead
d) either

3. Have you decided .... a date for the wedding?
a) on
b) for
c) to
d) that

4. He is really ...., he did many bad things against the law.
a) guilt
b) guiltless
c) guilty
d) guiltiness

5. When I got home, I found a .... message stuck to the front door.
a) mystery
b) mastery
c) mysterious
d) mist

6. As I was new .... the place, I decided to make friends with almost all people there.
a) of
b) with
c) to
d) by

7. My father was a very cheerful person. The synonym of the word "cheerful" is "....................".
a) interested
b) nasty
c) pleasant
d) awful

8. It's really hard for a mother to be responsible for her family ....
a) lonely
b) loneliness
c) a lone
d) alone

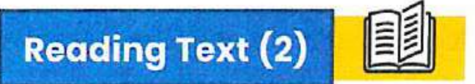
9. Everyone said that Silas was guilty of stealing the money. The synonym of the word "guilty" is "....................".
a) unpleasant
b) nasty
c) convicted
d) innocent

10. I hope he will be able to prove himself and his abilities all the time. The antonym of the word "prove" is "....................".
a) deny
b) determine
c) confirm
d) appear



Silas Marner

Silas Marner is a weaver who lives in the village of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very friendly to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives alone. Fifteen years earlier, Silas had been engaged to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was taking care of a friend who was sick, a bag of money disappeared from under the friend's bed. A man called William Dane finds the empty bag and Silas's friends decide that he is guilty of stealing the money. Later, William marries Sarah instead, and Silas decides to move to the village of Raveloe. The only thing he cares about is his work as a weaver. All Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to earn as much money as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass, has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their own problems which they hide from their father and they always want to have more money. One night, a bag of gold is stolen from Silas's house and the whole village joins in to look for it. The local people feel sorry for him and are more friendly to him. Silas is angry and wants to solve the mystery.



Marner's Back

One evening, Silas returns to his cottage and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace. The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened[1] to her parents. They might have had[2] an accident. He decides to look after her. He calls her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised, but they think that Silas can't be[3] a bad person because he wants to look after the girl. They also help him. Silas is now happier. He realises that his new daughter is more important to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him. It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be angry with him. He and his wife offer to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas. Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to prove that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know. Silas feels that he can now forget about this unpleasant part of his history and he returns happily[4] to Raveloe.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١-٢-٣- لاحظ طرق الاستنتاج المختلفة.

٤- استخدام الحال happily من الصفة happy لأنها تصف الفعل returns.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)



Weavers

The story of *Silas Marner* begins in the English countryside in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside, and they usually looked pale and thin compared to the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't trust anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a special skill and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived lonely lives.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Who knows!

Woman : Hello, husband! Come and sit down, and I will get you some water.

Man : Look! It's eight o'clock at night and Silas Marner is still working!

Woman : He must have got another new customer.

Man : Yes, that must be why he's working so late. I don't understand why he always works so much.

Woman : He might have lost[1] a lot of money while he was living in the north.

Man : But all his customers are so happy with the things he makes. He can't have lost[2] money. I've heard that he could stop working now if he wanted to — he's got bags and bags full of gold coins.

Woman : Really? I just don't really like weavers. I think weaving is a very strange job to have. Why can't he work as a farmer or a fisherman instead of working with these crazy new machines?

Man : I know what you mean. What is happening to the world today? Soon there won't be any jobs for people like us who don't want anything to do with these machines.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١-٢- لاحظ طرق الاستنتاج المختلفة.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	decide to + inf.	يقرر	He decided to sleep early before the exam.
	decide on + (noun)	يقرر/يحدد (بعد تفكير)	She decided on her goal in life.
	decide that + جملة	يقرر أن	He decided that his wife will attend the party.
2	steal + (something)	يسرق (شيئًا)	She stole my money last week.
	rob + (place)	يسرق (مكانًا)	He robbed the bank with his gang yesterday.
	rob + (someone) + of + (something)	يسرق شيئًا من (شخص)	The thief robbed Ali of his wallet two days ago.
3	only a few + (countable noun اسم يعد)	فقط القليل من	There are only a few students in the class today.
	only a little + (uncountable noun اسم لا يعد)	فقط القليل من	There is only a little sugar in the kitchen.
4	cloth	قماش (اسم لا يعد ويعامل معاملة المفرد)	My father bought a suit made of grey cloth.
	clothes	ملابس (اسم جمع دائمًا وليس له مفرد ويعامل معاملة الجمع)	Don't forget to bring some clean clothes with you.
	clothe (v)	يلبس/يكسو	My children are fed and clothed by their mother.
	clothed (adj)	مرتدٍ/لابس	I was fully clothed when they arrived.
	clothing (n)	ملابس/ثياب (لا يعد)	You will need waterproof clothing.
	a cloth	قطعة من القماش لغرض معين (اسم يعد)	I want a cloth to dust the table.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The gang planned to .... money from the exchange الصرافة, but the guards stopped them.

a) steal b) rob
c) lift d) lend

2. The gang planned to .... the exchange, but the guards stopped them.

a) steal b) rob
c) lift d) take

3. There's milk on the floor over there; could you get a piece of .... to mop it up?

a) cloth b) clothing
c) clothe d) close

4. This is the street where I walk .... at night.

a) happy b) happily
c) in a happily way d) a & c

5. My wife has decided .... a blue door will be for the bathroom.

a) on b) that
c) to d) for

6. My wife has decided .... a blue door for the bathroom.

a) on b) that
c) to d) for

7. I'd like .... packs of milk.

a) only little b) only a little
c) only few d) only a few

8. In rainy places, people may need waterproof .... to protect them.

a) cloth b) clothing
c) clothe d) clothings



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The film is about a girl who mysteriously .... while on a picnic.
a) appeared b) disappeared c) kidnapped d) surprised

2. The news I got was .... and made me very upset.
a) relaxing b) unpleasant c) saddened d) amazing

3. When I got to my office, I .... that I had left my keys at home.
a) organised b) recognised c) surprised d) realised

4. Improving your computer .... can help you find higher-paid work.
a) skills b) skulls c) sticks d) games

5. The .... of the crime was solved when the police discovered the murder weapon.
a) guilt b) offer c) mystery d) skill

6. .... intelligence means the study of how to make computers do intelligent things that people can do, such as thinking and making decisions.
a) Normal b) Natural c) Man-made d) Artificial

7. When I reached the supermarket checkout, I found that my purse was ....; I was shocked.
a) empty b) engaged c) full d) pale

8. I would like to say a big thank-you to everyone who's helped to make our wedding such a/ an .... occasion!
a) terrible b) special c) private d) crazy

9. The police could arrest the thieves who .... the jewellery.
a) borrowed b) stole c) robbed d) disappeared

10. I .... to carry the old lady's shopping bags for her.
a) offered b) proved c) stole d) denied

11. I felt really .... about not helping my friend when he asked me.
a) innocent b) guilty c) suspected d) relaxed

12. The police are investigating the .... deaths of children at the hospital.
a) hidden b) surprised c) mysterious d) concealed

13. I couldn't go to the parents' meeting, so my wife went ....
a) instead b) instead of c) unless d) instill

14. There is an exhibition معرض of the latest farm .... powered by solar energy.
a) machine b) machinery c) tools d) instruments

15. Rania is .... to a respected young man. They have two children now.
a) married b) occupied c) engaged d) paired

16. It was very cold, so we sat in front of the .... until late in the evening.
a) fire engine b) fire alarm c) fireplace d) fire blanket

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17. In this shop, you can only take two items of .... into the changing room.
a) cloth b) clothe c) clothing d) clothed

18. The police are still investigating the .... of stealing the necklace.
a) mysterious b) mystify c) mystery d) master

19. I feel sorry .... the people who tried so hard but still didn't win.
a) with b) about c) around d) from

20. The detective could .... the mystery of the crime with difficulty.
a) solve b) pull c) call d) clean

21. The .... of one of my neighbours is still a mystery. No one has an idea where he is.
a) disappear b) disappearance c) appearance d) disappeared

22. A young woman was found .... of robbery in my neighbourhood.
a) missing b) empty c) guilty d) lonely

23. My uncle is a skilled .... in the linen factory; he makes wonderful clothes. Longman
a) baker b) barber c) weaver d) waver

24. Hala .... to be an honest girl when she delivered the bag of jewellery she had found to the police. Longman
a) moved b) approved c) removed d) proved

25. The robber attacked the shopkeeper and .... the store of jewellery. Longman
a) robbed b) provided c) stole d) restored

26. My daughter is .... to a doctor. Their wedding is next month. (الجيزة - إدارة أطفيح)
a) married b) engaged c) achieved d) evacuated

27. He was sent to prison as he was found .... of theft. (الأقصر - إدارة إسنا)
a) bored b) guilty c) frightened d) innocent

28. No one has ever been able to explain the .... of the Bermuda Triangle. (الإسماعيلية)
a) secretive b) mysterious c) mystery d) secretly

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

29. Half the classroom was empty because of the bad weather. The synonyms of the word "empty" are "..................".
a) blank b) faint c) pleasant d) vacant e) full

30. As my son went out without having his breakfast, his face looked pale. The synonyms of the word "pale" are "..................".
a) dark b) faint c) faded d) coloured e) full

31. Mothers always do great work to .... their children.
a) take care b) look for c) care for d) take care of e) take after

32. To .... enough money for your family, you must work hard and be creative.
a) earn b) win c) beat d) do e) make



Modals of Deduction الاستنتاج

الاستنتاج هو إعطاء رأى أو وصف بناء على دلالة واضحة فى الموقف سواء كان فى الماضى أو المضارع .

فمثلا عندما نرى شخصًا يجرى بالشارع يمكن أن نستنتج أنه يمارس الرياضة أو أنه متأخر عن موعده وهكذا.

وفيما يلى طرق الاستنتاج المختلفة :

(must – can't – might)

must + inf. بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد فى المضارع والمستقبل)

- تستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين من شيء ما.

This watch is made of gold; it must be expensive.
He is a policeman. He must carry a gun.

must + have + P.P. بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد فى الماضى)

- تستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين من شيء ما فى الماضى.

He ate a lot. He must have been hungry.
They are all wearing coats. It must have been cold when they took this photo.

لاحظ

- من الممكن أن يكون زمن الجملة مضارعًا ولكن الاستنتاج فى الماضى والعكس كما يلى:

Hala got full marks in the exam. She must be clever.
He is a successful professor. He must have been a clever student.

can't + inf. استحالة (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد منفى فى المضارع والمستقبل)

- تستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين من عدم حدوث شيء ما فى المضارع.

He has an expensive car. He can't be poor.
You have met Nader once. You can't know him very well.

can't + have + P.P. استحالة (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد منفى فى الماضى)

- تستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين من عدم حدوث شيء ما فى الماضى.

Marwan is still abroad. You can't have seen him at the party yesterday.
They can't have had lunch. Their food is still in the fridge.

لاحظ

- نستخدم must + inf./must have + P.P./can't + inf./can't have + P.P. مع التعبيرات التالية:

I'm sure/I'm certain/I think/I believe/Certainly

ويتم التفرقة بينها على حسب المعنى.

He is rich. I'm certain he is happy. = He is rich. He must be happy.
She is tired. I think she didn't have enough sleep.
= She is tired. She can't have had enough sleep.

may/might/could + inf. (ربما - من المحتمل) تعبر عن استنتاج محتمل فى المضارع والمستقبل.

- تستخدم عندما نعتقد أن شيئًا ما ممكن أو محتمل، ولكن لسنا متأكدين فى زمن المضارع.

They may/might be at home, but we aren't sure.

It is possible that Ahmed is tired. = Ahmed may/might be tired.

Mahmoud has already finished the exam. It could be easy.

may/might/could + have + P.P. (ربما - من المحتمل) تعبر عن استنتاج محتمل فى الماضى.

- تستخدم عندما نعتقد أن شيئًا ما كان ممكنًا أو محتملًا، ولكن لسنا متأكدين فى زمن الماضى.

He may/might have been tired. Perhaps, he was tired.

It is possible that Ahmed was tired. = Ahmed may/might have been tired.

Sally is still crying. She could have heard nasty words from her father.

لاحظ

- بناء المبنى للمجهول فى الاستنتاج:

must/can't/may/might/could + be + P.P. (مضارع)

- The cup is too small. It must be used for coffee.

must/can't/may/might/could + have + been + P.P. (ماضى)

- Dad is taking a taxi. His car can't have been repaired.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amira was at the doctor's yesterday. She .... ill.
   a) must be b) must have been
   c) can't be d) can't have been
2. I have just seen Omar at school now. He .... be at home.
   a) can't b) mustn't c) can d) must
3. Ramy has been travelling all day. He .... be very tired.
   a) ought b) needn't c) must d) can't
4. You .... have seen Dr Ahmed here yesterday. He is still in Paris.
   a) may b) must c) can't d) mustn't
5. The windows .... with a tool.
   a) can't have opened b) must have been opened
   c) might open d) could open



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona couldn't answer the questions. They .... have been difficult for her.
a) can't b) must c) should d) mustn't

2. Doaa always gets the full mark in her exams. She .... clever.
a) can't have been b) must be c) can't be d) had to be

3. That person over there .... a doctor. He's only eighteen.
a) must be b) may be c) should be d) can't be

4. It is Ali's house, not Ahmed's as you say. You .... mistaken.
a) must be b) might be c) can't be d) mustn't be

5. I'm not sure who is ringing the doorbell. It .... be Adel.
a) must b) can't c) mustn't d) might

6. A: I don't know where my school bag is, mum.
B: It's not here! You .... have left it on the train.
a) may b) can't c) should d) mustn't

7. Mona was in a very difficult situation. It .... have been easy for her.
a) may b) can't c) must d) might

8. My friend's car is not here. He .... out.
a) must go b) must have gone c) should have gone d) can't have gone

9. Adam .... up in Egypt. He doesn't speak Arabic.
a) must grow b) can't grow c) must have grown d) can't have grown

10. Nada .... ill. I am not sure.
a) must have been b) must be c) might be d) can't have been

11. My son was given a reward at school. He .... have worked hard.
a) must b) can't c) should d) mustn't

12. A: Who's knocking on the door?
B: It .... my friend Adham. I asked him to come.
a) must be b) can't be c) must have been d) might have been

13. Salma came to school late. She .... caught the school bus.
a) must have b) may have c) can't have d) might have

14. When I knocked on the door, there was no answer. They .... out.
a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been

15. The train .... late. Look at all the people waiting on the platform.
a) must have been b) must be c) can't have been d) can't be

16. There is water all over the floor. Someone .... the tap on.
a) must forget b) can't forget
c) must have forgotten d) can't have forgotten

17. I can't find my new pair of shoes. They .... I have no idea.
a) might have been stolen b) might have stolen
c) must have been stolen d) can't have been stolen

18. The streets are all muddy. It .... heavily yesterday night.
a) can't have rained
b) must rain
c) must have rained
d) would have rained

19. The door of the cell زنزانة was broken, so, the prisoners .... through it.
a) must escape
b) must have escaped
c) can't escape
d) can't have escaped

20. Fatma walked past me without speaking. Surely, she .... me.
a) might have seen
b) must have seen
c) can't have seen
d) should have seen

21. Dr Tohamy .... his experiment. He's only been in the laboratory for ten minutes.
a) can't finish
b) must finish
c) can't have finished
d) must have finished

22. She must have misunderstood the lesson. This means that ....
a) I'm sure that she understood the lesson
b) I'm not sure that she misunderstood the lesson
c) I'm sure that she misunderstood the lesson
d) I'm not sure that she understood the lesson

23. "I might have left the air conditioner on. Please can you check?" This means that ....
a) it's possible that I have left the air conditioner on
b) I don't think that I have left the air conditioner on
c) I feel sure that I have left the air conditioner on
d) I feel sure that I have left the air conditioner off

24. I don't know where Mr Adel is; he .... be busy working. I have no idea. Longman
a) can't
b) must
c) might
d) mustn't

25. The businessman .... have accepted all the terms بنود we suggested; he has signed the contract. Longman
a) must
b) can't
c) might
d) shouldn't

26. Shorouk is not here yet. She .... be stuck in traffic; who knows? Longman
a) might
b) should
c) can't
d) must

27. No one knows where the tourist comes from; he .... be Italian. Longman
a) must
b) shouldn't
c) could
d) can't

28. It .... be very dry this year as the ground is very dry and dusty. (الإسماعيلية)
a) must
b) mustn't
c) can
d) can't

29. The toys are everywhere in the room. The children .... there. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر)
a) must play
b) must have played
c) can't have played
d) might play

30. He .... a doctor. He knows nothing about medicine. (سوهاج - أخميم)
a) must be
b) can be
c) could be
d) can't be

31. The house is near the motorway. It .... very noisy. (الشرقية - القنايات)
a) must be
b) may not be
c) must have been
d) can't be

Test yourself | Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. My sister lives in a pretty village with little wonderful ....
   a) villas b) palaces c) castles d) cottages
2. I have never tried .... food. I only eat what I'm familiar with.
   a) manual b) strange c) surprised d) sick
3. As my children have left home, my life seems ....
   a) comedy b) a lone c) empty d) lone
4. The search for the sailors who .... in the storm was called off توقف.
   a) appeared b) solved c) proved d) disappeared
5. The scientist conducted an experiment to .... that his theory was right.
   a) improve b) reduce c) deny d) prove
6. The police are looking for a suspect who .... a corner shop yesterday.
   a) stole b) robbed c) took d) hacked
7. The smell from the garbage was so .... that we had to close the windows.
   a) unpleasant b) cheerful c) pleasant d) surprised
8. The tunnel was dug with the aid of heavy ....
   a) conditions b) tools c) instruments d) machinery
9. Although the students are finding the beginning of the course difficult, their .... in their teacher is stopping them from giving up.
   a) mystery b) invention c) truth d) trust
10. I think .... labour is more tiring than office work.
   a) automatic b) manual c) annual d) manufacture
11. The old lady decided to .... the most beautiful carpet in the world.
   a) invent b) write c) work d) weave
12. I saw a/an .... man in the street. He was behaving in a very strange way.
   a) crazy b) dead c) pale d) ordinary
13. I met Ahmed in a wedding a month before I was .... to him.
   a) limited b) dedicated c) solved d) engaged
14. Everyone was friendly .... us, so it was an amazing journey.
   a) for b) from c) to d) at
15. Uncle Rady is one of the .... people who help guide the visitors.
   a) local b) engaged c) artificial d) shown

Language

16. Omar .... be angry with me. He doesn't talk to me as usual.

a) mustn't b) might c) need d) can't

17. **A:** Do you think he is annoyed?

B: I am not sure, he .... be.

a) must b) can't c) should d) might

18. Mona .... have telephoned me as I was in all day and didn't hear the phone ringing.

a) must b) may c) might d) can't

19. I cannot find my handbag. Someone .... it by mistake.

a) must take b) cannot take
c) must have taken d) cannot have taken

20. I am sure I lost one of my school books. I .... have dropped it somewhere.

a) must b) can't c) shall d) will

21. Surely, they .... these heavy pieces of metal by boat. The boat would have sunk.

a) can't have brought b) can't have been brought
c) may be brought d) ought to be brought

22. Winning the bronze medal in the Paris Olympic Games .... Mohammad Elsayed very proud.

a) will have made b) must have made c) can't make d) mustn't make

23. Said can hardly walk. He .... be very ill.

a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) should

24. You .... the door. It was open when I got home.

a) can lock b) can't have locked c) can have locked d) can't lock

25. She didn't see her brother this morning. He .... the flat very early.

a) must have left b) can't have left c) must leave d) can't leave

26. These machines .... by ordinary people. They are too heavy.

a) must move b) can't have moved
c) mustn't have been moved d) can't have been moved

27. It .... very windy during the night. There are too many leaves on the ground.

a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been

28. Our neighbours are breaking one of their windows. They .... their keys.

a) must have lost b) can't have lost c) mightn't have lost d) may have lost

29. My friend is a doctor. He .... clever at school.

a) must have been b) can't have been c) might have been d) may have been

30. The thief .... away after he robbed the bank. The police are still searching.

a) must run b) must have run c) mustn't have run d) can't have run

Study... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4





Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

characters (n)	شخصيات	page-turner (n)	كتاب شيق	theme (n)	موضوع الكتاب/القصة
pace (n)	سرعة / خطوة	plot (n)	حبكة الرواية		

Vocabulary on Reading Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة

abandoned (adj)	مهجور	divide (v) – d	يُقسم	moral (n)	مغزى
adopt (v) – ed	يتبنى	ensure (v) – d	يتأكد/يضمن	puzzle (n)	لغز
belong (v) – ed	يخص/ينتمى	equally (adv)	بشكل متساوٍ	recommend (v) – ed	يوصى بـ
close (adj)	قريب	happiness (n)	سعادة	share (v) – d	يشارك
community (n)	مجتمع	interesting (adj)	شيق	show (v)	يظهر
condition (n)	ظرف/شرط/ حالة	legend (n)	أسطورة	stones (n)	أحجار
crime (n)	جريمة	lonely (adj)	وحيد	warehouse (n)	مستودع

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	distant (adj)	بعيد	pirate (n)	قرصان
BCE = Before Common Era	قبل الميلاد	funny (adj)	مضحك	shape (n)	شكل
bear (n)	دب	hide (v)	يخبئ/ يختبئ	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
bury (v) (~~y~~) – buried	يدفن	lake (n)	بحيرة	treasure (n)	كنز
coast (n)	ساحل	lie (v)	يقع (لتحديد موقع)	unusual (adj)	غير عادى
deep (adj)	عميق	monster (n)	وحش		
describe (v) – d	يصف	pharaohs (n)	فراعنة		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We must consider bullying a sort of .... that requires punishment.
   a) technology b) pride c) legend d) crime
2. There is only one room available, so we have to .... it.
   a) divide b) share c) provide d) bear
3. It is .... to eat salted fish with green onion in Sham El-Neseem.
   a) modern b) traditional c) tradition d) economical
4. I like reading about the .... of Robin Hood.
   a) plot b) theme c) legend d) puzzle
5. The murderer was described as a/an .... as he killed many people.
   a) pirate b) monster c) treasure d) omission
6. The word "..................." means a book that is very exciting.
   a) page-follower b) page-burner c) page-turner d) page-corner
7. When his ship sank, he was able to reach a/an .... island. There was no one to talk to.
   a) crowded b) abandoned c) inhabited d) assisted
8. I like my neighbourhood as there is a strong sense of ....
   a) society b) community c) minority d) humour
9. We discovered that our grandfather .... a bag of money in the house garden.
   a) recommended b) closed c) adopted d) buried
10. Today's newspaper has a very .... report from one of the correspondents in India.
   a) close b) deep c) abandoned d) interesting

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a lonely man	رجل وحيد	belong to	ينتمي إلى	work better as	يعمل أفضل كـ
all the gold was gone	ضاع كل الذهب	full of	مملوء بـ	know about	يعرف عن
bring them back into	يعود بهم إلى	happen to	يحدث لـ	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
drive across	يقود عَبْر	go wrong	يخطئ/يتعطل	recommend ... to	يوصي/يرشح ... لـ
feel like	يشعروكأنه	in the north of	في الشمال	sense of community	الشعور بالانتماء للمجتمع
go back to	يعود إلى	mystery stories	قصص الغموض	return to	يعود إلى
agree to	يوافق على	take photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
abandon	يهجر	abandonment	هجر/ترك	abandoned	مهجور
bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	buried	مدفون
close	يقرب	closeness	قرب	close	قريب
deepen	يعمق	depth	عمق	deep	عميق
distance	يبعد	distance	مسافة	distant	بعيد
equalise	يعدل/يعادل	equality	مساواة	equal	مساوٍ

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

A good referee should equalise between the two teams. (v)
Women always ask for equality. (n)
All people are equal in civilised countries. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
abandoned	مهجور	deserted/discarded		inhabited/occupied	مسكون
close	قريب	nearby/near		distant/far/remote	بعيد
equally	بشكل متساوٍ	evenly/fairly		unequally/unfairly	بشكل غير متساوٍ
happiness	سعادة	delight/pleasure		displeasure/sadness	سخط/حزن
interesting	شيق	amusing/entertaining		boring/unattractive	ممل
deep	عميق	rooted/buried		shallow/superficial	ضحل/سطحى
distant	بعيد	far/remote		near/nearby/close	قريب
funny	مضحك	humorous/comical		serious/tragic	جاد/مأسوى
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/usual		up-to-date/modern	غير تقليدى/حديث
unusual	غير عادى	extraordinary/exceptional		ordinary/common	عادى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is the house which belonged .... my grandfather when I was young.

a) from
b) at
c) with
d) to

2. Some Indians do not .... the dead. They burn them instead.

a) burial
b) buried
c) burring
d) bury

3. Egypt is located in the .... Africa.

a) northern
b) north
c) north of
d) northern of

4. Children fear to play near the abandoned palace. The synonym of the word "abandoned" is "..................".

a) inhabited
b) deserted
c) decorated
d) secured

5. The supervisor divided the new clothes equally among the orphans. The synonym of the word "equally" is "..................".

a) unfairly
b) normally
c) fairly
d) traditionally

6. Soliman lives in a house that is very close to mine. The opposite of the word "close" in this sentence is "..................".

a) near
b) distant
c) nearby
d) open

7. I always treat my children ....

a) equal
b) equality
c) equalism
d) equally

8. The stream was not ...., so we were able to walk across it.

a) deep
b) deepen
c) depth
d) deeding

9. Samar likes taking photos .... landscapes and historical places.

a) on
b) for
c) of
d) with

10. I couldn't put anything in the bag as it was full .... books.

a) in
b) with
c) of
d) off



Reviews of Silas Marner

Ismail

I had to read *Silas Marner* when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much then. However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The pace was quite fast and the plot is full of surprises. I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to happen[1] to these wonderful characters. I would recommend this book to anyone who enjoys mystery stories[2].

Nadia

This is a very interesting story of a sad and lonely man who finds happiness when he adopts a girl. It isn't a page-turner, but I liked the way Eliot used the theme of community. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can feel like they don't belong to their community but events can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of *Silas Marner* might have worked better as a short story rather than a novel.

What happened to the gold?

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an abandoned warehouse. They agreed to share it equally. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John checked to see if anyone else was close. John and Jake took it to a house to divide it. Jane went to ensure they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of stones and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحظ تغيير الزمن فى الكلام المنقول بعد I wanted to know.

٢- هنا المعنى (قصص غموض) ومن الخطأ أن نستخدم الصفة mysterious لأن المعنى سيكون قصصًا غامضة.

Reading Text (2)

A Mystery over History

Cleopatra VII died in around 30 BCE. The famous writer, Plutarch, described the beautiful place where she was buried. However, although archaeologists have found much older pharaohs, nobody knows where Cleopatra lies today. In 2010, a famous archaeologist called Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra.

Oak Island is on the east coast of Canada. People believe that a pirate called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure and buried it on the island in the seventeenth century. He wanted to go back to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. Since that time, hundreds of people have tried to find the treasure, without success.

Loch Ness is a very deep lake in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, strange animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness Monster. Some people have even taken photos of a distant shape that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything unusual. But people still believe that something lives in the lake.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)



Book Reviews

Boy: This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the mountains. The theme is how life in a village is changing in the modern world. The pace is very slow and it is quite sad because many traditional parts of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

Girl: This book is very funny! It is about a family who drive across the country for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that go wrong! The car is stopped by a bear, and they meet a lot of strange people. My favourite character is a police officer who is not very good at his job! I laughed a lot and would recommend this book.



Working Hard between Past and Present

One hundred and sixty years ago, hard work would have looked very different for an ordinary person. Manual labour could be very difficult; the machinery was often heavy and dangerous to operate, and working conditions were not good.

Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more efficiently with the help of modern machinery and technology. Modern workplaces are even using Artificial Intelligence, so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the workplace of the future.

The question is: are we still working hard or are computers doing all the work for us?

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	لاحظ هذه الأفعال مع تصريفاتها: **lay – laid – laid** يضع (شيئًا)/تضع البيض/يجهز	He laid his hand on my shoulder. The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food. John was laying the table for lunch.
	lie – lay – lain ينام/يرقد/يقع	Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful.
	lie – lied – lied يكذب	She lied to her father about her exam results.
2	**coast** ساحل	Alexandria is located on the north coast of Egypt.
	shore شاطئ البحر (البحيرة)	I saw some boats on the shore of the sea.
	beach البلاج (الجزء الرملى عند حافة البحر)	We sat on the beach and ate ice cream.
	bank ضفة النهر أو القناة	Trees grow along the bank of rivers.
3	**recommend + مفعول + to + inf.** يوصى بـ / يقترح	I recommend you to read this book.
	recommend + v-ing بدون مفعول	I recommend reading this book.
	recommend that + فاعل + inf./should + inf.	I recommend that my son read/should read this book.

4	**lake**	بحيرة	Lake Nasser is in Egypt.
	leak	تسريب سائل / غاز أو تسريب معلومات	Be careful. There is a leak in the gas pipe.
	lack	ينقص / نقص	Lack of water is a serious problem.
	luck	حظ	I wish you all good luck.
	lick	يلعق	Children like to lick things.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The hen should .... its eggs on a soft surface.
a) lay b) lie c) be lain d) be lied

2. Sadeq .... to me about his salary; he earns more than he told me.
a) lay b) laid c) lain d) lied

3. I always recommend my daughters .... historical films.
a) watching b) to watch c) to watching d) watch

4. At nine o'clock, the .... was already crowded with people.
a) coast b) peach c) limit d) beach

5. We could see a boat about a mile from the .... of the sea.
a) shore b) bank c) border d) limit

6. We spent our holiday in a town which .... halfway between Rome and Florence.
a) lies b) lays c) stays d) locates

7. The teacher recommends that my brother .... early.
a) to come b) came c) comes d) come

8. There is a nearby .... so you can wash and refresh.
a) lack b) leak c) luck d) lake

9. There is a .... in the tank; we should fix it.
a) lack b) leak c) luck d) lake

10. Detective Conan is one of the .... works that I enjoy watching.
a) adventurous b) funny c) mysterious d) mystery



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Workbook

1. We all admire the film because it has a very simple .... suitable for all ages.
a) plot b) character c) community d) incident

2. If you need bread or milk, ask about a/an .... shop to buy from in order not to be late.
a) attached b) far c) remote d) close

3. The site of the temple was discovered by a group of ....
a) geologists b) sociologists c) archaeologists d) actors

4. Mr Emad .... the idea of setting up this project in the New Administrative Capital.
a) adapted b) adopted c) took d) came

5. The most frightening situation for me was when I saw a real .... in front of me.
a) gear b) beard c) bear d) cat

6. The inside of the house is in good ...., but externally it's in need of repair.
a) relation b) cottage c) machinery d) condition

7. The cause of the fire has remained a .... to the police.
a) crime b) plot c) puzzle d) legend

8. The naughty boy picked up a small .... and threw it at the window.
a) rock b) plot c) stone d) cliff

9. .... is something that is very valuable.
a) Treasure b) Pressure c) Pleasure d) Treason

10. At six o'clock, there were a few people sitting at the ...., so we had a nice time.
a) coast b) bank c) edge d) beach

11. I couldn't follow the .... of this novel, so I didn't complete it.
a) plot b) plate c) core d) code

12. You have a legal obligation إلزام to .... your child receives a proper education.
a) share b) adopt c) ensure d) bury

13. The company stored its products in a large .... on the outskirts of the city.
a) household b) warehouse c) equal house d) market

14. The Incredible Hulk is a character in a film that turns from a scientist into a huge ....
a) pirate b) pharaoh c) archaeologist d) monster

15. Salah is a sports .... in England and also his homeland, Egypt.
a) legend b) servant c) manager d) actor

16. The gun was found .... in the garden of the killer's house.

a) buried | b) lied | c) checked | d) puzzled

17. The house had been .... for several years before they decided to demolish it.

a) deepened | b) abandoned | c) buried | d) adopted

18. When she thought she heard someone following her, she quickened her ....

a) pace | b) peace | c) piece | d) plot

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19. I get very angry when things in my work .... wrong.

a) go | b) make | c) have | d) get

20. The inheritance money was shared .... among the three sisters.

a) equal | b) equally | c) equality | d) qualify

21. Most teachers recommend that students .... regularly all the year round.

a) revising | b) to revise | c) revise | d) revises

22. The wealthy woman was very disturbed when she found out that all her gold ....

a) have gone | b) were gone | c) was gone | d) went

23. Tamer will always .... the day he joined the faculty he liked most. Longman

a) forget | b) remind | c) forge | d) remember

24. A literary .... is the main idea or the moral a writer explores in a novel, short story, or other literary work. Longman

a) pace | b) plot | c) setting | d) theme

25. I didn't enjoy that novel as the .... was very complicated. (القاهرة - إدارة بدر)

a) poet | b) publisher | c) plot | d) poem

26. Most works of Charles Dickens are real .... (أسوان - إدارة كوم أمبو)

a) take turners | b) age learners | c) page earners | d) page-turners

27. The book's .... is the conflict between love and duty. (الدقهلية - إدارة الجمالية)

a) owner | b) buyer | c) theme | d) page

28. A/An .... is a very old story that people tell about a famous event or person. (السويس)

a) crime | b) goal | c) legend | d) stone

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

29. Happiness is more important than money. The antonyms of the word "happiness" are "..................".

a) delight | b) displeasure | c) boredom | d) deepness | e) sadness

30. Do you remember any funny stories about work? The synonyms of the word "funny" are "..................".

a) comical | b) humorous | c) hard | d) shallow | e) serious

31. As he lives .... to me, I usually visit him.

a) next | b) far | c) remote | d) distant | e) close

B Language

Modal Verbs الأفعال الناقصة

EXTRA POINTS

ملاحظات إضافية على الأفعال الناقصة:

1 can't + inf. = mustn't + inf.

ممنوع / لا يجب

من الممكن استخدام can't للتعبير عن أنه ليس من الممكن القيام بالفعل (It is impossible).

You can't drive the car; you haven't got the licence yet.

= You mustn't drive the car; you haven't got the licence yet.

2 could have + P.P.

كان بالإمكان

من الممكن استخدام could have + P.P. للتعبير عن فعل كان من الممكن حدوثه فى الماضى ولم يتم.

I travelled by train, but I could have travelled by car.

3 couldn't have + P.P. = can't have + P.P.

استحالة

تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. للتعبير عن فعل كان من المستحيل حدوثه فى الماضى ولم يتم.

He couldn't have passed the exam, even if he had studied harder. It's a really difficult exam.

4 should (ought to) have + P.P.

كان يجب أن

تستخدم should have + P.P. للتعبير عن شىء كان ينبغى حدوثه فى الماضى ولم يتم.

You got a very bad mark. You should have studied hard.

I'm sorry! I ought to have come on time.

5 shouldn't (oughtn't to) have + P.P.

كان يجب ألا

تستخدم shouldn't have + P.P. للتعبير عن شىء لم يكن ينبغى حدوثه فى الماضى ولكن تم.

He ate bad food and he became ill. He shouldn't have eaten it.

You oughtn't to have arrived late for your exam.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm sorry! I .... for the interview on time.
   a) shouldn't come b) ought to have come
   c) must come d) can't have come
2. I .... angry with you. I'm sorry, I was rude.
   a) ought not to have been b) must be
   c) can't be d) should have been
3. You really .... have neglected your study. You got low marks.
   a) can't b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) mightn't
4. A: How did you do in the test?
   B: Not so well. I .... much better, but I misread the directions for writing.
   a) will have done b) could have done
   c) must have done d) may have done
5. You .... take photographs near a military area.
   a) can't b) should c) needn't d) ought to
6. It's unusual to see Mr Omar taking a bus. His car .... broken-down.
   a) couldn't be b) maybe c) must be d) might
7. It was wrong of you to sleep before finishing your study. You .... that.
   a) shouldn't do b) can have done
   c) shouldn't have done d) ought to have done
8. Drivers .... park their cars here. If they do this, they will be fined.
   a) needn't b) should c) can't d) must
9. We spent the weekend on the farm, but we .... it in Cairo.
   a) couldn't have spent b) can't have spent
   c) could have spent d) must have spent
10. I didn't know you were going to hospital yesterday. You .... me.
    a) should have told b) must have told
    c) may have told d) might have told
11. Don't take a risk like this again, we .... have been hurt.
    a) must b) can't c) could d) should
12. Mona .... all the food alone. She is ill now.
    a) must eat b) can't have eaten
    c) should have eaten d) shouldn't have eaten
13. I'm sorry, but you .... take photos of the exhibits. Put your phone in your bag, please.
    a) can b) can't c) have to d) oughtn't

14. **Rania .... her way. She's been to the place a hundred times.**

a) must have lost
b) could have lost
c) couldn't have lost
d) should have lost

15. **I told you he would deceive you. You .... to my advice.**

a) should have listened
b) should be listened
c) shouldn't have listened
d) oughtn't to have listened

16. **Mazen .... this expensive pair of shoes. They're unreliable.**

a) should have bought
b) shouldn't have bought
c) must have bought
d) should buy

17. **Mohamed .... a brilliant student. All his teachers still remember him.**

a) Shouldn't have been
b) can't have been
c) must have been
d) couldn't be

18. **Ali fell off his bike this morning. He hurt his head. He .... more careful.**

a) must have been
b) should be
c) might have been
d) should have been

19. **You .... have shouted at your elder brother. It was wrong of you to do that.**

a) oughtn't
b) mustn't
c) wouldn't
d) shouldn't

20. **I .... have taken the children to the park yesterday. I'm sorry I didn't.**

a) can't
b) must
c) needn't
d) should

21. **I .... to university, but I decided to get a job.**

a) couldn't have gone
b) must have gone
c) could have gone
d) could go

22. **I .... you the money. Why didn't you ask me?**

a) can be lent
b) could have lent
c) can't have lent
d) must have lent

23. **I was lucky yesterday. I .... myself when I crashed into a tree, but I am fine with no injuries.**

a) hurt
b) must have hurt
c) could have hurt
d) can't have hurt

24. **The printer's been broken for a week, so she couldn't have printed out the report. This means that ....**

a) we draw the conclusion that she possibly didn't do it
b) perhaps she had the possibility, but she didn't do it
c) we know it was impossible for her to do it
d) she didn't think about printing the report

25. I could have stayed up late, but I decided to go to bed early. This means that ....

a) it was possible for me to stay up late, but I didn't
b) it wasn't possible for me to stay up late, but I did
c) I had the ability to stay up late, but I didn't
d) both a & c

26. I couldn't have arrived any earlier. There was a terrible traffic jam. This means that ....

a) it was impossible for me to have arrived any earlier
b) it wasn't impossible for me to have arrived any earlier
c) it was possible for me to have arrived any earlier
d) I had the ability to have arrived any earlier

27. She .... there. Her car keys are still here. [Longman]

a) may have driven
b) shouldn't have driven
c) must have driven
d) can't have driven

28. Lamiaa .... that necklace. I am sure she had no money at that time. [Longman]

a) might have bought
b) can't buy
c) can't have bought
d) might buy

29. His home .... far because he always walks to work. [Longman]

a) might have been
b) can't be
c) must have been
d) must be

30. You .... here as it's a military area, so you have to pay a fine. (الشرقية - ديرب نجم)

a) had to park
b) mustn't have parked
c) shouldn't have parked
d) didn't have to park

31. We shouldn't have joined them. This means that .... (الأقصر)

a) we joined them and we regret it
b) it was a good idea to join them, but we didn't join them
c) it would have been better if we had joined them
d) we didn't join them as it was a bad idea

32. You .... use your mobile while driving. (الدقهلية - ميت غمر)

a) don't have to
b) can't
c) needn't
d) must

33. I failed the test. I .... wasted my time. (بني سويف - إهناسيا)

a) ought not
b) shouldn't
c) should have
d) shouldn't have

34. You .... a bit earlier. The manager was angry. (بورسعيد)

a) should arrive
b) should have arrived
c) can't arrive
d) shouldn't have arrived

35. He is angry because you didn't invite him. In fact, you .... him. (القاهرة - المطرية)

a) must have invited
b) might have invited
c) can't have invited
d) should have invited



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The crew found the treasure after Flint had .... it under the tree.
a) planted b) contacted c) buried d) carried

2. A: Do you know the owner of this book? B: Yes, it .... to Hisham.
a) divides b) comes out c) belongs d) equalises

3. I usually try to .... that the door is locked before I leave the house.
a) sure b) ensure c) predict d) share

4. After my two daughters have got married, I feel ....
a) lonely b) traditional c) funny d) close

5. I read the passage twice, but I couldn't get the .... of it.
a) show b) reward c) pace d) moral

6. There are lots of .... in the play; some of them are evil and the others are good.
a) communities b) paces c) plots d) characters

7. Using the internet in learning is valuable ....; we should all make use of it.
a) treasure b) price c) monster d) pharaoh

8. The alarm sets off when something goes ....
a) along b) right c) wrong d) lonely

9. The villa has been .... for 20 years and the sole heir الوريث الوحيد lives in London.
a) abandon b) abandoning c) abandonment d) abandoned

10. The government announced a new plan to reduce .... in the country.
a) crimes b) goals c) achievements d) aims

11. After they found the gold, they .... it equally.
a) shared b) equaled c) shaped d) provided

12. I spent hours reasoning out the solution to the ....
a) puzzle b) comment c) character d) theme

13. I stayed for 16 hours reading your book. What a/an ....!
a) interesting b) page-exciting c) mess d) page-turner

14. The teacher .... us into three groups to solve the maths problems.
a) divided b) parted c) explained d) found

15. The viewers liked the series, especially its mysterious ....
a) shape b) happiness c) plot d) pace

Language

16. I'm tired today. I .... have stayed up too late last night.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) should d) can't

17. I had 5,000 pounds. I .... a bike, but I decided to buy a smartwatch.
a) could have bought b) should buy
c) couldn't have bought d) shouldn't have bought

18. Look, it's raining! I .... have brought an umbrella.
a) must b) ought to c) can't d) shouldn't

19. That was a mistake, I .... on time to take the job.
a) should have applied b) must have applied
c) can't have applied d) mustn't apply

20. Why did you run across the road? You .... killed.
a) could have been b) must have c) can't have d) could have

21. It was really wrong of him. He .... you before using your car.
a) must have asked b) should have asked c) can't have asked d) might have asked

22. He exceeded تجاوز the speed limit and was fined. He .... done that.
a) must have b) can't have c) shouldn't have d) mustn't have

23. You .... met my brother. I haven't got any siblings إخوة.
a) must have b) may have c) couldn't have d) could have

24. Maher went to the movies السينما last night, but he .... at home and revised his lessons.
a) might stay b) might have stayed
c) must have stayed d) should have stayed

25. I .... that horror film; I had terrible nightmares.
a) could have watched b) must watch
c) shouldn't have watched d) must have to watch

26. They .... about the robbery, but nobody told them anything about it.
a) shouldn't have known b) must know
c) must have known d) could have known

27. A: I talked to your science teacher at school yesterday.
B: You .... to her because she wasn't there yesterday.
a) couldn't have talked b) shouldn't have talked
c) could have talked d) must have talked

28. I should have gone to bed early. This means that ....
a) it would have been a good idea to go to bed early and I did
b) I didn't go to bed early and it was OK
c) I went to bed late and now I regret that
d) all answers are correct

29. I shouldn't have eaten so much cake! This means that ....
a) I did eat a lot of cake and now I regret that
b) it wasn't a good idea to eat so much cake, but I did it anyway
c) it would have been a good idea to eat so much cake, but I didn't do it
d) both a & b

30. He couldn't have passed the exam, even if he had studied harder. This means that ....
a) it was impossible for him to pass the exam
b) it wasn't impossible for him to pass the exam
c) it was possible for him to pass the exam
d) he had the ability to pass the exam

Study... Part 3 | Skills



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

What's a book review?

It is a form of literary criticism in which a book is analysed based on the content, the style and the background.

How to write a book review:

1. Read the book carefully and take notes.
2. Highlight the main ideas of the book.
3. Start writing your opinion about the overall book.
4. Try to illustrate your points briefly in not more than 3 paragraphs.
5. You can be objective and express general points of view or subjective and express your own experiences.

MODEL ESSAY

A book I have read

One of my hobbies is reading. I have read a lot of books, most of which I bought from the nearby bookshop, but sometimes I borrow some books from my friends or the library. Recently, I read a wonderful book named "*How to Make Friends and Influence People*," which was written by Dale Carnegie. I found the book very useful and I can recommend it to everyone.

In the book, the writer tells the stories of many successful people who achieved their targets by influencing others. He really taught me how to have a conversation with partners or friends without arguing. He also showed the best way to persuade people and some tips for communication.

The book also urges the readers to show genuine interest in others, smile and be a good listener, remember and use people's names, avoid criticism and argument and learn from others.

The principles in the book are meant to guide the readers in building stronger relationships and communicating effectively. It's important to apply them genuinely and adapt them to different situations. I think this book is necessary for everyone.

Practice Skills Exercises



قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

(A) Reading Comprehension

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Heba had worked in nursing for many years. She was in charge of four other nurses and she was respected by each member of staff at the hospital. It was difficult and sometimes very stressful work. She was responsible for the health of a lot of people. However, she always felt happy when people recovered and finally went home again. She always found this very rewarding. She worked such long hours that it was sometimes difficult to be sociable after work. She usually went home and watched a film on television with her family. She found this a good way to unwind.

It was a Tuesday morning. Heba had started work very early that day and she was doing her regular check of the patients. She gave them their medicine and made sure that they were comfortable. Then she went to check a new patient. He was in a private room, separate from the other patients. He was a man who had been sent to the hospital the night before after a bad traffic accident. Heba looked at the man, who was unconscious when he first arrived. Heba had seen him before. He was a famous actor who everybody in her family knew and liked. The doctor said that he had suffered a bad head injury from the crash. He was so ill that he would have to stay in hospital for many weeks. But something was very strange. Heba had seen him in a film the week before. In the film, he had to go to hospital after an accident, and he had later died. Heba didn't want that to happen in her hospital!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why was the man who came to hospital unconscious ....?

a) He had fallen asleep. b) He was not alive.
c) He had had a bad accident. d) The nurse did not know.

2. Why do you think that he was in a private room ....?

a) He was very poor. b) He had a dangerous disease.
c) He didn't like other people. d) He was famous.

3. What was unusual about the actor coming to hospital ....?

a) The same thing had happened to him in a film.
b) He had never been there before.
c) He was never usually ill.
d) He usually had private doctors.

4. What does the word "unwind" mean ....?

a) Go to sleep. b) Sit down. c) Relax. d) Make money.

5. The famous actor went to hospital ....

a) on Monday b) on Tuesday c) on Wednesday d) two days before

6. It is sometimes stressful at Heba's work. Why?

a) She usually goes home and watches a film.
b) She is responsible for the health of a lot of people.
c) She finds her work very rewarding.
d) She has no house or family.

7. Why was Heba a good nurse?

a) She always felt happy when people recovered.
b) She was in charge of three other nurses.
c) She worked long hours without being bored.
d) a & c

(B) Translation

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. There are some simple measures that may keep you healthy for a long time. The first of these is to brush your teeth twice a day.

a) يوجد بعض الأفعال البسيطة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على طاقتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك مرتين يوميًا.

b) يوجد بعض الإجراءات البسيطة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك مرتين يوميًا.

c) يوجد بعض الإجراءات البسيطة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك مرتين أسبوعيًا.

d) يوجد بعض الإجراءات المعقدة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك يوميًا.

2. The government should work hard to improve the infrastructure of many slums, or we will have many disasters.

a) يجب على البلدية أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية تحت الحمراء للكثير من القرى وإلا فسنواجه الكثير من الكوارث.

b) يجب على الحكومة أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية السفلية للكثير من المنتجعات وإلا فسنواجه الكثير من الكوارث.

c) يجب على الدولة أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية الجسمانية للكثير من العشوائيات وإلا فسنواجه الكثير من القضايا.

d) يجب على الحكومة أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية التحتية للكثير من العشوائيات وإلا فسنواجه الكثير من الكوارث.

3. In the past, women suffered a lot from illiteracy and gender discrimination. Also, they didn't have any political rights.

a) فى الماضى كانت النساء تعانى كثيرا من الأمية والتمييز من حيث النوع وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أى حقوق سياسية.

b) فى الماضى عانت النساء كثيرا من المرض والتميز من حيث النوع وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن حقوق سياسية.

c) فى الماضى كانت النساء تعانى من الأمية والطبقية وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أى حقوق اجتماعية.

d) فى الماضى كانت النساء تعانى كثيرا من البطالة والتميز من حيث القدرة وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أى حقوق حياتية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. الأمية والجهل والفقر هم الأعداء الحقيقيون لإعاقة تقدم أى دولة ومن هنا يجب أن يكون هناك حلول مناسبة للتخلص منهم.

a) Motherhood, ignorance and the poor are the real enemies that protect the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to get rid of them.

b) Illiteracy, ignorance and disease are the real enemies that prevent the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to upgrade them.

c) Illiteracy, ignorance and poverty are the real enemies that prevent the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to get rid of them.

d) Illiteracy, negligence and poor are the real enemies who prevent the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to get rid of them.

5. إن احترام المعلم وتقديره واجب على كل فرد فى المجتمع لأن المعلم هو أساس العملية التعليمية.

a) Respecting and appreciating teachers is the duty of all individuals in society, so the teacher is the basis of the educational process.

b) Respecting and appreciating teachers is the duty of every individual in society, because the teacher is the basis of the educational process.

c) That respecting and appreciating a teacher is the right of every individual in society, because the teacher is the basic of the educational process.

d) Respecting and appreciate a teacher is the duty of every individual in society, because the teacher is the basis of the educational operation.

6. بالتأكيد السيارة معطلة، فهى لم تتحرك من مكانها منذ أشهر ولا أحد من أصحابها يأتى لأخذها.

a) For sure the car is broken down; it hasn't moved for ages and no one of its owners comes to take it.

b) The car must be broken down; it hasn't moved for months and no one of its owners came to take it.

c) The car could be broken down; it hasn't moved for months and no one of its owners comes to take it.

d) Surely the car may be broken down; it didn't move for months and no one of its owners came to take it.

(C) Writing

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"From your own point of view, what is the most influential invention?"

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Unit 12 Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ali : What would you like to be when you finish school?
Samy : (1).. . This is my plan.
Ali : (2)..?
Samy : Because I like the sea and want to visit different countries. (3).......................?
Ali : I want to become a tour guide. I like (4).. .
Samy : You're right. It is wonderful to recognise various cultures, but you have to know different languages.
Ali : I know. I'll apply for courses to learn different languages.
Samy : Wish you the best of luck.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Izz al-Dīn .... against the King, Salih Ismail.
a) protested b) provoked c) agreed d) approved

2. Prophet Abraham (PBUH) is an .... for mankind.
a) examine b) excel c) exciting d) exemplar

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How was Lady Khadijah a responsible woman?

4. Why was Izz al-Dīn stripped of his posts?

The Novel

3 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. They used a .... to dig the ground and bury their cat's body.
a) sparrow b) barrow c) spot d) spade

2. When it started to blow hard, we ran to shelter in a ....
a) skeleton b) supply c) hole d) cave

(B) Answer the following:

3. Why were the pirates worried when they saw the skeleton?

4. What did Ben Gun reveal about the treasure?

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

The internet is the best invention that we have today. It's really useful if you need to find out about something for a school project, for example.

(B) Translate into English:

- ينبغى علينا أن نقدر جهود الصحابة فى حفظ سنة النبى (ﷺ).

Unit 12 Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options: *(2 marks)*

1. I found the book quite interesting. The synonyms of the word "interesting" are "..................".

a) amusing b) deep c) rooted d) entertaining e) humorous

2. The castle is on an island surrounded by a deep lake. The antonyms of the word "deep" are "..................".

a) rooted b) shallow c) buried d) near e) superficial

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *(12 marks)*

3. The worker was found .... after attacking his boss in his office.

a) innocent b) guilty c) mysterious d) proved

4. Our neighbour George feels .... after his wife's death.

a) lonely b) careful c) insulated d) along

5. Our teacher told us that Alexandria .... in the north of Egypt.

a) lies b) lays c) locates d) places

6. I started to search for my ring, but it .... in the sandy beach.

a) came out b) offered c) disappeared d) solved

7. The abbreviation ".................." refers to the period before the birth of Christ.

a) BEC b) BCE c) CEB d) BCR

8. A .... is a large building for storing large quantities of goods.

a) workhouse b) warehouse c) farmhouse d) sports house

9. Maged .... the bus. It doesn't run on Sundays.

a) must have caught b) couldn't have caught
c) may catch d) must catch

10. I got really wet walking home last night, I .... a waterproof jacket.

a) needn't have taken b) should take
c) should have taken d) must have taken

11. It was wrong of him to leave the door open. He .... that.

a) shouldn't do b) should do
c) shouldn't have done d) should have done

12. The exam was too difficult. He .... it.

a) couldn't have passed b) shouldn't have passed
c) must have passed d) can't have failed

13. You .... to bed earlier. Now, you have missed the train.

a) may have gone b) should have gone
c) must have gone d) shouldn't have gone

14. I .... written down the number incorrectly. I've just called a hospital, not the restaurant.

a) don't have b) can't have c) must have d) may have



▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: *(7 marks)*

Have you ever been to a forest? Have you ever watched a documentary about wildlife? Forests of different kinds are rich in wildlife. There, you can see thousands of species of plants and animals. These plants and animals form one of the most complicated circles of life. Every single species plays a part in maintaining natural balance.

There are similarities between animals living in wide-open spaces. The lion is an animal that lives in open areas. It is the largest member of the family of cats. It lives in Africa. When it is irritated by flies, the lion whips its tail around. The favourite food of the lion is raw meat. The lion gets its food from the animals it kills every day. It hunts at night but during the day, it lies in the shade of the trees. The lion kills only for food. The male always eats first. When it finishes, the rest of the family, the lioness and cubs, have their turn.

The zebra also lives in wide-open spaces. Its enemy is the lion because lions like its meat. Both zebras and lions like to live in open areas where they can run and play. Water is very important for the zebra. Almost every day, it goes to the waterhole where, its enemy, the lion, is sitting there waiting for it. The zebra is somehow brave enough to face its enemy while going to drink.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. The underlined word "irritated" means ....

a) annoyed b) interested c) discouraged d) afraid

16. Lions don't hunt ....

a) if they are hungry b) unless they are hungry
c) when they are hungry d) in case they are hungry

17. A .... is a place where you can see different species of plants and animals.

a) fossil b) foresail c) form d) forest

18. The passage talks about ....

a) lions b) cats c) water d) trees

19. Lions .... zebras because they like their meat.

a) conquer b) demolish c) attack d) save

20. What maintains the natural balance?

a) The lion. b) The zebra.
c) The trees. d) Animals and plants.

21. .... is the main meal for the lion.

a) Lioness b) Cub c) Zebra d) Cat

22. Choose the correct English translation: *(2 marks)*

- يعترض الكثيرمن الناس على ما يسمى بالعولمة لأنهم يعتقدون أنها تخدم الدول الغنية وليست الدول الفقيرة.

a) Many people object to the so-called globalisation because they think that it surfs rich countries not the poor ones.

b) Many people object to what is called global because they think that it serves rich countries not poor ones.

c) Many people object to the so-called globalisation because they think that it serves rich countries not the poor ones.

d) Many people react to the so-called globalisation because they think that it serves rich countries not the poor.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation: *(2 marks)*

- One of the measures to solve the problem of overpopulation is to educate the masses about the need to have one or two children at the most.

a) أحد إجراءات حل مشكلة التلوث هى تعليم الأعداد الكبيرة فهم الحاجة إلى أن يكون لديهم طفل أو اثنان على الأكثر.

b) أحد إجراءات حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هى تعليم الأعداد الكبيرة فهم عدم الحاجة إلى أن يكون لديهم طفل أو اثنان على الأكثر.

c) أحد طرق حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هى تعليم الكميات فهم الحاجة إلى أن يكون لديهم طفل أو اثنان على الأقل.

d) أحد إجراءات حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هى تثقيف الكثيرمن الناس بضرورة إنجاب طفل أو طفلين على الأكثر.

24. Answer the following questions: *(1.5 marks)*

1. Although the pirates heard some frightening voices, they didn't run away and continued. Why do you think so?
2. The pirates' happiness with finding the place of the treasure turned into a shock. What do you think happened?
3. Dr Livesy is the one who must be appreciated by all. Do you agree? Why?

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Summer camps for students" *(3.5 marks)*

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 311

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Story

Treasure Island



Chapters' Texts

Exercises



Chapter 7

Vocabulary المفردات

advantage (n)	أفضلية/ميزة	guard (v) (n)	يحرس/حارس
attack (v) (n)	يهجم/هجوم	gun fire (n)	نيران البنادق
blow (v)	تهب (الرياح)/ينفخ	hide (v)	يخفى/يختفى
bring (v)	يُحضر	hill (n)	تل
chains (n)	سلاسل/قيود	hit (v)	يضرب
cook (v) (n)	يطبخ/طباخ	hurt	يؤذى/يضر
corners (n)	زوايا/أركان	mist (n)	ضباب
cough (v)	يسعل/يكح	offer (v) (n)	يعرض/عرض
crazy	مجنون	pirate (n)	قرصان
crew (n)	طاقم السفينة	supplies (n)	مؤن
fence (n)	سور/حائط	trial (n)	محاكمة
fight (v) (n)	يقاتل/قتال	trick (v) (n)	يخدع/خدعة
firewood (n)	حطب	truce (n)	هدنة
fort (n)	حصن		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

accept an offer	يقبل عرضنا	get home	يعود إلى وطنه
become ill	يصاب بالمرض	have an advantage	لديك ميزة/أفضلية
call out	ينادى على	keep busy	يبقى مشغولًا
come up	يقترب	leave safely	يغادربأمان
end well	ينتهى على نحو جيد	look for	يبحث عن
feel better	يشعربتحسن	put someone in chains	يقيد شخصًا بالسلاسل

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: I walked with Ben Gun and we soon saw the fort[1]. "Your friends will be inside, Jim," said Ben. "It might be the pirates," I replied. "No, look at the flag! They will be good men," he answered. "The fort was made by Flint. He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver." "Let's go inside," I said. "I can't go in there," Gun replied. "I don't trust anyone. I'll wait for you. Remember what I told you. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrow." Before I could go to the fort, there was the sound of more gun fire and I had to hide so I wouldn't be hit. From the trees where I waited, I could now see the *Hispaniola*. It was also flying a flag, but it was the black pirate's flag. When it was nearly dark, I walked round to the back of the fort and called out. The door opened, and Dr Livesy let me inside. I sat down and told them my story. The wind blew sand[2] inside the fort and we found it everywhere, in our clothes, in our food and in our eyes. There was a fire to keep us warm, but the room was also full of smoke and we all coughed. Captain Smollett gave us all jobs: some looked for firewood, others went to cook food, and I was asked to guard the door. He kept us all busy, and that made us all feel better. "Captain Smollett is a good man," said Dr Livesy later that day. "And what about Ben Gun? Is he a good man?" "I don't know," I answered. "I think he's a little crazy." "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy," explained the doctor. "Did you say that he wanted some good food?" "Yes," I replied. "I've brought some cheese with me on this journey. Let's give it to Ben Gun!" said the doctor. That evening, the men talked about how little food we had. We hoped that the pirates would leave the island with the *Hispaniola*. The doctor said that they would become ill if they slept outside on the island for long. And if the pirates left, we could wait until help arrived. I slept very well that night. The next morning, a voice woke me up. I heard someone say, "Some pirates are coming to the fort with a white flag. Look, it's Silver! He wants a truce!"[3] I got up and looked from the fort. It was a cold morning, and although it was sunny, there was a low mist[4]. We could only see the head of Silver and another pirate. "Stay in the fort," said Captain Smollett. "I'm sure that this is a trick[5]." Then he called out to Silver, "Tell us what you want." "I want a truce," said Silver. Captain Smollett quietly told us to move to different corners of the fort and to watch Silver carefully.



(1) حصن
(2) رمال
(3) هدنة
(4) ضباب
(5) خدعة

Then he called to Silver, "What do you want us to do?" "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home," said Silver. "Your ship? I didn't know you had a ship here," replied Captain Smollett.

"Well, the crew chose me to be their captain after you left the ship," said Silver. "If you have something to say, you can come into the fort and say it," said Captain Smollett. The other pirate tried to stop Silver, but he laughed and walked quickly towards the fort. He climbed over one of the fences and walked slowly up the hill. Soon he was standing in front of Captain Smollett, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort. "Can't I come inside?" asked Silver. "It's a cold morning." "If you were an honest(1) man, you could come inside," said Captain Smollett. "But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after, or Captain Silver, a pirate?" "OK, we can stay here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand. "You've got a nice place here. Look, there's Jim! Good morning." "If you have anything to say, say it now," said Captain Smollett. "Captain, we want the treasure, and we're going to find it. However, I think you all want to leave the island safely. You have the map, don't you?" asked Silver. "Perhaps," said Captain Smollett. "I know you have it," said Silver. "We don't want to hurt you. Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship. We'll take you to somewhere safe. Or, if you prefer, we'll leave you some supplies and you can stay on the island. Then we can ask another ship to come and take you home. It's a kind offer(2), and I hope you all want to take it." He said this last part loudly so that we could all hear in the fort. "Is that all you can offer?" said Captain Smollett. "It is, and if you don't accept my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of guns!" "Now you can listen to me," replied Captain Smollett. "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains(3) and take you back to England for trial(4). If you don't, you'll have problems. You can't find the treasure. You don't have enough men to sail the ship, and you can't fight us here in the fort." Silver looked very angry. "This will not end well for any of you," he said, and then he walked slowly back down the hill. Captain Smollett came back into the fort and said to us, "He'll be back in an hour to attack us. There are more of them than us, but we have the advantage(5) inside the fort, and I am sure that we can win."



(1) أمين / صادق
(2) عرض
(3) سلاسل / أغلال
(4) محاكمة
(5) ميزة / أفضلية

Critical Thinking (Questions & Answers)

1. Do you think Silver really wanted a truce?

هل تعتقد أن سيلفر أراد فعلا الهدنة ؟

- No, I think that he wanted the treasure only whatever evil he would do.

2. Why do you think that Flint was a brave man?

لماذا تعتقد أن فلنت كان رجلا شجاعا؟

- As he wasn't frightened of anyone except Silver, who was more wicked than him.

3. Do you think that Dr Livesy was a generous man? Why?

هل تعتقد أن دكتور لايفزى كان رجلا كريما؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, as he offered to give some cheese that he had brought to Ben Gun who wanted some good food.

4. How do you think Ben knew that Jim's friends were inside the fort, not the pirates?

كيف عرف بين أن أصدقاء جيم كانوا داخل الحصن و ليسوا القراصنة ؟

- From the flag which was white.

5. How can you differentiate between bad people and good people according to the story?

كيف يمكنك التمييز بين الناس السيئين و الصالحين طبقا للقصة ؟

- From the colour of their flag. As the black one belongs to the pirates who are bad, while the white one is for the good.

6. Having a fire in the fort had one advantage and one disadvantage. Explain!

إشعال النيران فى الحصن كان له ميزة و عيب. وضح ذلك.

- It kept them warm, but also it made them cough as the room was full of smoke.

7. Why do you think that Captain Smollett gave them all jobs inside the fort?

لماذا تعتقد أن كابتن سموليت أعطى الجميع وظائف داخل الحصن؟

- To keep them all busy to feel better and not to think about any problem outside the fort.

8. What would happen to the group if the pirates didn't leave the island?

ما الذى سيحدث لهم إن لم يغادر القراصنة الحصن؟

- They would die of hunger as they had little food left.

9. Why do you think that Captain Smollett asked his men to watch Silver carefully?

لماذا، من وجهة نظرك، طلب كابتن سموليت من رجاله مراقبة سيلفر بعناية؟

- As he didn't trust him.

10. Do you think that Silver had the right to be the captain of the ship? Why?

هل تعتقد أن سيلفر كان لديه الحق فى أن يصبح كابتن السفينة؟ لماذا؟

- No, as Captain Smollett was the real captain of the ship.

11. Captain Smollett made fun of Silver. When?

قام كابتن سموليت بالسخرية من سيلفر متى؟

- When Silver told him to come to his ship and Captain Smollett said that he didn't know he had a ship there.

12. Silver didn't come into the fort, but he stayed at the door. Why do you think so?

لم يدخل سيلفر إلى الحصن و لكنه ظل على الباب. لماذا فعل ذلك من وجهة نظرك؟

- I think Captain Smollett didn't allow him as he didn't trust him.

13. Why do you think that Silver said the last offer loudly?

فى رأيك لماذا قام سيلفر برفع صوته عندما قام بالعرض الأخير؟

- He wanted all those who were inside the fort to hear that he offered to help them get back home to make them influence Captain Smollett to agree to give him the map.



Answer the following questions:

1. Ben Gun was an observant man. Do you agree or not? Why?
2. Do you think that Jim was careful or not? How do you know?
3. Prove that Captain Smollett was a wise man when dealing with others inside the fort.
4. Dr Livesy had an opinion about Ben Gun. What was that opinion and why?
5. Do you agree that any man who lives on an island for three years will be a bit crazy? Why? Why not?
6. If you were Captain Smollett, would you ask Silver to come inside the fort? Why? Why not?
7. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to go inside the fort?
8. If you were in Captain Smollett's place, would you accept Silver's offer or not? Why?
9. Do you think Silver really wanted a truce?
10. Why do you think that Flint was a brave man?
11. Why do you think the other pirate tried to stop Silver from getting into the fort?
12. Why do you think Captain Smollett put a flag on the fort? Longman
13. If you were with the team searching for the treasure, which job would you like to do? Why? Longman
14. What do you think might have happened if Smollett hadn't had the map? Longman
15. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy? (الجيزة - العمرانية)
16. "I don't trust anyone," said Gun. Do you agree that Gun shouldn't trust anyone on the island? Why? (الإسماعيلية)

Chapter 8

Vocabulary | المفردات

anchor (n)	مرساة السفينة	prepare (v)	يعد/يجهز
cape (n)	لسان داخل البحر	quietly (adv)	بهدوء
cliff (n)	منحدر	return (v)	يعود
climb (v)	يتسلق	rope (n)	حبل
completely (adv)	تمامًا	shoot (v)	يطلق النار
dead (adj)	ميت	steer (v)	يوجه/يقود
distant (adj)	بعيد	sword (n)	سيف
fire (v)	يطلق النار	the west (n)	الغرب
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا	thick (adj)	سميك
noise (n)	ضجيج	wave (n)	موجة
paddle (v) (n)	يجدف/مجداف	weakly (adv)	بشكل ضعيف/هزيل
parrot (n)	ببغاء	weapon (n)	سلاح
pirate flag (n)	علم القراصنة		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions | التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at the east	باتجاه الشرق	lie down	يستلقي
be in trouble	يقع في ورطة	look into	يتفحص/يلقي نظرة
get better	يتحسن	made from	مصنوع من
get inside	يتجه إلى الداخل	pick up	يلتقط
go quiet	يهدأ	stay by	يبقى بقرب
go down	ينزل	take time	يأخذ وقتًا

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: We prepared our weapons and the captain told us what to do. "Doctor, you stay by the door. Hunter, stay at the east of the fort. Joyce can stand in the west. Gray and Trelawney will stay at the north. If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're in trouble." After an hour, Joyce said that he saw someone coming. We all looked and listened, and we got our weapons ready. Suddenly, Joyce fired his gun. Then, we heard guns firing at us from all sides of the fort. There was a lot of noise[1] and smoke, but nobody was hurt. Then everything went quiet again. "Did you hit anyone?" the captain asked Joyce. "I don't think so," he replied. "How many people fired on your side, Doctor?" asked Captain Smollett. "There were three," he replied. "How many on your side, Trelawney?" Trelawney and Gray were not sure. They thought seven, eight or nine. There was only one shot fired from the east and west. So, we knew that the pirates wanted to attack mostly from the north. But Captain Smollett told us to stay where we were. We didn't have much time to talk. A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again. Some of the pirates tried to climb the fence but Joyce shot two of them and one ran back to the trees. However, four were now inside the fences and seven more continued to fire at us from the trees. Our men fired at the four pirates, but did not hit them. They were now running up the hill to the fort, and one of them climbed up and took Hunter's gun.

Another ran in through the door, where the doctor killed him. Captain Smollett then told us to go to the other side of the fort. I ran there quickly, and suddenly found one of the pirates, Anderson, in front of me. He was going to attack me with his sword, but Gray saw him and killed him before I was hurt. At the same time, the pirates inside the fences were killed by our guns. I was safe, but others were not. Poor Joyce and Hunter were dead and Captain Smollett was hurt. "Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett weakly. "Some of them have gone," said Doctor Livesy, "but five of them will never walk again." "That's good," said Captain Smollett. "There are fewer pirates for us to fight. I know that we can win." The pirates did not return that day, so we had time to eat and look after the people who were hurt. Doctor Livesy said that Captain Smollett would get better, but he should not walk or even talk if he didn't need to. In the early afternoon, Doctor Livesy took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his pocket and left the fort. "What is he doing?" asked Gray when we saw him walk into the trees. "Is he crazy?" "The doctor has a plan," I said. "I think he's going to visit Ben Gun." That afternoon, I thought about where the doctor was. I remembered how good it felt to walk through the trees and on the beach. It was much nicer than staying inside the hot fort. I decided to take some biscuits and a gun. I wanted to go down to the rocks where Ben Gun said there was a boat.



(1) ضوضاء

When nobody was looking, I quietly left the fort. I walked quickly towards the east of the island. It was now late afternoon but the sun was still high. As I went nearer to the coast, the wind became stronger and it wasn't as hot. Soon I could see the big waves of the blue sea and then I walked down the beach, feeling happy.

At the end of the beach, I climbed a hill. I could see the *Hispaniola*, with the pirate flag flying in the wind. And I could see Silver in one of the small boats, talking to his men. I could not hear what they said, although I could hear the cry[1] of the parrot, Captain Flint. The sun was going down and soon there was a mist. I knew that I needed to be quick and find the boat that evening. It took me a long time to walk to the white rock where Ben Gun said his boat was. It was nearly dark when I finally found it inside a tent made of animal skins. It was badly made from old wood and it was very small, although I thought that it would be very fast on water. Now I had my own plan. I thought that I could go to the *Hispaniola* in the night and cut the rope[2] to the anchor[3]. So, I ate my biscuits while I waited for it to become dark. When I stood up later, there was mist everywhere. I picked up the boat and carried it to the beach. In the darkness, I could just see a fire where the pirates were sleeping in the trees, and another distant light from the *Hispaniola*. I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship. I found that the boat was very difficult to steer[4], but the wind helped me to get to the *Hispaniola*. Soon, I was next to the big ship and I began cutting the thick[5] anchor rope.

I could now hear some of the pirates talking on the ship. One of the men was called Hands, but I did not know the other man. They both seemed angry. The rope finally broke, and I moved away from the ship. As I was leaving, I saw a light in one of the windows where the sailors were talking. I don't know why, but I decided to look into the window. I saw that Hands and the other pirate were fighting each other. I sat down in the boat, but I realised that the wind was taking me quickly out to sea.

Now it no longer had the anchor rope, the wind was moving the *Hispaniola*, too! The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a terrible end, dreaming of my home and the *Admiral Benbow*. The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island. The sun was up, but I couldn't see it because of the high cliffs on this side of the island. There were big waves hitting the rocks below, and it would be impossible for me to take the boat to the shore. I remembered that on the map, there was a place called Cape of Woods. This was a place of tall trees and it also had a beach. I would try to get there. The boat sailed well, but when I tried to steer it, the boat hit the waves and I was soon completely wet. I realised, however, that if I lay down in the boat, it found its way through the waves on its own. I used a paddle[6] to steer the boat a little, and it moved very slowly towards the Cape of Woods.



(1) صرخة
(2) حبل
(3) مرسى/مرساة
(4) يغير اتجاه .../يقود
(5) سميك
(6) مجداف

Critical Thinking (Questions & Answers)

1. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why/Why not?

هل تعتقد أن الكابتن سموليت قائد جيد؟ لماذا؟ لم لا؟

- Yes, I think so as he can prepare the men inside the fort for the pirates' attack very well.

2. Captain Smollett is sure that the pirates want to attack mostly from the north. How does he know that?

الكابتن سموليت متأكد من أن القراصنة يريدون الهجوم فى الغالب من الشمال. كيف يعرف ذلك؟

- As most shots are coming from this side, but there is only one shot from the east and west.

3. Why did Dr Livesy leave the fort? Do you agree that he is crazy as Gray said?

لماذا غادر الدكتور لايفزى الحصن؟ هل توافق على أنه مجنون كما قال جراى؟

- He was going to visit Ben Gun. Yes. I think that he is crazy as he might have been shot by the pirates.

4. Why do you think that Captain Smollett said, "I know that we can win" after the fight?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن سموليت قال: «أعلم أننا قادرون على الفوز» بعد القتال؟

- As they could kill five of the pirates and so there were few pirates left for them to fight.

5. What was Jim's opinion of the boat that Ben Gun made? Do you agree with his opinion?

ما هو رأى جيم فى القارب الذى صنعه بين جن؟ هل تتفق مع رأيه؟

- He thought that it could be fast although it was old and badly made from old wood. And I agree with this opinion as there was a storm to make it fast.

6. Why do you think that Jim wanted to be quick and find the boat as he said?

لماذا تعتقد أن جيم أراد أن يكون سريعًا ويجد القارب كما قال؟

- I think that he wanted to find the boat before the pirates could find him and kill him.

7. Do you think that Jim's plan was a good one? Why?

هل تعتقد أن خطة جيم كانت جيدة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think it was a good one as the storm would take the ship of the pirates away and this gives them a chance to run.

8. Why do you think Jim expects a "terrible end"?

لماذا تعتقد أن جيم يتوقع «نهاية فظيعة»؟

- As there was a storm and it took his boat into large waves which could have destroyed his boat and so he could have been killed.

9. Why do you think that was it possible for Jim to take the boat to the shore?

لماذا تعتقد أنه كان من الممكن لجيم أن يأخذ القارب إلى الشاطئ؟

- As there were big waves hitting the rocks below and he wasn't strong enough to be able to pull the boat alone.

Practice ... Chapter (8) Exercises



Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Jim, would you leave the fort? Why?
2. Why do you think that Jim wanted to leave the fort? Do you agree with his reasons?
3. Why do you think that Ben Gun hid the boat in the tent made of animals' skins?
4. Was Jim right to cut the rope of the *Hispaniola*? Why/Why not?
5. The wind was of great help to Jim. Do you agree with this and why?
6. Why do you think Dr Livesy wanted to find Ben Gun?
7. What was Jim's plan when he saw the little boat? Was his plan successful till the end?
8. Captain Smollett is a good leader. Do you agree or not? Why?
9. Prove that Hunter was not strong enough to fight the pirates.
10. What do you think Dr Livesy means by saying, "but five of them will never walk again."?
11. Jim likes open spaces. How can you prove that?
12. Why do you think that it was easy for Jim to carry the boat into the water alone?
13. Jim is a curious boy ولد فضولي! Do you agree with this? Why?
14. Why do you think Jim closed his eyes when the wind took his boat into large waves?
15. What might have happened if the pirates had got inside the fort? [Longman]
16. Who was the most important person in the group searching for the treasure on the island? Why? [Longman]
17. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why? (الإسماعيلية)
18. Do you think that Jim's plan was a good one? Why? (الفيوم - أبشواى)

Chapter 9

Vocabulary المفردات

bandage (n)	ضمادة	painfully (adv)	بشكل مؤلم
call (v)	يطلق لقبًا/يسمى	rocky (adj)	صخرى
close (adj)	قريب	sail (v) (n)	يبحر/شراع
deck (n)	ظهر السفينة	thirsty (adj)	متعطش
empty (adj)	فارغ	wound (n)	جرح
knife (n)	سكينة	wreck (n)	حطام (السفينة)
mud (n)	طين		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

climb up	يتسلق للأعلى	hold onto	يتمسك
get closer	يقترب	look better	يبدو أفضل
go east	يذهب شرقًا	take down	ينزل
go downstairs	يذهب إلى الطابق السفلى	take off	يخلع ملابس
go under	يذهب أسفل		

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: It was very hot and I was thirsty. The trees were near now, but before I could feel happy, I saw the *Hispaniola* sailing around. I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me. I watched the *Hispaniola* and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Then it did the same again and again. Nobody was sailing it! But where were the men? I thought if I could get onto the ship, I could return it to Captain Smollett. I started to paddle the boat, sometimes hitting waves, but slowly getting closer to the ship. As I got nearer, I saw nobody on the ship. It was so close that I could almost touch it. Suddenly, the wind changed and the ship was almost on top of me. I held onto a rope at the side of the ship just before it hit my little boat, which went under the waves. So, I found myself on the *Hispaniola*, with no other boat to save me. I climbed up onto the deck[1], which seemed empty. The wind blew and the sails moved to the right, and then I saw them: Hands and the man he was fighting. I thought they were both dead, but then Hands said weakly: "Water!" I went downstairs. The pirates had broken all the cupboard doors when they were looking for the map, and the floor was dirty with sand and mud from the island. I found some water and some food, which I put in my bag, and I went back to give the water to Hands. He drank all of it, very quickly. "Are you hurt?" I asked him. "With a doctor, I'll be fine," he said. "And where have you been?" "Well, I've decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain," I said. He looked at me angrily, but he also looked very ill.

"Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," I said, and then I went to take down the black pirate flag. Hands looked at me, and then said, "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." "That's a good idea," I agreed. "I don't think you can sail this ship," Hands said. "So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you." "OK," I said, "But I'm not going back to where the ship was before. We're going to the north of the island." "The north?" he asked. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!" So, I agreed to help him. I found a bandage[2] to put on his wound and I also gave him some food and some more water. He soon looked better. He told me how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon we could see the rocky north of the island. I felt good. I had water and food. The only thing that worried me was Hands. He looked at me all the time and I knew that he was planning something. We arrived near the north of the island, and Hands told me how to stop the ship without an anchor. Then we sat down to eat. "Could you go downstairs and get me some more water?" he asked. I did not think for a minute that Hands was an honest man. He wanted me to leave the deck for a reason, but I did not know what this was.



(1) سطح السفينة

(2) ضمادة

However, I also knew that. Hands was not a clever man, so I agreed to go. I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship, where I could see him. He was moving slowly and painfully across the deck, where he picked up a knife. He then hid the knife in his jacket and sat down where he was. Now I knew that he could move, that he had a weapon, and that he planned to hurt me. I did not know what he planned to do after that, but I knew that he could not hurt me until the ship stopped in a safe place near the island. I went back downstairs, put on my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. Hands was sitting quietly, and took the bottle without saying thank you. Then he said, "Look, the wind has changed. If we move the ship now, we'll be safe."

We had only two miles to go to the shore. It was difficult to get to the correct place on the coast, but Hands told me what to do. This part of the island was full of trees and we could see the wreck[1] of an old ship lying on a flat[2] beach. "We can stop there, on the beach," said Hands. I steered the ship slowly onto the beach, where it stopped with a low noise.
I was so excited to arrive back at the island that I forgot to watch Hands. I suddenly turned round and there he was, standing with a knife in his hand. I cried out and he jumped at me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck. Before he could stand up again, I took a gun from my jacket. However, the gun was wet from my journey and it did not work. I was very angry with myself. I was surprised at how fast he could move with the wound in his leg. As he ran towards me, I got ready to run away from him again, and he stopped. I remembered a game that I used to play with my friends in Black Hill Cove when one of us would try to catch the other. I was always good at this game and I thought that I could easily run away from this older pirate with a bad leg. At that moment, a wave hit the *Hispaniola*. When the ship moved, we both fell over and I nearly fell onto Hands. Before he could stand, I decided to climb up the mast[3] of the ship. Up in the sails, I had time to repair my gun and soon it would be ready to fire again. Hands looked up at me and saw my plan. He, too, started to climb the sails, but he could only climb slowly because of his bad leg. Before he was near me, I had the gun ready. "If you come any closer, Mr Hands, you will be dead!" He stopped and I could see he was thinking about what he could do. "You're clever, Jim Hawkins," he said. "You've won." I started to laugh, thinking I was clever, when suddenly he threw something at me. His knife flew through the air and hit me in the shoulder[4]. I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired. Hands gave a cry and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again. The knife passed through my shoulder into the wood of the mast, so I could not move. It hurt badly. It took a long time before I could think. When I finally looked at the knife, I saw that it only went through a small piece of skin. It was not difficult to take out. I climbed back to the deck and found a bandage for my wound. I was now alone on the ship and it was nearly dark. I quickly took down all the sails I could reach[5] and then jumped down into the shallow[6] water. I walked onto the sand, leaving the *Hispaniola* half on the beach and half in the water.



(1) حطام
(2) مسطح/مستوٍ
(3) صاري
(4) كتف
(5) يصل
(6) ضحل/غير عميق

Critical Thinking (Questions & Answers)

1. If you were Jim, would you feel happy or sad when seeing the *Hispaniola*? Why?

لو كنت مكان جيم، فهل ستشعر بالسعادة أم بالحزن عند رؤية الهسبانيولا؟ لماذا؟

- I wouldn't feel happy as I would be sure that the pirates would kill me.

2. Why do you think that the *Hispaniola* was moving in different directions and stopped several times?

لماذا تعتقد أن الهسبانيولا كانت تتحرك في اتجاهات مختلفة وتوقفت عدة مرات؟

- I think that it was sailing by itself as nobody was sailing it.

3. Prove that Jim was very kind and liked Captain Smollett!

أثبت أن جيم كان لطيفًا جدًا ويحب الكابتن سموليت!

- He wished to get on the ship and take it back to Captain Smollett.

4. Did Jim feel safe on getting on the deck of the ship? Why?

هل شعر جيم بالأمان عند صعوده إلى سطح السفينة؟ لماذا؟

- I don't think that he felt safe at first as he thought that he had no boat now to save him. But then he began to feel safe when he found nobody except Hands who was injured.

5. Why do you think that Jim decided to take the pirates' flag down?

لماذا تعتقد أن جيم قرر إنزال علم القراصنة؟

- I think that he did so to make his friends feel secure on seeing the ship.

6. Jim Hawkins is a clever and cautious boy. Prove that by giving an example.

جيم هوكينز ولد ذكي وحذر. أثبت ذلك بإعطاء مثال.

- When Hands asked to get him some more water, Jim felt that Hands was planning something. So, he pretended to make a lot of noise and took off his shoes to watch Hands. He saw him get a knife and put it in his clothes to hurt him.

7. Why do you think Hands wants to hurt or kill Jim?

لماذا تعتقد أن هانز يريد إيذاء جيم أو قتله؟

- I think that he wanted to kill him to be able to take control over the ship.

8. How do you think Jim was good to Hands on the ship?

كيف تعتقد أن جيم كان عطوفًا مع هانز على السفينة؟

- He was kind as he gave the pirate, food and water. Also, he helped him with his wound.

9. Killing Hands was by accident. Do you agree or not? Why?

قتل هانز كان عن طريق الصدفة. هل توافق أم لا؟ لماذا؟

- I agree completely as Jim didn't intend to kill him but when the knife hit Jim's shoulder, he said "Without knowing how, my gun fired."

Practice ... Chapter (9) Exercises



Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think that nobody was sailing the *Hispaniola*?
2. Do you think that Jim was lucky when he went closer to the ship? How?
3. Why do you think that there was sand and mud on the ship?
4. Why do you think Jim agreed to help Hands on the ship?
5. Hands was a deceitful man. Do you agree with this or no? Prove your opinion.
6. Why do you think that Jim agreed to get Hands water although he doubted that he was planning something?
7. Hands was an ungrateful man. Do you agree or not? Prove your opinion.
8. "I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship." What does this tell you about Jim?
9. The pirate Hands was very strong. Can you give an example of this?
10. Do you think that Jim was really going to kill Hands? Why? Why not?
11. Do you think that all the pirates were dead? Why? Why not?
12. Why do you think that Jim was lucky when he was fighting with Hands?
13. Jim had a gun but it was of no use at first. Illustrate.
14. A wave helped Jim on the *Hispaniola* but he was clever enough to help himself. Illustrate this.
15. Why do you think Hands didn't use his gun instead of the knife when he was quarrelling يتشاجر with Jim? Longman
16. In your opinion, do you think Jim was lucky? Why? Longman
17. "I didn't know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me.", said Jim. What did this reflect about Jim's character at that time? Longman
18. If you were Jim, would you trust Hands? Why? Why not? (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)
19. Prove that Jim was very kind and liked Captain Smollett. (الفيوم - أبشواى)

Chapter 10

Vocabulary — المفردات

adventure (n)	مغامرة	realise (v)	يدرك
alive (adj)	حى/على قيد الحياة	remain (v)	يظل/يبقى
anchor rope (n)	حبل المرساة	rule (v) (n)	يحكم/قاعدة
frighten (v)	يخيف	save (v)	ينقذ
gang (n)	عصابة	surprised (adj)	متفاجئ
join (v)	ينضم	torch (n)	كشاف
kill (v)	يقتل	trap (v) (n)	يقع فى الفخ/فخ
latest (adj)	آخر/أحدث	trial (n)	محاكمة
leader (n)	قائد	unusual (adj)	غير عادى
lose (v)	يخسر	waste (v)	يسرف/يبذر
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at last	أخيرًا/فى النهاية	look round	ينظر حول
be back	يعود	ready for	جاهز لـ
be more of a man than any of you	أكثر رجولة من أى واحد منكم	run away	يهرب
be trapped	يقع فى فخ	run into	يصطدم بـ
come down	ينزل	stay on your own	يبقى وحيدًا
hold on	يتمسك بـ/يتشبّث بـ	take back	يسترجع
look out	ينظر خارجًا	care about	يهتم بـ

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: At last, I was back on the island. The ship was safe from the pirates, ready for our men to go back to sea. I looked forward to telling my friends about my latest adventure and started to walk back across the island. I remembered the map, so I knew how to return to the place where I had met Ben Gun for the first time. As I continued, it was very dark. It was difficult for me to find my way, but the light of the moon helped me. When I was near the fort, I went more slowly. I did not want my friends to think I was a pirate. Suddenly, I saw a red light through trees. What was it? Then I saw that there was a big fire next to the fort. I thought that this was unusual, as Captain Smollett was always very careful not to waste wood for the fire. I quietly went back inside the dark fort, and I was very pleased to hear the men inside talking quietly. However, I realised that they were not good guards because nobody saw me return. I was about to climb into my bed when I heard the words, "Who is it? Who is it?" I realised that it was Captain Flint, Silver's parrot! Everyone in the room woke up, and I heard someone call out: "Who's there?" It was Long John Silver! I turned to run away but I ran into a man, who held on to me. I was trapped[1]. "Bring a torch[2], Dick," said Silver. When he returned with a torch, I could see inside the room. I realised that the fort was now full of pirates. Our food was on the table, too, but I could not see any of my friends. Was it possible that they were all dead? There were five pirates standing in the room. Another pirate lay in bed. He looked badly hurt. Silver looked tired. His parrot was on his shoulder, and his clothes were dirty. "So, Jim Hawkins!" said Silver. "It's nice of you to visit us. You don't have to stand up for Jim!" he told his men and they lay down on their beds again. "I knew you were clever," Silver said to me. "I always wanted you to be one of us because I was like you when I was a boy. Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them. So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now." I was pleased to hear that my friends were still alive[3], but I was not happy to hear that they did not want me anymore. "Now, you don't have to say yes," said Silver.

"I can't tell you what to do." "I'll answer you," I said, in a weak voice. "First, I want to know where my friends are." "Yesterday morning," explained Silver, "Dr Livesy came down with a white flag. He told me that the *Hispaniola* was not there anymore. We looked round and he was right! The ship was gone! Then the doctor said that we



(1) محبوس
(2) كشاف
(3) حى

could have the fort. I asked him how many of them were in the fort, and he said there were four, and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know or care[1] where you were. So here we are. I don't know where they are now." "Do I have to decide now?" I asked. "Yes, you have to decide now," said Silver. "Very well. But there are some things you need to know. First, you have lost your ship, you have lost your treasure and you have lost many of your men. How did you lose them? It was me! I heard your plans on the *Hispaniola* and told Captain Smollett. And I cut the anchor ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" I stopped talking and all the men looked at me angrily. "That was the boy who knew Black Dog in Bristol!" said one of the pirates called Morgan. "And he was the boy who got the map from Billy Bones!" Morgan then stood up with a knife. "Stop!" called Silver. "Do you think that you're the captain now? You do as I say!" Morgan and the other pirates were quiet. "I like this boy," Silver continued. "I've never seen a better boy than him. He's more of a man than any of you."

The other pirates did not look happy and they started to talk quietly to each other. "What are you saying?" said Silver. "We don't like all of your rules[2]," said one of the pirates. "We're going to talk together without you. You can't stop us." Soon, all the men left the room, and only Silver and I remained. "Listen Jim," said Silver. "I don't think that they want me to be the captain anymore. But I can look after you, if you look after me." "Do you mean that they want to kill you?" "They don't need me now that I don't have the ship. But if you save me, I can save you." I was surprised to hear this. He was the leader of the gang of pirates, and now he wanted the help of a boy. "I'll do what I can," I told him. "You're a good boy!" he said. "I know you've got the ship safe somewhere. I don't know how you did it, but you did. Remember, I'm now with Mr Trelawney and his men. So, why did the doctor give me the map, Jim?" He saw that I was surprised. "Yes, he gave it to me. He must have a plan, you know. Let's hope it's a good one." I looked out of the fort and saw the pirates talking in a group. One of the men had some paper and a knife and the others were watching him. Then they started to walk back towards us. "They're coming!" I told Silver. "Let them come!" he said.



(1) يهتم (2) قواعد

Critical Thinking (Questions & Answers)

1. What do you think the unusual observation that Jim made about the fire next to the fort? ما رأيك فى الملاحظة غير العادية التى أدلى بها جيم بشأن النار بجوار الحصن؟

- Jim found it unusual as Captain Smollett was careful not to waste wood for the fire, and this shows Jim's intelligence.

2. What do you think Jim felt as he approached the fort, knowing there were pirates inside?

فى رأيك، ما الذى شعر به جيم عندما اقترب من الحصن، وهو يعلم أن هناك قراصنة بالداخل؟

- I think he felt a mix of fear and worry as he approached such a dangerous place.

3. Why do you think Jim moved slowly when he reached the fort?

لماذا تعتقد أن جيم تحرك ببطء عندما وصل إلى الحصن؟

- I think he didn't want his friends to think he was one of the pirates.

4. What do you think of the red light which Jim saw? ما رأيك فى الضوء الأحمر الذى رآه جيم؟

- It was the big fire next to the fort.

5. Do you think there were good guards in the fort? Why?

هل تعتقد أنه كان هناك حراس جيدون فى الحصن؟ لماذا؟

- No, because no one realised that Jim returned till he reached his bed.

6. Why do you think Jim thought that his friends were all dead?

برأيك لماذا اعتقد جيم أن أصدقاءه ماتوا جميعًا؟

- Because he didn't find anyone of them in the fort when he returned. There were only pirates.

7. Jim had two different feelings when he realised that his friends were still alive. Discuss.

كان لدى جيم شعوران مختلفان عندما أدرك أن أصدقاءه ما زالوا على قيد الحياة. ناقش.

- He was pleased to know that they were still alive, but he was sad to know that they didn't want him anymore.

8. Jim was brave while talking to Silver. Discuss. كان جيم شجاعًا أثناء حديثه مع سيلفر. ناقش.

- He was very brave as he told him that he wasn't afraid of him and he could kill him if he wanted.

9. Did Jim cause the mutiny of the pirates against Silver?

هل تسبب جيم فى تمرد القراصنة ضد سيلفر؟

- When Jim confessed that he was the one who destroyed their plans, they were angry and wanted to kill him, but Silver stopped them, so they were very angry with their leader.

10. What do you think the general atmosphere الجو العام **as Silver says, "Let them come!"?**

ما رأيك بالجو العام حيث يقول سيلفر «دعهم يأتون!»؟

- The general atmosphere is tense, indicating Silver's confidence in facing the approaching group of pirates.

Practice ... Chapter (10) Exercises



Answer the following questions:

1. How do you think the light of the moon helped Jim?
2. Jim thought that Captain Smollett wasn't the one who made the fire. Explain why.
3. Why do you think Silver wanted Jim to be one of his men?
4. According to Silver's opinion, Jim couldn't return to his friends. Discuss.
5. Jim caused many troubles to Silver and the pirates. Discuss.
6. Why do you think the pirates were angry with Jim and wanted to kill him?
7. Why do you think the pirates wanted to kill Jim?
8. There was a win-win agreement between Jim and Silver. Discuss.
9. Why do you think the pirates didn't need Silver anymore?
10. Although Silver was the leader of the gang of the pirates, he wanted the help of a boy. Discuss.
11. Do you think the doctor gave Silver the map because he had a plan?
12. What do you think the sentence "Let them come!" shows about the character of Silver?
13. If Silver had his ship and the treasure, do you think the pirates would be angry with him?
14. What do you think the most useful action Jim took on the island was? [Longman]
15. If you were Jim, would you be frightened of Silver? Why? [Longman]
16. What might have happened if the team searching the treasure hadn't left the fort? [Longman]
17. Do you think it was right for Jim to leave the fort alone? Why/ Why not? (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)
18. Jim had two different feelings when he realised that his friends were still alive. What do you think these feelings are? (بورسعيد)

Chapter 11

Vocabulary — المفردات

agreement (n)	اتفاق	nod (v) (n)	يومئ برأسه /إيماءة
arrest (v)	يقبض على	patient (n)	مريض
follow (v)	يتبع	promise (v)	يَعِد
good (n) (adj)	الخير/طيب	remind (v)	يُذكر
jump (v)	يقفز	trust (v) (n)	يثق /ثقة
malaria (n)	مرض الملاريا	useful (adj)	مفيد
negotiate (v)	يتفاوض	voice (n)	صوت بشرى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

come to agreement	يتوصل إلى اتفاق	stay safe	يأمن
except for	باستثناء	try a trick on	يجرب حيلة على
feel well	يشعر بحالة جيدة	wake up	يستيقظ
keep close	يبقى قريبًا	walk away	يمشى بعيدًا
look after	يعتنى بـ	walk forward	يمشى إلى الأمام
sound different	يبدو مختلفًا	walk in through	يمشى من خلال
stay close	يبقى قريبًا	with wonder	باندهاش

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: The pirates walked in through the door. One of the men was holding a piece of paper, and he nervously walked forward to give it to Silver. Silver read it. "So, I'm not the captain now, is that it?" he said. "Can I have the torch for a minute, so I can read it better?"

"Don't try your tricks on us," said one of the pirates, called George. "I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be," said Silver. "We can tell you," said George. "First, your plans haven't worked. Second, you let Trelawney and his men leave the fort, and we're sure that they have a plan. Third, you wouldn't let us follow them. And fourth, there's the boy!" "Is that all?" asked Silver. "That's enough, isn't it?" said George. "I'll answer each reason," said Silver. "First, who didn't do what I asked them to do? Anderson, Hands and you, George! If we are arrested[1] when we return to England, it is because of those people! Second, we have a doctor on the island. He's important because some of us are very ill at the moment. The doctor and I came to an agreement[2] so that he would help us. And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to negotiate[3]. And what about reason three? Well, this is why we didn't follow them!" he continued, and showed them the treasure map. I was very surprised and I did not understand why the doctor had given the map to him. The pirates, however, looked at it with wonder.

"That's Flint's map!" said George. "But how are we to take his treasure home if we don't have a ship?' "Listen, George," said Silver. "You lost my boat, but I can find the treasure. So, who should be captain now?" "Silver's right," said Morgan, and the other pirates agreed. Silver was still the captain. The pirates now seemed happy, except for George. Silver made him guard the fort all night while the other men laughed and sang. I lay down and thought about Silver. I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe. The next morning, a voice woke us all up (and I mean all of us, even George, the guard). It was Dr Livesy calling us. I was very happy to hear him, but also worried. I had left my friends and now I was with Silver's gang. What would Dr Livesy think? "Good morning, Doctor," said Silver. "Come in! George will open the door for you. We've got a surprise for you, too!" "Do you mean Jim?" asked Dr Livesy. He looked surprised as he came near us. "That's right," said Silver.



(1) يقبض على
(2) اتفاق
(3) يتفاوض

The doctor did not speak for some time. Then he said, "Let me see your patients." He walked into the fort and, with a small nod[1] to me, walked up to the ill pirates. He talked to them as if they were any English patient, although he knew they were all dangerous men.

"I hope you took your medicine?" he said to George. "Yes, sir, I did," he replied. "Good, because now I'm a pirate's doctor, I want to keep you all healthy so we can get you back to England for trial," he said. The pirates looked at each other but they said nothing.

"Dick doesn't feel well," said Morgan. "Let me look at you," the doctor replied. "Yes, you have malaria[2]. That's what happens when you sleep outside on an island like this. I'm surprised that a clever man like Silver didn't realise." He gave Dick some medicine, then said, "Now I'd like to talk to the boy, please." "No!" said George.

"Be quiet!' shouted Silver. "Doctor, you've been kind to help us with our medicine, so you can talk to the boy. But first, he must promise[3] not to run away." I agreed. "Good. Now you can go outside, doctor, and you can talk to the boy through the window. He can stay inside," said Silver. When the doctor went outside, the other pirates told Silver that they were not happy that the doctor could talk to me. Silver reminded them they did not know where the treasure was yet. They needed my help, and perhaps the doctor's help as well, until the time was right. Silver took me to a window where I could talk to the doctor. When he knew the pirates could not hear, he spoke to the doctor, but he sounded different. "Tell the others that I helped you, doctor," he said. "The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe." "I think you're frightened!" said Dr Livesy. "I'm not frightened," said Silver, "but I know you're a good man and you'll see the good in me. Now I'll let you and Jim talk." Silver walked away and sat down, where he could not hear us. "Jim, what happened? Why did you leave us when we needed you?" the doctor asked me. I felt very bad and started to cry. "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but Silver saved me. I must stay here now." "No," said the doctor. "You can't stay here. One jump and you're out of the fort, and we can run." "I can't," I said. "Silver trusts me now. But if they hurt me, I will have to tell them where the ship is. Because I got the ship! It's in the north of the island, half on a beach." "You've got the ship!" said the doctor. I quickly told him my story. "You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. He then turned to Silver. "It'll be dangerous to look for that treasure, Silver," he said. "Don't try to find it." "But I can only save my life and the boy's life if I find it," Silver replied. "OK, then keep the boy close to you. If you need help, shout. Goodbye, Jim," he said, and left the fort. "We can look for the treasure now, Jim," said Silver. "You stay close to me. We'll look after each other."



(1) إيماءة
(2) مرض الملاريا
(3) يَعِد وعدًا

Critical Thinking (Questions & Answers)

1. Do you think Silver wanted the torch to read better or for a trick?

هل تعتقد أن سيلفر أراد الكشاف لكى يقرأ بشكل أفضل أم من أجل خدعة ؟

- I think it was a trick from Silver.

2. Silver could answer each reason to George. What does this show about his character?

سيلفر تمكن من أن يجيب عن كل سبب لجورج. ماذا يظهر هذا عن شخصيته ؟

- This shows that it was a tricky character.

3. Why do you think the doctor gave Silver the map?

لماذا تعتقد أن الطبيب أعطى سيلفر الخريطة ؟

- I think he had a plan.

4. Why do you think all the pirates were happy after seeing the map except for George?

لماذا تعتقد أن جميع القراصنة كانوا سعداء بعد رؤية الخريطة باستثناء جورج ؟

- As George wanted to be the leader of the gang, but Silver destroyed his plan.

5. In your opinion, why did Silver make George guard the fort all night?

فى رأيك، لماذا جعل سيلفر جورج يحرس الحصن طوال الليل ؟

- He punished him as he wanted to be the leader of the gang.

6. Silver knew how to be friends with all the pirates. What does this show about his character?

عرف سيلفر كيف يكون صديقًا لجميع القراصنة. ماذا يظهر هذا عن شخصيته ؟

- This shows that he had all the qualities of a good leader.

7. Why do you think Silver wanted Dr Livesy to tell the others that he helped him and saved him?

لماذا تعتقد أن سيلفر أراد من الدكتور لايفزى أن يخبر الآخرين أنه ساعده وأنقذه ؟

- Perhaps, he wanted them to trust him.

8. Silver told Dr Livesy that he was a good man. Do you agree with him? Why?

أخبر سيلفر الدكتور لايفزى أنه رجل طيب. هل توافقه ؟ لماذا ؟

- Yes, I agree with him because he wanted to help Jim and had an argument with the bad pirates.

9. Jim refused to run away with Dr Livesy as Silver trusted him. What does this show about his character?

رفض جيم الهروب مع الدكتور لايفزى لأن سيلفر وثق به، ماذا يظهر ذلك عن شخصيته ؟

- This shows that he was acting as a man who had principles.

10. Why do you think George didn't want Dr Livesy to talk to Jim?

لماذا تعتقد أن جورج لم يرد أن يتحدث الدكتور لايفزى مع جيم ؟

- Maybe, he was afraid that Jim would escape.

Practice ... Chapter (11) Exercises



Practice more

Answer the following questions:

1. Do you agree with Jim not to escape with Dr Livesy? Why?
2. Do you think Silver's responses to George were persuasive? Why?
3. How does Dr Livesy balance between his duty as a doctor and treating criminals?
4. What do you think Jim felt when he decided to stay with the pirates?
5. The treasure map affected the pirates' actions and decisions. Illustrate.
6. When Jim heard the voice of Dr Livesy calling, he had a mix of feelings. Explain.
7. Why do you think Dr Livesy talked to the ill pirates as patients although he knew they were all dangerous men?
8. Why do you think Silver agreed that Dr Livesy could talk to Jim?
9. When Silver knew that the pirates couldn't hear, he spoke to the doctor but sounded different. Explain why.
10. Dr Livesy was an honest doctor. Discuss.
11. George was afraid of Silver's tricks. Illustrate.
12. Do you think that the doctor was right to give Silver the map? Why.
13. The doctor wanted Jim to escape, but Jim refused. Explain why.
14. Do you agree that Silver should be the captain? [Longman]
15. If you were Silver, how would you make sure that Jim would be loyal to you? [Longman]
16. "He'll be useful if we need to negotiate," said Silver. [Longman]
17. How do you think Silver could make sure of Jim to negotiate? [Longman]
18. Why do you think Dr Livesy looked after the ill pirates? (الشرقية - الإبراهيمية)

Chapter 12

Vocabulary — المفردات

attach (v)	يربط	point (v)	يشير
cave (n)	كهف	skeleton (n)	هيكل عظمى
dig (v)	يحفر	smile (v)	يبتسم
drink (n)	مشروب	spade (n)	جاروف /مجرفة
excited (adj)	مثار/فرح	terrible (adj)	رهيب /فظيع
ground (n)	أرض	useless (adj)	عديم الفائدة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

call out	ينادى	look worried	يبدو قلقًا
find out	يكتشف	play a trick	يخدع
go home	يعود إلى الوطن	pointing north	مشيرًا إلى اتجاه الشمال
get into	يدخل	slow down	يبطئ
look tired	يبدو متعبًا		



Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: Silver went back to the pirates and said, "I've found out that the doctor's men have the ship. I don't know where it is, but when we find the treasure, we'll find the ship. That will give us the advantage. We'll keep Jim with us before then. When we go home, we can leave him on the island." The pirates looked happy with this news, but it worried me. What was Silver really planning? When he found the treasure, was he going to help Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney or these terrible pirates? I did not know. We all left the fort. The pirates were carrying supplies, spades and their weapons. We then got into the small boats and looked at the map to see where we should go. We took the boats down a river, then we left them and walked through some tall trees. The pirates attached[1] me to Silver with a rope so that I could not escape, and we walked up a hill. We walked for many hours. It was very hot, but this side of the island was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds. Then we heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face. It was the skeleton[2] of a man lying on the ground[3]. "The skeleton is pointing[4] north!" said Morgan. "He is," said Silver. "I think this was one of Flint's games. He killed the man and put him there." "Flint was a terrible man," said Morgan. The pirates looked worried and when we continued, they were much quieter. Suddenly, we heard a voice singing from the trees in front of us.

"That sounds like Flint!" said George. "Flint's dead," said Silver. "It is someone playing a trick." Then the voice called out, "McGraw, bring me a drink, please!" "That was what Flint said, just before he died!" said Morgan. Now the pirates all looked very frightened.

"Listen men," said Silver. "There's a lot of treasure near here. I don't think that was Flint.

I think it was Ben Gun." "I thought he was dead, too, but I'm not frightened of him," said George. The pirates looked happier and continued walking, although Dick looked tired and ill. Soon we saw a very tall tree. The tree was on our map and we knew that we were now close to the treasure. I could see that all the pirates were excited. Silver, too, looked different. His eyes looked crazy and dangerous, and I thought he would do anything to go home safely with the treasure. The pirates all ran to the bottom of the tree. George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry. "Look!" he said. We saw what he was pointing at. Near the bottom of the tree, there was a big hole in the ground. Someone had been there before us. The treasure was gone! The pirates said nothing, but I could see that Silver was already making a plan. "Take this, and be ready for trouble," he said quietly, and he gave me a gun. Then the pirates all jumped into the hole and started digging with their spades. Perhaps there was treasure still there. Morgan found a gold coin and held it up for the others to see. "One coin? You told us there was seven hundred thousand pounds here,



(1) ربط
(2) هيكل عظمي
(3) الأرض
(4) مشيرًا

Silver!" shouted George angrily. "You knew about this, didn't you?" The pirates looked very angry. They climbed out of the other side of the hole, looking dirty and hot. "Let's get them, men!" said George. Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the pirates fell down and the other three started to run. We were safe! Dr Livesy, Gray and Ben Gun came out from the trees. "Thank you, doctor," said Silver. "You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!" Ben Gun said hello to Silver, but I could see that he was frightened of him.

As we walked back to the boats, we heard how Ben Gun had helped us. Ben Gun had dug up the treasure and put it in a cave in the north of the island before we arrived on the *Hispaniola*. Ben Gun told all of this to Dr Livesy, when the doctor gave him some cheese. The doctor then thought of a plan. He gave the map to Silver because he knew it was useless[1]. Then he took his friends up to the cave, where Ben Gun had supplies as well as the treasure. When he knew that Silver was taking me and the men to look for the treasure, the doctor came back with Ben Gun and Gray. To slow the pirates down, Ben Gun sang a song to frighten them. This had given the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole. After a few hours, we reached the coast again. Ben Gun helped Gray to destroy one of the boats so that the other pirates could not use it. We took the other boat around the island. After three miles, I was surprised to see the *Hispaniola*! The wind had blown it from the beach and it was sailing empty on the sea. We helped Gray to get onto the ship so that he could look after it, and we continued to the beach. We then climbed the hill to Ben Gun's cave, where Trelawney was looking after Captain Smollett. "Silver," Trelawney said when he saw him.

"You are a pirate and a thief, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you." Silver said nothing, but he smiled. Inside the big cave, Captain Smollett was lying by a fire. Behind him, I could see lots of coins and gold. It was Flint's treasure. The next morning, we began to take the treasure down the hill to the boat. It was heavy work, and it took us days to move all the coins and gold. We knew there were still three pirates on the island. We looked for them all the time, but we did not see them again. We decided to leave the island without them, but we left some food and medicine. It was a difficult journey back on the *Hispaniola* because the crew was so small. Captain Smollett lay on his bed and told us what to do. After a few days, we reached a town in South America, where we went to find more people for our crew. When we returned to the *Hispaniola* later that day, Ben Gun told us that Silver had taken a boat and some money. He was gone, but nobody was sad about that. With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped us all back in England. Captain Smollett stopped working and Gray decided to buy his own ship. Ben Gun quickly spent all of his money. I have a comfortable life now. I often think about the island and Long John Silver, but I never saw him again.



(1) عديم الفائدة

Critical Thinking (Questions & Answers)

1. **Why do you think Long John Silver decided to reveal information about the ship being in the hands of the doctor's men to the pirates?**

لماذا تعتقد أن لونج جون سيلفر قرر الكشف عن معلومات حول وجود السفينة فى أيدى رجال الطبيب للقراصنة ؟

- Long John Silver likely shared this information to maintain trust among the pirates.

2. **What do you think the significance of the pointing skeleton is?**

فى رأيك ما هى دلالة إشارة الهيكل العظمى؟

- The pointing skeleton could be a message from Captain Flint, guiding the pirates in a particular direction.

3. **Why do you think the narrator is worried about Silver's plan, and what aspects of Silver's character might contribute to this concern?**

لماذا تعتقد أن الراوى قلق بشأن خطة سيلفر، وما هى جوانب شخصية سيلفر التى قد تساهم فى هذا القلق؟

- The narrator's worry could come from uncertainty about Silver's loyalty.

4. **What do you think of the emotional impact on the pirates when they discover the treasure is missing?**

ما رأيك فى التأثير النفسى على القراصنة عندما يكتشفون أن الكنز مفقود؟

- The pirates likely feel shocked and disappointed.

5. **Why do you think Ben Gun played both hindering and helping roles in the events, and what motivations might drive his actions?**

لماذا تعتقد أن بين جن لعب أدوارًا معيقة ومساعدة فى الأحداث؟ وما هى الدوافع وراء أفعاله؟

- Ben Gun's actions could be motivated by a desire to hinder the pirates and to go home.

6. **Why do you think Captain Smollett guides the crew from his bed, and what does this reveal about his leadership style and resilience?**

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن سموليت يرشد الطاقم من سريره، وماذا يكشف ذلك عن أسلوب قيادته و عزيمته ؟

- Captain Smollett's guidance from his bed shows leadership qualities.

7. **What do you think motivates Silver to give the narrator a gun?**

فى رأيك ما الذى يدفع سيلفر إلى إعطاء الراوى سلاحًا؟

- Silver may give the narrator a gun for trust or strategic reasons.

8. **Why do you think the pirates react differently to the singing voice in the trees?**

لماذا تعتقد أن القراصنة يتفاعلون بشكل مختلف مع صوت الغناء فى الأشجار؟

- The pirates' varied reactions may be influenced by fear.

9. **What do you think the characters' decisions to retire, buy a ship, or spend money reveal about their individual desires and motivations?**

فى رأيك، ما الذى تكشفه قرارات الشخصيات بالتقاعد أو شراء سفينة أو إنفاق المال عن رغباتهم ودوافعهم الفردية ؟

- The characters' choices reflect their unique aspirations and motivations.

Practice ... Chapter (12) Exercises



Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the doctor chose to share the useless map with Silver?
2. What might be the consequences of giving Silver a useless map?
3. What do you think motivates the characters to leave food and medicine for the remaining pirates on the island?
4. Captain Smollett decided to provide guidance from his bed. What might be the impact on the crew?
5. What does the decision of searching for the remaining pirates on the island reflect?
6. Why do you think the characters react with shock and disappointment upon discovering the missing treasure near the tall tree?
7. What do you think Silver's ambiguous smile upon being thanked by Trelawney show?
8. Why do you think the characters choose to destroy one of the boats?
9. Why do you think Silver claims the singing voice is not Flint but likely Ben Gun?
10. Why do you think the pirates didn't run away and continued when they heard some frightening voices?
11. The happiness of the pirates changed into a shock. Discuss.
12. What is your opinion about the character of Dr Livesy?
13. If you were Ben Gun, would you cooperate with the pirates for some money? Why? Longman
14. Do you agree that Silver was mysterious? Why? Longman
15. What is the moral lesson of "Treasure Island"? Longman
16. What do you think is the significance of the pointing skeleton? (بورسعيد)
17. What do you think is the emotional impact on the pirates when they discover the treasure is missing? (الشرقية - أبو حماد)

Advanced General Exercises

- Advanced General Exercises
- Advanced General Exercises Answers



Advanced General Exercises

Unit 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We're hoping to .... up the important negotiations this week.
a) explain b) roll c) wrap d) soil

2. There is a/an .... ban حظر on publishing anything concerning the case.
a) relation b) planned c) damaged d) electronic

3. I couldn't .... my laughter after hearing that joke.
a) contain b) include c) evacuate d) spread

4. The hills were covered with a .... of snow during the winter.
a) blanket b) cloth c) germ d) much

5. These lines of the poem are somewhat hard to .... I need to ask my teacher.
a) interact b) interpret c) investigate d) report

6. They made a plan to .... their supervisor because they don't like his policy.
a) relieve b) elect c) reward d) remove

7. The company .... a profit in the first quarter after the new development.
a) returned b) reflected c) realised d) restored

8. The crew .... the boat and tied it to the pole.
a) wrapped b) helped c) rolled d) beached

9. People who are drunk ثمِلون mustn't drive cars. It's ....
a) a mustn't b) prohibition c) allowed d) forbidden

10. .... got to do all these reports in only one day?
a) Do you b) Must you c) Have you d) Can you

11. The meal was for free. You .... for it. You should have asked for your money back.
a) didn't need to pay b) needn't pay
c) didn't have to pay d) needn't have paid

12. You .... him. He was in need of help, but you let him down.
a) should be helped b) ought to have helped
c) could have helped d) must have helped

13. You .... have a high English level to pass the course.
a) mustn't b) don't need c) don't have d) don't have to

14. We can go to school and use the library on Saturday afternoons if you like. But we .... It's not urgent.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) can't d) don't used to

15. I .... watching TV at the time of exams.
a) am not allowed to b) am banned
c) am prohibited d) am forbidden from

16. All the work .... before 10 o'clock yesterday.
a) should do b) shouldn't be done
c) should have done d) should have been done

Unit 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The hotel has been a great success under the new manager's ....
a) direction b) protection c) pressure d) exception

2. The disease is .... from one person to another through the air.
a) communicated b) translated c) pumped d) contacted

3. In this report, the manager laid .... on the need for more training for the employees.
a) pressure b) stress c) press d) strength

4. Please don't enter the classroom while there is a class in ....
a) advance b) develop c) progress d) conflict

5. The minister didn't like the .... way the interviewer was talking to him. He asked him to be more formal.
a) salty b) global c) stressful d) familiar

6. A visit by the President of the USA is .... for the next month.
a) argued b) projected c) devised d) lead

7. The manager tried to .... the conversation away from the subject of money.
a) put b) steer c) click d) run

8. Drawing and writing can be a/an .... for expressing your feelings and ideas.
a) vehicle b) obstacle c) miracle d) marvel

9. If he had frozen food, he .... it at the moment.
a) wouldn't be eating b) won't eat
c) wouldn't eat d) would have eaten

10. .... reading is considered my favourite hobby, I won't buy all these books.
a) Without b) In case of c) If d) Unless

11. They will build a new villa if ....
a) needs b) is needed c) need d) needed

12. If the salary I had .... enough, I wouldn't have left the job.
a) had b) been c) would have d) had been

13. If I had broken bones like Samy, I .... abroad to be treated there.
a) would have travelled b) will travel
c) would travel d) travelled

14. If they found a company of their own, I .... to work there.
a) apply b) would apply c) could apply d) will apply

15. I turned off my mobile phone during the concert .... it rang.
a) unless b) if c) on condition d) in case

16. If it .... for working hard, she wouldn't have money to buy a new car.
a) wasn't b) weren't c) hadn't been d) hadn't had

Unit 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists have often observed this phenomenon, but they cannot .... it.
a) translate b) explain c) realise d) recognise

2. He is very rich, but too .... to buy a car for his family.
a) generous b) lucky c) mean d) artistic

3. Hams has a .... sense of humour. She is very funny.
a) keen b) skill c) mean d) copy

4. I could see the screen clearly as it was at eye ....
a) sight b) level c) advance d) standard

5. As he was a lazy employee, he deserved to be ....
a) promoted b) fined c) fired d) quit

6. The war .... a great number of children and broke their dreams.
a) orphaned b) organised c) recognised d) reformed

7. The boy tried to .... his older brother in all sorts of ways to be like him.
a) measure b) refer c) copy d) avoid

8. The .... sunshine blinded us for a moment.
a) brilliant b) dark c) hidden d) dull

9. When we finished our meal, Ashraf .... on paying the bill.
a) has insisted b) had been insisting c) had insisted d) insisted

10. I invited my friend to the party, but later I realised that I .... to give him the address.
a) forgot b) had forgotten c) has forgotten d) was forgotten

11. While I was on holiday, my camera .... from my hotel room.
a) was disappearing b) had been disappeared
c) disappeared d) had disappeared

12. The bridge .... during the floods but fortunately no one was hurt.
a) was collapsed b) has been collapsed
c) has collapsed d) collapsed

13. The house .... in 2011 belongs to my grandmother.
a) built b) was built c) which built d) building

14. The thief who tried to get in the house was seen and .... by a fierce dog.
a) chasing b) chased c) was chasing d) be chased

15. Look! We are being followed by a man .... a big hat.
a) wears b) being worn c) wearing d) to be wearing

16. .... by his excellent marks, he wanted to join the Faculty of Medicine.
a) Encouraging b) Was encouraged
c) Encouraged d) Were encouraged

Unit 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The stolen car was .... by the police for several miles.
a) developed b) reassured c) pursued d) challenged

2. A couple of boys on their bikes .... down the hill.
a) fasted b) jobbed c) hiked d) careered

3. Language learners .... from using single words to short phrases and sentences.
a) graduate b) regulate c) separate d) protect

4. They .... an agreement in which his company would pay in installments.
a) contracted b) distracted c) contacted d) affected

5. After the accident, the .... were taken to hospital.
a) casualties b) damages c) losses d) shortages

6. I think he wasn't hungry as he .... with his food, but hardly ate any of it.
a) vetted b) toyed c) varied d) relied

7. The meaning of this sentence depends on the .... of the words.
a) part b) construction c) section d) reflection

8. We are going to carry out the project despite its .... risks.
a) follower b) attendant c) correspondent d) slight

9. I .... Osama what I had done before going to the interview.
a) wondered b) didn't know c) asked d) told

10. Ali said he .... and help me at twelve. It's still eight.
a) came b) will come c) would come d) both b & c

11. I wanted to know how much ....
a) the car cost. b) did the car cost? c) the car costs. d) the car had cost?

12. Do you know what ....?
a) Ali's plan is for the weekend b) Ali's plan for the weekend
c) Ali's plan for the weekend has d) Ali's plan for the weekend is

13. He said that he .... to become a manager the following year.
a) would expect b) expects c) will expect d) expected

14. My mother told Amira that she .... better clean up the mess in her room.
a) had had b) had c) was d) both a & b

15. My mother always says that I .... wear warm clothes.
a) will b) shall c) should d) may

16. The doctor suggested .... very spicy foods as they are harmful.
a) eating b) that we eat c) not to eat d) not eating

Unit 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I asked my assistant to read the letter .... to me.
a) loud out b) out loud c) in loud d) loud in

2. There will be a lot of .... for asking your questions later.
a) opportunity b) opponents c) opportunities d) both a & c

3. Don't carry such heavy weights or you will .... a muscle.
a) push b) kill c) pull d) develop

4. In order to sell a product, you need to .... it in the right way.
a) ensure b) preserve c) dedicate d) promote

5. We disagreed with each other on this case, but let's not make a/an .... of it.
a) impact b) issue c) complaint d) tissue

6. She has no job, no home and no means of ....
a) support b) transport c) come d) stock

7. It has been a successful year financially, so in this .... we have been fortunate.
a) wish b) regard c) regards d) progress

8. The pilgrim walked with a ....
a) wheelchair b) stuck c) staff d) stiff

9. I spent the whole night answering the questions .... to me.
a) which sent b) sent
c) which you sent them d) you sent them

10. Do you have any idea .... your father has left his wallet?
a) that b) what c) where d) which

11. We know a lot of people .... lives are hard because of financial problems.
a) who b) no word c) where d) whose

12. Mohamed Salah has become the first Egyptian .... to win the Premier League with his team.
a) who b) which c) that d) no word

13. My father reached a stage .... he began to hate his work.
a) when b) whom c) where d) which

14. I know .... he married her. Because of her money.
a) why b) who c) what d) which

15. Chocolate .... has some health benefits.
a) which is enjoyed worldwide b) that is enjoyed worldwide
c) , which is enjoyed worldwide, d) both a & b

16. Is there a word that can be used to describe a person .... wishes never come true?
a) who b) which c) whom d) whose

Unit 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is no need to get ...., we can discuss the matter in a friendly way.
a) cheerful b) pleasant c) unpleasant d) nosy

2. Boys are usually .... to feel that they should shoulder responsibility.
a) avoided b) conditioned c) attached d) learned

3. In the past, guilty people used to be .... to death instead of being put in prison.
a) divided b) stoned c) rocked d) killed

4. I'm afraid Hatem just isn't .... to the task. We have to find someone else.
a) careful b) special c) equal d) adopted

5. The students .... over the mathematical problem to be able to understand it.
a) disappeared b) ensured c) plotted d) puzzled

6. Hana didn't hear her mother calling at her. She was .... in a book.
a) abandoned b) bored c) buried d) plotted

7. My father decided to make a rose .... in our garden.
a) share b) bed c) article d) close

8. After a short time, he .... his dream of becoming an actor.
a) connected b) mended c) funded d) abandoned

9. You .... have been waiting long. After all, I'm only five minutes late.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) must d) might

10. He found that everything he said on the phone had been reported to the police. His phone .... have been tapped.
a) should b) can't c) will d) must

11. A: You .... remembered to bring me the CD. **B:** No, here it is.
a) must have b) can't have c) can't have been d) must have been

12. It's a good thing you didn't lend him the money. You .... never have got it back.
a) should b) would c) must d) can

13. A: It can't have been easy swimming during the storm. **B:** Of course it ....
a) didn't b) wasn't c) isn't d) doesn't

14. Hello! Ahmed Fadel speaking. I'm sorry, I .... you before now but I've been very busy.
a) should have rung b) must have rung c) have to ring d) ought to ring

15. Don't lie to me that you were ill yesterday. You .... been ill. Soha said you were at a wedding party last night.
a) can't have b) must have c) should have d) might not have

16. A: Will your plane be late this afternoon? **B:** It .... It hasn't even taken off.
a) couldn't be b) maybe c) may be d) will

Answers Advanced General Exercises

Unit 7

1. c) wrap

– بمعنى ينهى /يلخص wrap up.

2. d) electronic

– بمعنى حظر نشر إلكترونى.

3. a) contain

– بمعنى (يحتوى أو يحد من).

4. a) blanket

– بمعنى (طبقة من).

5. b) interpret

– بمعنى يفسر (نصوصًا صعبة الفهم أو التفسير).

6. d) remove

– مع الأشخاص بمعنى (ينحى /يعزل).

7. c) realised

– هنا بمعنى (يحقق) الشركة حققت مكسبًا.

8. d) beached

– هنا بمعنى يركن القارب على الشاطئ (يخرج به إلى اليابسة).

9. d) forbidden mustn't = it is forbidden

10. c) Have you

– لا يمكن استخدام must you لأنه لم يأت بعدها inf.

– وهنا تم استخدام have got to فى صيغة الاستفهام.

11. d) needn't have paid

– لم يكن من الضرورى أن يدفع المال ولكنه دفع.

12. b) ought to have helped

– بمعنى كان ينبغى عليك مساعدته.

13. d) don't have to

– بمعنى ليس من الضرورى.

14. b) don't have to

– التعبير It's not urgent يعنى أنه ليس أمرًا عاجلًا أى ليس من الضرورى القيام به.

15. d) am forbidden from

– نظرًا لوجود الفعل watching.

16. d) should have been done

– الجملة فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

Unit 8

1. a) direction

– بمعنى إدارة أو توجيهات.

2. a) communicated

– بمعنى ينتقل.

3. b) stress

– بمعنى (تأكيد – وضع أهمية على).

4. c) progress

– التعبير in progress بمعنى جار الآن.

5. d) familiar

– بمعنى بلا كلفة أو بشكل غير رسمى.

6. b) projected

– مخطط له.

7. b) steer

– التعبير steer something/somebody away بمعنى يغير مسار.../تفكير.

8. a) vehicle

– بمعنى أداة.

9. c) wouldn't eat

– frozen food مستخدمة بمعنى طعام مجمد وفعل الجملة هنا had.

10. d) Unless

– reading هنا فاعل الجملة.

11. d) needed

if needed = if it is needed.

12. d) had been

– the salary I had هو فاعل الجملة أما فعل الجملة فهو had been لأن الجملة فى الحالة الثالثة.

13. c) would travel

– broken bones معناها عظام مكسورة وفعل الجملة هو had.

14. d) will apply

– الفعل found هنا تصريف أول بمعنى يؤسس.

15. d) in case

– in case بمعنى لربما.

16. b) weren't

– لأن الجملة مستخدمة فى الحالة الثانية ... جملة جواب الشرط فعلها هو wouldn't have فقط ولم يأت بعدها تصريف ثالث.

Unit 9

1. b) explain

- يوضح / يفسر.

2. c) mean

- بمعنى بخيل.

3. a) keen

- بمعنى ثاقب / شديد / حاد.

4. b) level

- فى مستوى نظرى.

5. c) fired

- يتم طرده من العمل.

6. a) orphaned

- كفعل بمعنى يُيَتَّم.

7. c) copy

- فعل بمعنى يقلد.

8. a) brilliant

- بمعنى ساطع.

9. d) insisted

- هو أصر على الدفع (حدث ثان) ويستخدم فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

10. b) had forgotten

- الحدث الأول أنه نسى إبلاغه بالعنوان لذلك استخدم فى زمن الماضى التام.

11. c) disappeared

- الفعل disappear لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة ولا يبنى للمجهول.

12. d) collapsed

- الفعل collapsed لا يبنى للمجهول.

13. a) built

- أصل الجملة the house which was built وحذف which was.

14. b) chased

- and حرف عطف ويتبع بـ P.P.

15. c) wearing

- أصل الجملة who is wearing وحذف who is.

16. c) Encouraged

- اسم مفعول بمعنى مشجعًا.

Unit 10

1. c) pursued

- بمعنى يتعقب وهنا مبنية للمجهول (تم تعقبها).

2. d) careered

- بمعنى يندفع بسرعة.

3. a) graduate

- بمعنى يرتقى أو يتدرج.

4. a) contracted

- بمعنى يوقع / يتعاقد.

5. a) casualties

- المصابون / الضحايا.

6. b) toyed

- بمعنى يعبث.

7. b) construction

- التركيب اللغوى للكلمات.

8. b) attendant

- بمعنى مصاحب أو ملازم.

9. d) told

- what هنا ليست أداة استفهام ولكن أداة ربط فالجملة هنا خبرية.

10. d) both b & c

- الحدث سيتم فى المستقبل لذا يمكن تغيير الزمن أو لا.

11. a) the car cost.

- cost هنا فعل ماضٍ.

12. d) Ali's plan for the weekend is

- فى السؤال غير المباشر يأتى الفاعل بعد أداة الاستفهام.

13. d) expected

- expect لا تأتى بعد will أو would.

14. b) had

- had better لا تتحول وتظل كما هى.

15. c) should

- لأن الجملة تعبر عن النصيحة.

16. d) not eating

- تتبع suggested بصيغة v-ing ويأتى قبلها not للحفاظ على المعنى.

Unit 11

1. b) out loud

- بمعنى (بصوت عالٍ مسموع).

2. d) both a & c

- لأن كلمة opportunity من الممكن أن تكون اسمًا يعد أو لا يعد.

3. c) pull

- التعبير pull a muscle بنفس معنى damage a muscle يمزق العضلة.

4. d) promote

- بمعنى يروج لسلعة.

5. b) issue

- التعبير make an issue of بمعنى يضخم الأمور.

6. a) support

- بمعنى معاش أو إعالة.

7. b) regard

- التعبير in this regard بمعنى (فيما يتعلق بـ أو من هذه الناحية).

8. c) staff

- بمعنى عصا - عكاز.

9. b) sent

- أصل الجملة which were sent = sent

10. c) where

- where هنا أداة استفهام بمعنى أين.

11. d) whose

- lives هنا بمعنى حيوات وهى هنا اسم جمع.

12. d) no word

- the first + شخص + to + inf.

13. c) where

- كلمة stage هنا يقصد بها مرحلة.

14. a) why

- why هنا أداة استفهام بمعنى لماذا.

15. c) , which is enjoyed worldwide,

- الجملة الموجودة فى الاختيارات لابد أن تكون Non-defining relative clause لذلك تأتى بين فصلتين.

16. d) whose

- هنا wishes بمعنى أمنيات وهى هنا اسم جمع.

Unit 12

1. c) unpleasant

- بمعنى غير ودود.

2. b) conditioned

- بمعنى يكيف السلوك.

3. b) stoned

- بمعنى يُرجَم و هنا مبنى للمجهول.

4. c) equal

- كلمة equal to بمعنى كفء لـ.

5. d) puzzled

- التعبير puzzle over بمعنى يفكر مليا.

6. c) buried

- بمعنى غارق فى - مركز فى شيء جدًا.

7. b) bed

- فراش من.

8. d) abandoned

- بمعنى ترك أو تخلى عن.

9. a) can't

- بمعنى بالتأكيد لم تنتظر لفترة طويلة.

10. d) must

- بمعنى بالتأكيد تليفونه مراقب.

11. b) can't have

- بمعنى بالتأكيد لم تتذكر إحضار السى دى.

12. b) would

- بمعنى لن تسترد النقود إن فعلت.

13. b) wasn't

- أصل الجملة it wasn't easy ويمكن الاكتفاء بـ it wasn't فقط لتجنب التكرار.

14. a) should have rung

- كان ينبغى أن أتصل ولم أتصل.

15. a) can't have

- بمعنى بالتأكيد لم يكن مريضًا.

16. d) will

- هنا التأكيد على فعل سيحدث فى المستقبل.

Dictionary

الكلمات الواردة بقطع الفهم وأسئلة الترجمة

الكلمات مرتبة أبجديًا

accessible	يمكن الوصول له / استخدامه
acquire	يكتسب
acquisition	اكتساب
addictive	مدمن
antennae	قرون الاستشعار عند بعض الحشرات
assignment	واجب / مهمة
audience	جمهور / مشاهدون
awe	دهشة / ذهول
blurred	غير واضح / مشوش
brain	مخ
burglar	سارق
captivate	تأسر
cell phone	هاتف خلوى
chilli flakes	شطة
combing and carding	تمشيط وتجهيز (خطوة فى صناعة النسيج)
complex	معقد
contentment	رضا / سعادة
convenient	مناسب / ملائم
convert	يحول
critic	ناقد
cub	جرو / شبل (صغير بعض الحيوانات مثل الأسد)
dawned on me	تبين لى / خطر لى
declare	يعلن
do without	يستغنى عن
drug	دواء / مخدر
enemy	عدو
enigmatic	غامض / مبهم
evidence	دليل
fairy tales	قصص خيالية
fascination	انبهار
fears	مخاوف
fed up	شاعر بالملل / الضجر
flies	ذباب / حشرات
gender	نوع / جنس (ذكر/أنثى)
generation	جيل
get in touch	يبقى على تواصل
gigantic	ضخم
handle	مقبض
human capital	رأس المال البشرى
hysterical	هستيرى / جنونى
income	دخل
indeed	حقًا
inspect	يفتش
intense stimulant	منبه حاد
interruption	تعطيل / توقف
investment	استثمار
irritated	غضبان
jungle	غابة
keyhole	ثقب المفتاح
labour	العمالة

lie down	يستلقى	segregation	التمييز/الفصل العنصرى
lifelike	واقعى/حى	seldom	نادرًا
lioness	لبؤة (أنثى الأسد)	shade	ظل
low-paying	منخفض الأجر	species	أنواع الكائنات الحية
low-skill	منخفض الحرفة/المهارة	starvation	جوع/مجاعة
mad	مجنون/غضبان	strange hours	ساعات غيرساعات العمل
maintain	يحافظ على	subtle	خفى/طفيف
mammals	ثدييات	taffeta weavers	نساجو الحرير
mess	فوضى	telecommuting	العمل عن بعد/من المنزل
natural balance	التوازن الطبيعى	textile industry	صناعة النسيج
notable	ملحوظ	thanks to	بفضل
numerous	عديد	thorough	دقيق/ثاقب
occupation	وظيفة	tiny	متناهى الصغر
panic (panicked/panicked)	يفزع/يرتاب	undisciplined	غيرمنضبط
pay scales	مقاييس الأجور	unjustified	غيرمبرر
peer	قرين	untouched	غيرملموس
popularity	شيوع/شهرة	valuable	ذو قيمة
portrait	لوحة	vast	واسع
profitably	بشكل مفيد	waterhole	بحيرة
quality time	الوقت الذى يقضيه الشخص مع أسرته	wide-open	مفتوح/فى الهواء الطلق
ransack	يسلب/يسرق	wildlife	الحياة البرية
reachable	يمكن الوصول له	willing	راغب فى
reasonable prices	أسعارمعقولة	wireless telephones	هواتف لاسلكية
rheumatism	مرض الروماتيزم	world-famous	مشهورعالميًا

Irregular Verbs

الأفعال غير المنتظمة

الأفعال مرتبة ابجديًا

VERB	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
يكون	be	was/were	been
يضرب	beat	beat	beaten
يصبح	become	became	become
يبدأ	begin	began	begun
يثنى	bend	bent	bent
يكسر	break	broke	broken
يُحضر	bring	brought	brought
يحرق	burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
يشترى	buy	bought	bought
يمسك	catch	caught	caught
يختار	choose	chose	chosen
يكلف	cost	cost	cost
يتعامل/يتاجر	deal	dealt	dealt
يفعل	do	did	done
يرسم	draw	drew	drawn
يشرب	drink	drank	drunk
يقود	drive	drove	driven
يسقط	fall	fell	fallen
يطعم	feed	fed	fed
يشعر	feel	felt	felt
يقاتل	fight	fought	fought
يجد	find	found	found

ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten
يسامح	forgive	forgave	forgiven
يتجمد	freeze	froze	frozen
يحصل على	get	got	got/gotten
يعطى	give	gave	given
ينمو	grow	grew	grown
يعلق	hang	hung	hung
يملك/يتناول	have	had	had
يسمع	hear	heard	heard
يمسك	hold	held	held
يؤذى	hurt	hurt	hurt
يحفظ	keep	kept	kept
يعرف	know	knew	known
يؤدى/يقود	lead	led	led
يتعلم	learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
يرحل/يغادر	leave	left	left
يسلف	lend	lent	lent
يخسر	lose	lost	lost
يعنى	mean	meant	meant
يقابل	meet	met	met
يدفع	pay	paid	paid
يتصل تليفونيًا/يدق	ring	rang	rung
يجرى	run	ran	run
يقول	say	said	said
يرى	see	saw	seen

يبيع	sell	sold	sold
يرسل	send	sent	sent
يهز	shake	shook	shaken
يغطس	sink	sank	sunk
يجلس	sit	sat	sat
ينام	sleep	slept	slept
ينشر	spread	spread	spread
يقف	stand	stood	stood
يسرق	steal	stole	stolen
يأخذ	take	took	taken
يدرس	teach	taught	taught
يخبر	tell	told	told
يفكر	think	thought	thought
يلقى	throw	threw	thrown
يفهم	understand	understood	understood
يرتدى	wear	wore	worn
يكتب	write	wrote	written



رقم الإيداع: ٢٠١١٦/٢٠٢٤
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:
١٤٢/٢/١٢/١٠٤
خدمة العملاء: 16766


AL ADWAA
Gem
1st SEC
SECOND TERM
ONGOING ASSESSMENT, SKILLS & FINAL REVISION
NEW HELLO!
2025

Contents

Part 1

Part 2

Skills

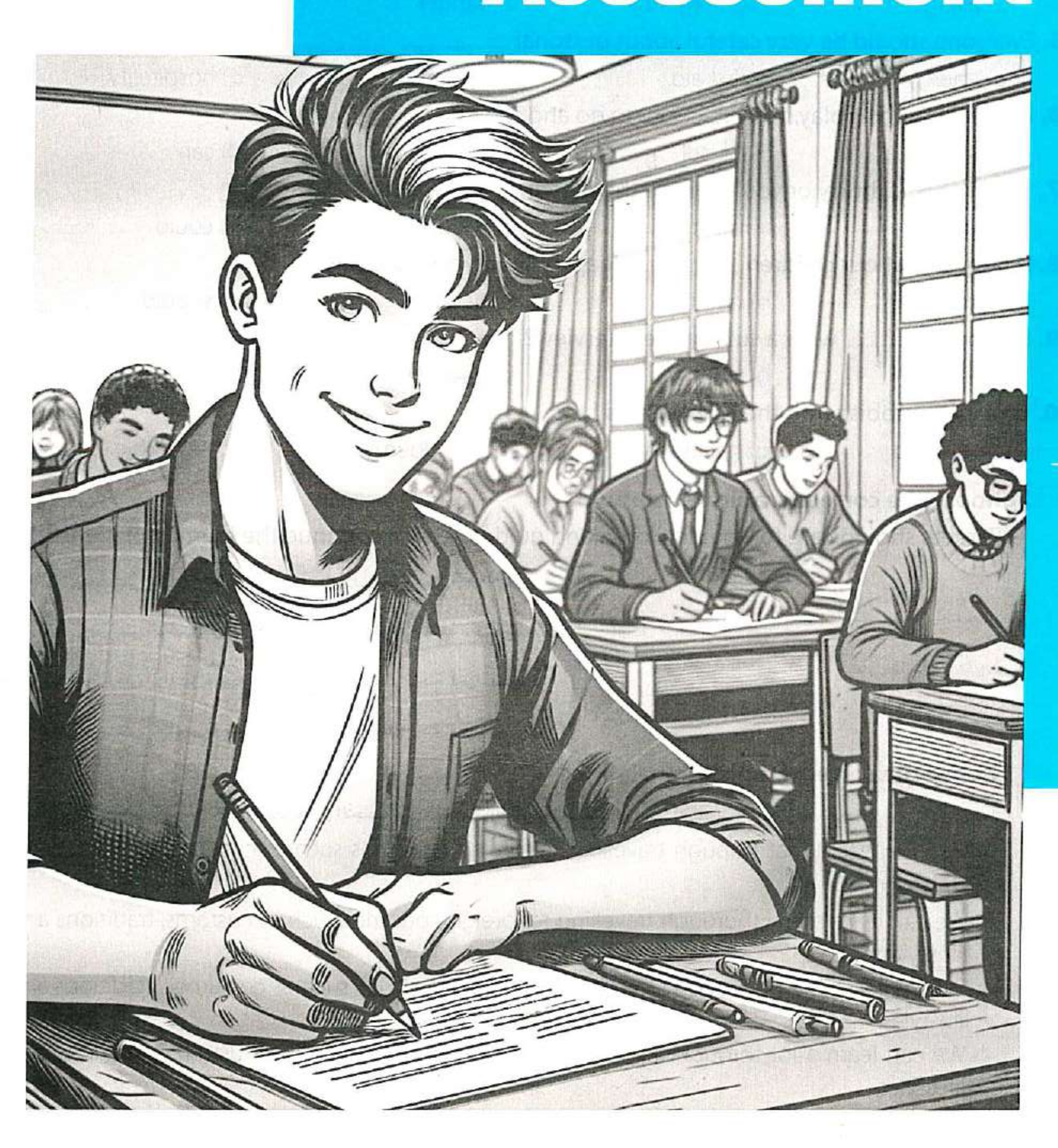
Part 3

General Revision

Part 4

Part 1

Ongoing Assessment



Unit 7 Quiz 1 on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To remove all the bacteria, you should use warm, ... water.

a) soapy b) soupy c) dusty d) soap

2. Bacteria can live in ...., so it is better to change it at least once every two weeks.

a) leaflet b) bedding c) breathing d) allergy

3. It is healthy to use a/an .... when you sneeze.

a) issue b) ingredient c) sponge d) tissue

4. You must clean the table as it is full of ....

a) allergy b) emergency c) danger d) dust

5. Everyone should be very careful about personal ....

a) energy b) first aid c) hygiene d) hospitality

6. It is really a good play. You .... to go and see it.

a) should b) must c) ought d) can

7. You .... hurry or you will miss the meeting.

a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) could

8. I suggest that our children .... sleep early and get up early.

a) must b) need c) needn't d) should

9. Do you .... wear a suit for the interview?

a) should b) must c) have to d) could

10. Dropping rubbish into the Nile water is ....

a) allowed b) necessary c) forbidden d) advisable

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Parents should care for their children and guide them to continue the journey of life safely.

a) يجب على الوالدين ضيافة ورعاية أبنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بأمان.

b) يجب على الوالدين توجيه ورعاية أبنائهم ليمشوا فى رحلة الحياة بسرعة.

c) يجب على الوالدين توجيه ورعاية أبنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بسعادة.

d) يجب على الوالدين توجيه ورعاية أبنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بأمان.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

– نستطيع أن تتعلم الكثير من خلال السفر للدول الأجنبية مثل العادات والتقاليد وأساليب الحياة.

a) Can we teach a lot through travelling to foreign countries such as customs, traditions and lifestyles.

b) We can learn many thorough travelling to foreign countries such as customs, traditions and lifestyles.

c) Can we learn many through travelling to foreign countries such as costumes, traditions and lifestyles.

d) We can learn a lot through travelling to foreign countries such as customs, traditions and lifestyles.

Unit 7 Quiz 2 | on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If he doesn't leave ...., he'll be late for the meeting.
   a) surprisingly b) difficultly c) immediately d) differently
2. I haven't seen my friend for many years, so I took some time to .... him.
   a) recognise b) know c) realise d) remind
3. I'm late for the meeting, so I should ....
   a) insult b) apologise c) thank d) offer
4. My friend was taken to hospital with serious .... as their house had a fire.
   a) complaints b) smoke c) smell d) burns
5. Ali was ...., so we visited him at home.
   a) apologised b) injured c) evacuated d) explained
6. Yesterday, we .... meet our boss before starting our work.
   a) must b) have to c) needn't d) had to
7. Why didn't you tell me that yesterday was a national holiday? I .... to school.
   a) needn't have gone b) needn't go c) didn't have to go d) had to go
8. Ramy .... smoke again; his life will be endangered.
   a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) needn't d) shouldn't
9. I have already cleaned the car, so you .... clean it.
   a) needn't b) mustn't c) don't need d) shouldn't
10. I watched the film, but I .... the match.
    a) might not have watched b) could watch
    c) could have watched d) can watch

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Overpopulation is one of the most serious problems that faces our society and needs urgent solutions.

a) إن الزيادة السكانية تعتبر واحدة من أهم المشكلات التى تواجه مجتمعنا وتحتاج إلى حلول عاجلة.

b) إن الناس الزائدة تعتبر واحدة من أخطر المشكلات التى تواجه مجتمعنا وتحتاج إلى حلول تقليدية.

c) إن السكان الزائدين يعتبرون من أخطر المشكلات التى تساعد مجتمعنا وتحتاج إلى حلول عاجلة.

d) إن الزيادة السكانية تعتبر واحدة من أخطر المشكلات التى تواجه مجتمعنا وتحتاج إلى حلول عاجلة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- ينبغى أن نحافظ على نظافة مدننا وحمايتها من التلوث وآثاره المدمرة على جميع الكائنات الحية.

a) We should keep our cities clear and protect them from population and its destructive effects on all living creatures.

b) We should keep our cities clean and wash them from pollution and its destructive affects on all living creatures.

c) We should keep our cities clean and protect them from pollution and its destructive effects on all living creatures.

d) We should keep our cities clean and protect them from pollution and its constructive effects on all living creatures.

Unit 8 Quiz 3 | on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These voices are very .... to every one of us. We are used to them.
a) strange b) familiar c) dangerous d) unfamiliar

2. Before Rashid ...., he will choose his destination and make a plan.
a) finds out b) gets around c) comes around d) gets across

3. Try to control your .... on the highway to avoid accidents.
a) internet b) link c) map d) vehicle

4. GPS helps us to .... our journey from a place to another.
a) arrange b) prepare c) navigate d) move

5. A: I want to know the .... between Cairo and Aswan. **B:** About 800 km.
a) distance b) duration c) way d) road

6. If I .... the same problems you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.
a) have b) would have c) should have d) had had

7. If we .... enough time, we would have the chance to win.
a) have b) had c) had had d) has

8. If there .... a fire, call the firemen at once.
a) is b) was c) had been d) are

9. .... more help, I could tell the police.
a) Needed b) Should I need c) Unless I need d) I should need

10. If you heat ice, it .... into water.
a) turned b) turns
c) would turn d) would have turned

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Doctors have proved that those who don't smoke at all live a longer and healthier life. Therefore, the number of smokers has greatly decreased.

a) لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقًا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة لذا تناقص عدد المدخنين كثيرًا.
b) لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من يدخنون كثيرًا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة لذا تناقص عدد المدخنين كثيرًا.
c) لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقًا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة لأن عدد المدخنين تناقص كثيرًا.
d) لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقًا يعيشون حياة أقوى وأكثر صحة لذا قل عدد المدخنين كثيرًا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- عندما ينقطع التيار الكهربي تتوقف حركة مرور مترو الأنفاق وتزدحم المحطات بالركاب.

a) When the power goes out, the underground stops and stations are crowded with passengers.
b) When the power goes out, the underground stands and stations are crowded with riders.
c) When the lights go out, the underground stops and stations are crowded with passers-by.
d) When the power goes off, the traffic stops and stations are empty from passengers.

Unit 8 Quiz 4 | on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Young people like to .... with each other on the internet.
a) understand b) chat c) draft d) walk

2. I like those who always give us .... energy to be able to succeed in life.
a) negative b) talkative c) chemical d) positive

3. I watched a wonderful .... about the causes of some disasters.
a) review b) chat c) documentary d) comment

4. Smoking has a bad effect .... our health.
a) of b) in c) at d) on

5. Not everything in modern technology is good. There're surely some ....
a) advantages b) merits
c) GPS d) disadvantages

6. .... he to hurry, he would catch his friend before leaving home.
a) Had b) If c) Should d) Were

7. .... Sara seen us, she would have come and talked to us.
a) If b) Should c) Were d) Had

8. .... I had been with them, I wouldn't have enjoyed the beauty of the Red Sea.
a) Unless b) If c) Without d) In case

9. We .... the game if we'd had a few more minutes.
a) might have won b) could have been won
c) would win d) will win

10. .... he studies hard, he'll be able to join the faculty of medicine.
a) Unless b) should c) If d) In case

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Governments should increase food production to put an end to the problem of starvation by reclaiming vast areas of desert land.

a) يجب على الناس مضاعفة إنتاج الغذاء لوضع حد لمشكلة المجاعة عن طريق استصلاح مساحات شاسعة من الأراضى الصحراوية.

b) يجب على الحكومات زيادة إنتاج الغذاء لوضع حد لمشكلة الزراعة عن طريق استصلاح مساحات شاسعة من الأراضى الصحراوية.

c) يجب على الحكومات زيادة إنتاج الغذاء لوضع حد لمشكلة المجاعة عن طريق استصلاح مساحات شاسعة من الأراضى الصحراوية.

d) يجب على الحكومات زيادة إنتاج الغذاء لوضع حد لمشكلة المجاعة عن طريق استصلاح مساحات ليست بقليلة من الأراضى المهجورة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يمكن أن يكون للبرامج التعليمية والمنصات الإلكترونية دور كبير فى النهوض بالعملية التعليمية.

a) The educational programs and online platforms have a big role to upgrade the educational process.

b) The educational programs and online platforms can have a big role to upgrade the educational process.

c) The school programs and online platforms can have a big role to upgrade the educational operation.

d) The educational programs and online platforms can have a big role to uproot the educational process.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sameh was too .... when he didn't accept my apology in front of our friends.
   a) merciful b) cruel c) keen d) kind
2. Companies have found that good .... brings good results in sales.
   a) ignorance b) sleeping c) secretary d) advertising
3. My friend is a/an .... His father and mother died in an accident last year.
   a) housekeeper b) orphan c) author d) governess
4. I learnt to .... a fire when I was in the last camp with captain Mahmoud.
   a) have b) make c) do d) carry
5. The .... told the reporter that he had spent years writing that book.
   a) reader b) electrician c) author d) maker
6. I .... to bed until I had done my homework.
   a) hadn't gone b) don't go c) won't go d) didn't go
7. After we .... to the news on TV, we went out for a walk.
   a) has listened b) had listened c) would listen d) have listened
8. The match, ... in Cairo Stadium, was very amazing and enjoyable.
   a) was played b) which played c) playing d) played
9. The play "Romeo and Juliet" .... by William Shakespeare.
   a) had written b) was being written c) has written d) was written
10. The radio .... many years ago.
   a) is invented b) was invented c) had invented d) invented

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- In developed countries, they choose the suitable person for the suitable situation, which make them both happy and successful at the same time.

a) فى القارات النامية يختارون الشخص المناسب فى المكان المناسب، مما يجعله سعيدًا وناجحًا فى نفس الزمان.

b) فى البلدان القوية يختارون الشخص القوى فى المكان المناسب، مما يجعله سعيدًا وناجحًا فى نفس الوقت.

c) فى البلدان المتقدمة يختارون الشخص المناسب فى المنصب المناسب، مما يجعله سعيدًا وناجحًا فى نفس المكان.

d) فى البلدان المتقدمة يختارون الشخص المناسب فى المكان المناسب، مما يجعله سعيدًا وناجحًا فى نفس الوقت.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- إن الجهود التى تبذل من أجل تحسين الصحة لا يمكن أن تتم بنجاح إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

a) The effort which is exerted to improve health can't be successfully achieved without the co-operation between the individuals and the government.

b) The efforts which are exerted to improve health can't be successfully achieved with the co-operation between the individuals and the government.

c) The effort which is exerted to improve healthy can be successfully achieved without the helping between the individuals and the government.

d) The efforts which are exerted to decline health can't be successfully achieved without the co-operation between the individuals and the government.

Unit 9 Quiz 6 on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all must stand against .... that hurts many people especially children.
   a) arguing b) bullying c) encouraging d) changing
2. Everyone thinks I'm a good problem .... which makes them ask me about everything.
   a) maker b) laugher c) loser d) solver
3. We all .... what our parents do to help us succeed.
   a) appreciate b) find c) ignore d) decrease
4. We should learn from our .... to succeed later. Never give up!
   a) age b) failure c) success d) abilities
5. I lost my mobile phone, as a ...., I couldn't contact anyone for help.
   a) reason b) waste c) consequence d) confidence
6. No sooner .... the film than he slept.
   a) he watched b) had he watched c) he had watched d) does he watch
7. When I arrived home last night, I discovered that my wife .... all the housework alone.
   a) was finished b) had finished c) has finished d) would finish
8. When I had reached the office, my colleagues .... So, I could tell them what I needed.
   a) had left b) will leave c) left d) were left
9. Having .... her work, mother went to bed.
   a) do b) she did c) done d) she had done
10. .... by the police, the criminal was taken to prison.
   a) After arresting b) Having arrested
   c) Having been arrested d) On arresting

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Healthy people are usually proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For an unhealthy person, life is no more than pain and suffering.

a) دائمًا ما يفخر الأصحاء بما يستطيعون تحقيقه فى مجالات الرياضة والعمل الصعب، أما بالنسبة لغير الأصحاء فالحياة ليست إلا سفرًا ومعاناة.

b) عادة ما يفتخر الأصحاء بما يستطيعون تحقيقه فى مجالات الرياضة والعمل الشاق، أما بالنسبة لغير الأصحاء فالحياة ليست إلا ألمًا ومعاناة.

c) عادة ما يفتخر الأصحاء بما يستطيعون تحقيقه فى مجالات الرياضة والعمل الصلب، أما بالنسبة لغير الأصحاء فالحياة ليست إلا ألمًا ومعاناة.

d) عادة ما يفتخر الأصحاء بما يستطيعون تحقيقه فى حقول الرياضة والعمل الشاق، أما بالنسبة لغير الأصحاء فالحياة ليست إلا سفرًا ومعاناة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

– يعتبر معرض القاهرة الدولى للكتاب أكبر وأقدم معرض للكتاب فى الوطن العربى.

a) Cairo International Book Fair is considered the largest and oldest book fair in the Arab world.
b) The Cairo National Book Show is considered the largest and oldest book show in the Arab world.
c) Cairo International Book Fair is considered the largest and newest book fair in the Arab world.
d) The Cairo International Book Show is considered the largest and oldest book show in the world.

Unit 10 Quiz 7 on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The literature course has been too long, but very ....
   a) stressful b) rewarding c) legal d) medical
2. Working for long hours is very .... It is not easy at all.
   a) practical b) stressed c) reliable d) stressful
3. To solve the problem of unemployment, the state tries to develop new ....
   a) chemistries b) degrees c) industries d) contracts
4. The smile on the nurse's face .... us that our friend became in a good condition.
   a) discouraged b) connected c) reassured d) frightened
5. My son is very popular .... his friends at school as he is a sociable person.
   a) in b) with c) by d) at
6. Ali .... his brother that his uncle wanted to meet them.
   a) said b) asked c) told d) wondered
7. Tom told his father that he .... the car the following day.
   a) would clean b) will have cleaned c) had cleaned d) cleaned
8. They said that they would meet us if they .... we were there.
   a) have known b) knew c) had been knowing d) know
9. Wael said that he .... to bring his books with him.
   a) forgets b) had forgotten c) has forgotten d) was forgot
10. Shaker said that he was studying his lessons ....
   a) following week b) week after
   c) the previous week d) then

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- It's probably a good idea for people who live close to mobile phone masts to get their health checked frequently.

a) محتمل أن تكون فكرة جيدة للأشخاص الذين يعيشون بالقرب من أبراج الهواتف المحمولة لفحص صحتهم غالبا.

b) ربما تكون فكرة جيدة للأشخاص الذين يعيشون بالقرب من أبراج الهواتف المحمولة أن يفحصوا صحتهم باستمرار.

c) حتمًا إنها فكرة جيدة للأشخاص الذين يعيشون بالقرب من أبراج الهواتف المحمولة لفحص صحتهم بشكل متزايد.

d) من المحتمل أن تكون فكرة جيدة للأشخاص الذين يعيشون بجانب أشرعة الهواتف المحمولة لفحص صحتهم بشكل متكرر.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تقوم المرأة المصرية بدور حيوى فى كل مناحى الحياة وتساهم بقدر كبير فى تقدم بلادها.

a) The Egyptian women plays a vital role in all fields of life and contributes greatly to her country's progress.

b) The Egyptian woman played a vital role in all walks of life and contributes greatly to their country's progressive.

c) The Egyptian woman plays a vital role in all walks of life and contributes greatly to her country's progress.

d) The Egyptian woman play a vital rule in all fields of life and contributes greatly to her country's progress.

Unit 10 Quiz 8 on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... start their day early when they take their animals to the fields and feed them.
   a) Assistants b) Bakers c) Plumbers d) Farmers
2. I can't .... a career as an office clerk. I like moving around in my job.
   a) decide b) fancy c) adapt d) pay
3. Hatem feels .... although he lives abroad without a family or a friend there.
   a) ill b) confident c) doubtful d) wrong
4. Mr Adel is a very clever teacher. He has great .... in teaching.
   a) experiences b) expert c) experiment d) experience
5. Ali always comes on time. He is a very .... person.
   a) lazy b) gradual c) punctual d) disloyal
6. He asked his sister .... he could go out with her.
   a) what b) that c) to d) if
7. Mona .... how she should tell her friend the bad news.
   a) asked b) said c) told d) want to know
8. They want to know when .... to Cairo to meet my new employer.
   a) I would travel b) I will travel c) would I travel d) are you travelling
9. Nour didn't .... me how she would go to the club.
   a) wonder b) tell c) say d) wander
10. Ayman asked me where .... the previous day.
    a) did I go b) I went c) had I gone d) I had gone

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Leadership has a role we cannot do without. A good leader inspires their people and guides them on the road of progress and prosperity.

a) للقيادة دور لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنه، والقائد الجيد يلهم شعبه ويرشدهم إلى سبيل التقدم والازدهار.

b) القيادة تلعب دورًا لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنه، والقائد الجيد يلهم أهله ويرشدهم إلى سبيل التقدم والازدهار.

c) تلعب القيادة دورًا لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنه، والقائد الجيد يلهم قومه ويرشدهم إلى سبيل الاستمرار والازدهار.

d) القيادة هى دور لا يمكننا أن نفعل بدونه، والقائد الجيد يلهم شعبه ويرشدهم على طريق التقدم والازدهار.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تعتبر الكلية مكانا شيقًا للتعلم ولتكوين الصداقات والتى ستستمر مدى الحياة.

a) Colleague is considered an exciting place to learn and to make friends that will last a lifetime.
b) School is considered an exciting place to learn and to do friends that will last a lifetime.
c) College is considered an exciting place to learn and to make friends that will last a lifetime.
d) University is considered an excited place to learn and to make friends that will last a lifetime.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amina eventually .... her goal of becoming a professor.
   a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved
2. My brother is a/an .... who defends people's rights everywhere.
   a) athlete b) powerlifter c) activist d) runner
3. The company...................... for the quality of its products which improved a lot.
   a) achieved b) applied c) inspired d) campaigned
4. The price reduction is due to .... among traders.
   a) competition b) completion c) replacement d) achievement
5. My son Mohammed has a/an .... but he can walk slowly.
   a) impact b) muscle c) disability d) achievement
6. We went to the beach .... Ashraf had recommended to us.
   a) where b) who c) what d) which
7. This is the street .... we live with our lovely neighbours.
   a) where b) when c) which d) who
8. The mobile .... was so expensive but a really modern one.
   a) which I bought it b) I bought it c) which bought d) I bought
9. My sister Huda had always wanted to go to a place .... she could find comfort and peace in.
   a) which b) where c) for which d) whose
10. Ramy is my friend .... father is a great doctor.
   a) who b) whom c) whose d) that

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- To be good citizens in the future, children need to grow in an atmosphere of love and family warmth.

a) لكى يصبح الأطفال مواطنين صالحين فى المستقبل، فإنهم يحتاجون إلى النمو فى غلاف جوى من الحب والدفء الأسرى.

b) حتى يصبح الأطفال مواطنين صالحين فى المستقبل، فإنهم يحتاجون إلى النمو فى غلاف جوى من الحب والسخونة الأسرية.

c) حتى يصبح الأطفال مواطنين طيبين فى المستقبل، فإنهم يحتاجون إلى الكبر فى بلورة من الحب والدفء الأسرى.

d) لكى يصبح الأطفال مواطنين صالحين فى المستقبل، فهم يحتاجون إلى التنشئة فى جو يسوده الحب والدفء الأسرى.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- الأسعار المرتفعة ونقص الطعام هما المشكلتان الرئيستان التى تعانى منهما كل دول العالم.

a) High prices and lack of food are the two major problems that all world countries suffer from.
b) Up prizes and lack of food the two major problems that all world countries suffer from.
c) High prices and lack of food are the two major problems that all world continents suffers from.
d) Full prices and lake of food is the two major problems that all world countries suffer from.

Unit 11 Quiz 10 | on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should .... our Olympic athletes in their preparation for the coming championship.
   a) bother b) support c) qualify d) repair
2. My father works in the United Company for years. This means he is an experienced .... there.
   a) unemployment b) employment c) employee d) employer
3. The word "annoy" has the same meaning as ....
   a) brother b) satisfy c) please d) bother
4. My teeth hurt, so I can't eat this .... rice.
   a) undercooked b) cooked c) delicious d) juicy
5. I like all my .... who are in the same company with me.
   a) colleges b) colleagues c) classmates d) friendship
6. I can't really know .... you mean by these words.
   a) that b) why c) which d) what
7. This is the man .... house we rent our new flat.
   a) whose b) in which c) in whose d) which
8. I admire all novels and stories .... by Tawfik Al-Hakeem.
   a) wrote b) written c) were written d) which written
9. I didn't get a pay rise, but this wasn't the reason .... I left the job.
   a) as b) why c) what d) which
10. The match .... by the charity was a fantastic one.
   a) organising b) organised c) was organised d) which organised

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Our deserts are one of the chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems.

a) تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة. ولو أعطيناها الاهتمام اللازم يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العديد من المشاكل.

b) تعد صحارينا واحدة من الموارد الرئيسية للثروة. ولو أعطيناها اهتمامًا مطلوبًا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى ومواجهة العديد من المشاكل.

c) تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للمال. ولو أعطيناها اهتمامًا بالغًا يمكننا زيادة المال العام وحل العديد من المشاكل.

d) تعد أراضينا الصحراوية واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة. ولو أعطيناها اهتمامًا جادًا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العديد من القضايا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب علينا ترشيد الاستهلاك فى المياه والكهرباء والطعام وذلك لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.

a) We must rationalise usage of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in costs.
b) We have to rationalise consumption of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in prices.
c) We have to rationalise production of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in prices.
d) We have to rationalise consumption of water, electric and food to face the increasing rise in prices.

Quiz 11 | on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where are my keys? They seem to have ....
a) appeared b) missed c) disappeared d) lost
2. You shouldn't put your .... in such a liar. He tried to deceive me before.
a) debt b) trust c) distrust d) dislike
3. My lawyer .... that I was not guilty, so I wasn't sent to prison.
a) proved b) disproved c) refused d) denied
4. I think it is not easy to .... the political problems in the Middle East area.
a) bury b) attend c) disappear d) solve
5. Stealing the money from my wardrobe was a .... and till now we haven't caught the thief.
a) mystery b) decision c) proof d) presence
6. That is not Ahmed's car. He .... it from his parents.
a) must have borrowed b) must borrow
c) might borrow d) can't have borrowed
7. Nadal usually wins the matches he plays. He .... a very talented tennis player.
a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been
8. It is .... for all of us to have healthy dental habits.
a) advice b) necessity c) forbidden d) a must
9. Hala .... the task; it takes 3 days, and she only started this morning.
a) must have completed b) can't have completed
c) might have completed d) might complete
10. Mona looks happy. She .... her driving test.
a) must pass b) may pass c) can't pass d) must have passed

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The High Dam means to any Egyptian, the water that irrigates the land and protects people from drought, and the electricity that operates factories and lights houses up.

a) إن السد العالى يعنى لكل مصرى مياهًا تروى الأرض وتحمى الشعب من قحط الجفاف وكهرباء تجرى فى مصانعه وتشعل منازله.

b) إن السد العالى يعنى لكل مصرى مياهًا تروى الأرض وتحمى الشعب من قحط الجفاف وكهرباء تدير مصانعه وتضىء منازله.

c) إن السد العالى يعنى لكل مصر مياهًا تزرع الأرض وتحمى الشعب من قحط الجفاف وكهرباء تدير مصانعه وتضىء منازله.

d) إن السد الضخم يعنى لكل فرد مياهًا تروى الأرض وتتغلب على الشعب من قحط الجفاف وكهرباء تدير مصانعه وتضىء منازله.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- تشجع الحكومة رجال الأعمال المصريين على إنشاء المصانع واستصلاح الأراضى خاصة فى سيناء والمناطق الصحراوية.

a) The government asks the Egyptian businessmen to set up factories and reclaim the lands especially in Sinai and dessert areas.
b) The government encouraged the Egyptian business women to build factories and reclaim the lands specially in Sinai and dessert areas.
c) The government encourages the Egyptian businessmen to set up workshops and reclaim the lands especial in Sinai and desert areas.
d) The government encourages the Egyptian businessmen to set up factories and reclaim the lands especially in Sinai and desert areas.

Unit 12 Quiz 12 on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a fictional story about .... that frighten young children at night.
   a) monsters b) wheels c) activists d) themes
2. We can store our large quantities of goods in the ....
   a) workhouse b) warehouse c) farmhouse d) sports house
3. This story has a good .... It is the value of cooperation and teamwork.
   a) theme b) page-turner c) solution d) end
4. This book is a ....; I strongly recommend it.
   a) thin-paper b) theme c) page-turner d) value
5. This car belongs .... Mona. She has just bought it.
   a) at b) in c) with d) to
6. Seham missed the train. She .... up early.
   a) must get b) must have got c) can't get d) can't have got
7. Fish .... breathe outside water.
   a) can b) must c) mustn't d) can't
8. You .... for my permission before using my computer. I am really angry.
   a) should ask b) must have asked c) should have asked d) needn't ask
9. Gamal .... his friends, but he decided to stay at home to watch TV.
   a) could have visited b) must have visited c) should have visited d) should visit
10. Ramadan .... to Europe; he can't speak English.
   a) couldn't have gone b) must have gone
   c) mustn't have gone d) could go

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The efforts exerted to improve health can't be successively achieved unless the individuals cooperate with the government.

a) إن التأثيرات التى تبذل من أجل تحسين الصحة لا يمكن أن تتم بنجاح إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

b) إن الجهود التى تبذل من أجل تحسين الصحة لا يمكن أن تتم بنجاح إذا تعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

c) إن الجهود التى تبذل من أجل تحسين الصحة لا يمكن أن تتم بنجاح إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

d) إن الجهود التى تبذل من أجل توفير الصحة لا يمكن أن تتم بنجاح إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

– من حقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية ولكن يجب أن تحترم رأى الآخرين.

a) You are the right to express your opinion for free, but you ought to respect others' opinions.
b) You have the right to listen to your opinion freely, so you ought to respect other opinions.
c) You have the right to consider your opinion freely, but you should to respect others opinions.
d) You have the right to express your opinion freely, but you ought to respect others' opinions.

Part 2

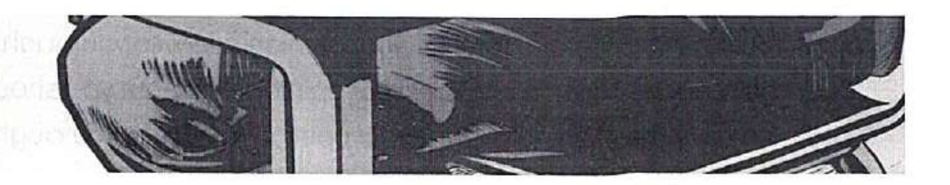
SKILLS



(1) Reading Comprehension

(2) Writing

(3) Translation



Comprehension Exercises

Passage No. 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A year ago, a close friend of mine decided to get married and invited me to the wedding party. Of course, I accepted his invitation. The wedding was to be held in a small village which was not near the town. I was to travel with another friend in his small car. We were already twenty miles from the town when I remembered that I had left the wedding present at home. That was the beginning of a chapter of accidents. First, we had to go back to get the present. Then, we were held up for a long time because of a road accident in front of us. My friend was hungry, and he insisted on stopping for lunch. We were only ten miles from the village when we found ourselves behind a giant lorry on a narrow road which made it impossible for us to pass it. Suddenly there was a loud bang followed by a hissing noise, and the car nearly went off the road. We had a puncture and had to stop to change the tyre. When we arrived, there were still a few people left at the reception. An old man told us that the couple had gone off on their honeymoon half an hour before. I think I should have left the present where it was.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There were few people because ....
- a) their friend invited few people
- b) most guests had left
- c) most people didn't attend
- d) the hall was very small

2. The writer and his friend arrived ....
- a) too early for the wedding
- b) just on time
- c) earlier than others
- d) too late

3. The passage tells us how they ....
- a) travelled to the village but failed to congratulate their friend
- b) congratulated their friend
- c) attended the whole wedding
- d) left with their friend

4. The car nearly went off the road because ....
- a) the tyre had a puncture
- b) the engine had stopped
- c) there was no petrol in the tank
- d) it had an accident

5. They missed the wedding because ....
- a) they had an accident on their way
- b) they were behind a giant lorry they couldn't pass
- c) they wanted to change their plan
- d) both a & b

6. From the passage, the word which means a small hole in a tyre is a ....
- a) couple
- b) puncture
- c) close
- d) reception

7. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
- a) lorry
- b) road
- c) car
- d) present

Passage No. 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When I got to the airport, I learnt that the plane, on which my brother was travelling, had been delayed in Paris with engine trouble and was expected to be about an hour late. I had a headache, so I decided to walk around to make the time pass quickly.

First of all, I went back to my car to make sure that all the doors were locked. The walk in the fresh air did me good. I made my way to the restaurant inside the airport where I ordered a cup of black coffee. I studied the faces of the people around me. Some passengers were obviously anxious about the time and kept looking at their watches; others checked to see that they had tickets, passports and money.

When I finished my coffee, I bought a couple of magazines, then I went into one of the waiting rooms and made myself comfortable in a big armchair. I had hardly had time to open one of my magazines when someone came up and put his hand on my shoulder. It was an old friend who was just about to leave on a business trip to South America. Since we had not seen each other for a long time, we found plenty to talk about until the arrival of my brother's plane from Paris was announced.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why was the plane expected to be an hour late?

a) Because it had engine trouble.
b) Because the engines made a loud noise.
c) Because the passengers had to check their tickets and passports.
d) To make sure that all the doors were locked.

2. It was clear that some people were anxious about the time when they ....

a) looked happy
b) burst into tears
c) looked sad
d) kept looking at their watches

3. According to the text, the writer and his old friend ....

a) had met after a long period of missing each other
b) had met each other after his brother's plane arrival
c) were travelling to South America
d) had nothing to talk about

4. From the passage, the word which is similar in meaning to "worried" is ....

a) fresh
b) plenty
c) anxious
d) comfortable

5. The writer met his old friend ....

a) at the car park
b) at the counter
c) in the restaurant
d) in one of the waiting rooms

6. The writer decided to walk around to ....

a) meet his brother
b) buy something to eat
c) kill time
d) meet some friends

7. What made the writer feel slightly better is ....

a) drinking coffee
b) looking at people's faces
c) studying the faces around
d) walking in the fresh air

Passage No. 3

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When you cut your skin, you bleed. Everyone knows that. If a person loses a great deal of blood, they will become ill and may die. At one time, people drank blood to make themselves strong. When doctors understood how blood went around inside the body, they tried ways of giving blood to people who needed it. They used a rubber tube to take blood from healthy people and give it to people who needed it. This is called a blood transfusion. The blood went through a rubber tube from the arm of the healthy person into the arm of the sick person.

But there were two problems. First, it did not always work. Sometimes people died. Later, doctors found the reason for this. We do not all have the same kind of blood. There was another problem. To give blood of the right kind, the doctors had to find a person of the right blood group. Often, they could not find a person in time.

If they had a way to keep the blood until someone needed it, they could always have the right kind of blood. In the end, they found a way to keep blood for a very long time. Now people can give or donate blood every three months if they want to. The blood is put in bottles and then kept until someone needs it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People .... when they cut their skin.

a) die
b) bleed
c) lead
d) breathe

2. In the past, people drank blood to be ....

a) weak
b) health
c) ill
d) strong

3. To give someone blood is called a blood ....

a) transfusion
b) transportation
c) transmission
d) transaction

4. Now doctors can keep blood for ....

a) 15 minutes
b) 20 minutes
c) a long time
d) a short time

5. People don't usually have .... blood group.

a) the same
b) different
c) alike
d) similar

6. To give something useful to someone means to ....

a) bleed
b) transform
c) need
d) donate

7. Losing a great deal of blood may cause ....

a) sleep
b) death
c) damage
d) transfusion

Sk'

Passage No. 4

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you have to miss one meal a day, which meal will cause you the fewest health problems? Most people, if given the choice, especially those who are on a diet or very busy, will choose to skip breakfast. Many experts in the field of health consider breakfast the most important meal of the day. If we eat a good breakfast, we will have energy to begin our working day. However, many people skip breakfast or take a cup of tea instead of a well-balanced meal, which is important for the body.

Special tests and a recent study were set up to show the importance of breakfast. The result showed that if a person eats an adequate breakfast, they will work more efficiently and more productively than if they skip breakfast or eat a very poor one.

The study showed that if school children eat a good breakfast before going to school, they will learn more quickly and be able to concentrate more on their lessons for a longer period of time. The study also showed that, contrary to what many people believe, if you skip breakfast, you won't lose weight. This is because people become so hungry that they eat too much for lunch and end up gaining weight, not losing weight.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the passage, when we don't eat breakfast, ...

a) our bodies lose energy
b) we lose weight
c) our concentration increases
d) we begin our working day

2. .... set up special tests to show the importance of a balanced meal before going to work.

a) Hungry people
b) Teachers
c) Students
d) Experts

3. Most people would skip breakfast for ....

a) special tests
b) a snack
c) a cup of tea
d) a poor breakfast

4. The underlined word "skip" is similar in meaning to ....

a) take
b) give
c) miss
d) have

5. People may eat too much ....

a) when they don't eat breakfast
b) when they do morning exercises
c) if they work less
d) if they are fat

6. Special tests were organised to analyse how participants' bodies functioned when ....

a) they had skipped breakfasts
b) they had had supper
c) they had eaten special breakfasts
d) they had had all three meals

7. Our bodies need ....

a) skipping breakfast
b) a cup of tea
c) a well-balanced breakfast
d) much food

Passage No. 5

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dear Amal,

In your last email, you told me about your aunt. I am very impressed that she is going to get a degree in law now that her children have left home. You asked me if I knew anyone elsewho had studied when they were older. I don't know anyone, but I heard about an amazing woman in a report on the radio. The report said that a woman had started primary school at the age of 90! The woman, whose name is Priscilla Sitienei, lives in a poor rural village in Kenya. When she was younger, she was not able to go to school. She worked for 65 years as a nurse. Although she was good at her job, she never learned to read or write.

In 2003, the government of Kenya said that primary school would be free for everyone for the first time. Priscilla wanted to learn to read and write, so she decided to go to primary school with six of her great-great-grandchildren. She said that it was never too late to learn new skills, and she wanted to inspire other adults to do the same.

The head teacher of the school said that Priscilla was loved by every pupil and that they all wanted to learn and play with her. At break, she tells the other pupils about the customs that she grew up with.

At the end of the report, Priscilla said that she wanted to tell the world's children that with education, they could be whatever they wanted. She is certainly a remarkable woman!

Best wishes,

Azza

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why is Azza impressed by Amal's aunt?

a) She has a university degree.
b) Her children have left home.
c) She is learning to read.
d) She is studying for a degree, though she's old.

2. What does Priscilla hope to achieve, as well as learning at school?

a) She wants a new job.
b) She wants pupils to inspire her.
c) She wants to inspire children to learn.
d) She wants to write a book.

3. Why do you think that Priscilla did not go to primary school when she was a child?

a) There weren't schools at that time.
b) Her family could not pay for her education.
c) She did not want to learn.
d) She didn't know the way.

4. What is the main idea of the text?

a) It is never too late to learn.
b) Old people must go to school.
c) Schools in Kenya.
d) Nurses can get different jobs.

5. What do the underlined words "anyone else" refer to?

a) Any other people.
b) Any aunts.
c) Any.
d) Any relatives.

6. What do you think the word remarkable means?

a) Very old.
b) Very kind.
c) Very clever.
d) Unusual in a way that is surprising.

7. The article stated that .... is the most important thing to do what you want.

a) strength
b) money
c) education
d) reading

2 Writing الكتابة

General Exercises

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED FIFTY (150) words on the following topics:

1. Why one would choose to be a teacher if they had the choice.
2. Advantages and disadvantages of using the computer.
3. Society is the real home for all of us.
4. Keeping your environment clean is a must.
5. Money is the root of all evil, but it's a way to happiness.
6. Your dream house.
7. Overpopulation and its negative effects on the development of our country.
8. Your own ideas to develop the educational system in Egypt.
9. Women and their positive role in our life.
10. Sport and its relation to our physical and mental health.
11. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
12. One of your favourite hobbies, and how you can develop it.
13. A nice journey you had with your close friends.
14. A person you consider a role model.
15. Making use of your free time.
16. Can robots help in the field of industry?
17. Educated people find it easy to get a job, while uneducated ones find it hard.
18. Have you ever thought of an idea to solve the problem of throwing rubbish in the streets?
19. Who's the most amazing person in the world?
20. Does working hard mean working with your muscles?

3 Translation الترجمة

General Exercises

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Many countries build dams to store large amounts of water, especially in the rainy season, to make use of it in the drought season and also to generate electricity.

a) تبنى العديد من الدول السدود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار؛ لتستفيد منها فى فصل الشتاء وأيضًا لتوليد الكهرباء.
b) تبنى العديد من الدول السدود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار؛ لتستفيد منها فى موسم الجفاف وأيضًا لتوليد الكهرباء.
c) تبنى العديد من الدول الأسوار لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار؛ لتستفيد منها فى موسم الجفاف وأيضًا لتوليد الكهرباء.
d) تبنى العديد من الدول السدود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار؛ لتستفيد منها فى موسم الجفاف وأيضًا لاستهلاك الكهرباء.

2. Science fiction is one of the best ways to express the future. It is thought that science fiction works predicted a lot of inventions.

a) الخيال العلمى من أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل. من المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الاختراعات.
b) العلوم من أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل. من المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من المخترعين.
c) القصص العلمية من أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل. من المعتقد أن أعمال القصص تنبأت بالكثير من الاختراعات .
d) يعتبر الخيال العلمى من أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل. أعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الاكتشافات.

3. Global trade leads to a big economic growth in different regions all over the world. So, all the world's countries aim to greatly develop it.

a) تؤدى التجارة المحلية إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم؛ لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

b) تؤدى التجارة العالمية إلى نمو اقتصادى عظيم فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم؛ لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتوسعتها بشكل كبير.

c) تؤدى التجارة العالمية إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء البلد؛ لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

d) تؤدى التجارة العالمية إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم؛ لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

4. The new traffic law is extremely strict. It aims at protecting the lives of innocent citizens from the recklessness of some drivers.

a) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية فهو يهدف إلى حماية ممتلكات المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين.

b) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية فهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الطيبين من تهور بعض السائقين.

c) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية فهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من هدوء بعض السائقين.

d) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية فهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين.

5. Our national income has many resources. There are stable and unstable ones. But tourism, oil, the Suez Canal, and taxes are the most important ones.

a) لدخلنا القومى العديد من المصادر بعضها أساسى والبعض الآخر غير أساسى، ولكن تبقى السياحة والبترول وقناة السويس والضرائب الأكثر أهمية.

b) يملك دخلنا القومى مصادر عدة بعضها ثابت والبعض الآخر غير ثابت، ولكن تبقى السياحة والبترول وقناة السويس والضرائب هى الأكثر أهمية.

c) لدخلنا القومى العديد من المصادر بعضها ثابت والبعض الآخر غير ثابت، ولكن تبقى السياحة والوقود ومدينة السويس والضرائب هى الأكثر أهمية.

d) يمتلك دخلنا القومى مصادر عديدة بعضها ثابت والبعض الآخر غير ثابت، ولكن تبقى السياحة والزيت وقناة السويس والضرائب الأكثر أهمية.

6. Do you think that man's committing crimes in society is connected to their aggressive nature or is a result of the circumstances around them?

a) هل تعتقد أن ارتكاب الإنسان للجرائم فى المجتمع مرتبط بعدوانية الإنسان الصناعية أم أنها نتيجة للظروف المحيطة به؟

b) هل تعتقد أن ارتكاب الإنسان للجرائم فى المجتمع مرتبط بعدوانية الإنسان الطبيعية أم أنها بسبب الشروط المحيطة به؟

c) هل تعتقد أن ارتكاب الإنسان للجرائم فى المجتمع مرتبط بطبيعته العدوانية أم أنه نتيجة للظروف المحيطة به؟

d) هل تعتقد أن ارتكاب الإنسان للجرائم فى المجتمع مرتبط بمحبة الإنسان الطبيعية أم أنها نتيجة للظروف المحيطة به؟

7. Setting up productive projects helps to provide job opportunities for unemployed youth who are looking for jobs, so they help them start a good life.

a) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم فى بدء حياة جيدة.

b) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب المتقاعد الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

c) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بدء حياة جديدة.

d) تساعد إقامة المشروعات المستهلكة على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

8. Practising sports is something good for the young and the old alike. It benefits people physically and mentally at the same time.

a) ممارسة الرياضيات شىء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص بدنيًا وعقليًا فى أوقات مختلفة.

b) ممارسة الرياضيات شىء غير مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص بدنيًا وعقليًا فى نفس الوقت.

c) ممارسة الرياضة مفيدة للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص ذهنيًا وعقليا فى نفس الوقت.

d) ممارسة الرياضة شىء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص بدنيًا وعقليًا فى نفس الوقت.

9. The development of the educational system should be a flexible, ongoing process that requires thinking outside the box.

a) إن تطور النظام التعليمى ينبغى أن يكون عملية مرنة مستمرة تحتاج إلى اعتقاد خارج الصندوق.

b) إن تجديد النظام التعليمى ينبغى أن يكون عملية مرنة مؤقتة تحتاج إلى تفكير خارج الصندوق.

c) إن تطوير النظام المدرسى ينبغى أن يكون عملية مرنة مستمرة تحتاج إلى تفكير داخل الصندوق.

d) إن تطوير النظام التعليمى ينبغى أن يكون عملية مرنة مستمرة تحتاج إلى تفكير خارج الصندوق.

10. Education is no doubt the cornerstone of the progress of a nation. When a country invests in education, it signs a contract with welfare and prosperity.

a) إن التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الزاوية لتأخر الأمة. فعندما تستثمر دولة ما فى التعليم، فإنها توقع عقدًا مع الرفاهية والازدهار.

b) إن التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الزاوية لتقدم الأمة. فعندما تستثمر دولة ما فى التعليم، فإنها توقع عقدًا مع الرفاهية والإزدهار.

c) إن التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الأساس لتقدم الأمة. فعندما تستثمر دولة ما فى التعليم، فإنها تشير إلى عقد مع الرفاهية والازدهار.

d) إن التعليم بكل شك هو حجر الزاوية لتقدم الأمة. فعندما تستثمر دولة ما فى التعليم، فإنها توقع عقدًا مع الرفاهية والازدهار.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. يجب الاهتمام بتربية أطفالنا وتنشئتهم اجتماعيًا لكى يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين فى المستقبل.

a) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become good citizens in the future.

b) We have to care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become good citizens in the near future.

c) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become righteous employees in the future.

d) Should we care about bringing out our children and their socialisation to become good citizens in the future.

2. تطوير التعليم والارتقاء بمستوى المعلم والعملية التعليمية من أهم الأهداف التى يجب تحقيقها فى المستقبل.

a) Developing education and promoting the standard of the teacher and the educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.

b) Developing education and promoting the standard of the teacher and the educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the present.

c) Developing education and promoting the standard of the teacher and the educational operation are of the most important aims that should be achieved soon.

d) Developed education and promoting the standard of the teacher and the educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.

3. الصديق الحقيقى هو شخص موجود دائمًا من أجلك ويجانبك ويساعدك على إيجاد حلول لمشاكلك.

a) A real friend is someone who is always there for you and stands besides you. They help you find solutions to your problems.

b) A true friend is someone who is always there for you and stands in front of you. He helps you find solutions to your problems.

c) A true friend is someone who is always there for you and sits beside you. They help you find answers to your problems.

d) A true friend is someone who is always there for you and stands by your side. They help you find solutions to your problems.

4. تحقق الأمم التقدم بالعلم والثقافة والتخطيط الجيد والعمل الجاد وكل ذلك ينتج من التعليم الجيد.

a) Countries achieve progress thorough science, culture, good planning and hard work. This can result from good education.

b) Nations achieve progress through science, culture, good planning and hard work. This can result in good education.

c) Nations achieve progress through science, culture, good planning and hard work. This can result from good education.

d) Nations achieve application through science, culture, good planning and hard work. This can result from good education.

5. تلعب مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى دورًا مهمًا فى حياتنا، سواء كانت الاجتماعية أو العملية أو حتى التعليمية.

a) Social networking sites play an important rule in our lives, whether it is social, practical or even educational.

b) Social network sites play an important role in our lives, whether it is social, practical or even educational.

c) Social networking sites play an important role in our lives, whether it is social, practical or even educational.

d) Social media cities play an important role in our lives, whether it is social, work or even educational.

6. العمل الجماعى هو وسيلة لتحقيق الأهداف وإنجاز الأعمال، كما أنه طريقة لتبادل الخبرات.

a) Teamwork is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to exchange experience.

b) Individual work is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to exchange experience.

c) Teamwork is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to change experience.

d) Teamwork is a means to achieve goals and finish work as it is a way of exchange experiences.

7. توفر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة فرص عمل جذابة للاستثمار لدعم الاقتصاد الوطنى وتحقيق التنمية المستدامة.

a) The New Capital provides attractive investment opportunities to support the international economy and achieve sustainable development.

b) The New Administrative Capital saves attractive investment opportunities to support the national economy and achieve sustainable development.

c) The New Administrative Capital provides attractive investment opportunities to support the national economy and achieve sustainable development.

d) The New Capital provides attractive investment opportunities to import the national economy and achieve sustainable development.

8. تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لتمكن المواطن المصرى من مواجهة تكلفة المعيشة المرتفعة.

a) The government does better to enable the Egyptian citizen to face the low cost of living.

b) The government does the best to unable the Egyptian citizen to face the high cost of living.

c) The government does it's best to enable the Egyptian citizen to face the high cost of living.

d) The government does its best to enable the Egyptian citizen to face the high cost of living.

9. لولا الذكاء الاصطناعى لظل الإنسان يقوم بالعمليات الحسابية يدويًا، الأمر الذى يستغرق ساعات طويلة مرهقة.

a) If not we have AI, man would keep making calculations physically which takes long tiring hours.

b) If we hadn't had AI, man would make calculations physically which takes long tiring hours.

c) But for AI, man would keep making calculations manually which takes long tiring hours.

d) But for AI, man would have kept making calculations in hands which takes long tiring hours.

10. تعد البطالة هى التحدى الأكثر صعوبة فى كثير من المجتمعات لذا يجب القضاء عليها.

a) Not working is the most difficult challenge in many communities, so we must eliminate it.

b) Unemployment is the most difficult challenge in many societies, so we must support it.

c) Unemployment is the most difficult challenge in many societies, so we must eliminate it.

d) Unemployment is the hardest challenge in many associations, so we must eliminate it.

Part 3

General Revision

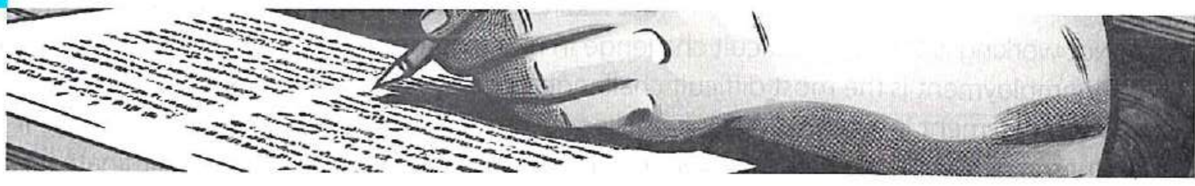


Revision on Module (4) (Units 7 & 8)

Revision on Module (5) (Units 9 & 10)

Revision on Module (6) (Units 11 & 12)

Treasure Island Revision



Study... **Revision on Module 4** | Units 7 & 8


Vocabulary

Unit (7) — أهم مفردات الوحدة السابعة

allergy (n)	حساسية	dust (n)	غبار/تراب	immediate (adj)	فورى
bacteria (plural) (n)	بكتيريا (جمع)	emergency services (n)	خدمات طوارئ	immediately (adv)	فى الحال
bedding (n)	الشراشف (ملايات السرير)	evacuate (v) – d	يخلى (مكانًا)	research (n)	البحث العلمى
blanket (n)	بطانية	expert (n)	خبير	respond (v) – ed	يستجيب/يرد
breathe (v) – d	يتنفس	first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	safety (n)	سلامة/أمان
breathing (n)	التنفس	grow (v)	ينمو	soil (n)	التربة الزراعية
burn (n)	حرق	health (n)	صحة	wrap (v) - ped	يلف
CPR (n)	عملية التنفس الصناعى	healthy (adj)	صحى (سليم صحيًا)		
danger (n)	خطر	hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية		

Unit (8) — أهم مفردات الوحدة الثامنة

air-conditioning (n)	نظام تكييف الهواء	comment (n) (v) – ed	تعليق/يعلق	navigate (v) – d	يوجه
app (n)	تطبيق على التليفون المحمول	familiar (adj)	مألوف	notice (v) – d (n)	يلاحظ/ملاحظة
benefit (n)	فائدة	feedback (n)	التغذية الراجعة (رد الفعل لشىء ما)	quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
chat (n) (v) – ted	دردشة/يدردش	find out (v)	يكتشف	robot (n)	إنسان آلى
choice (n)	اختيار	GPS (n)	نظام تحديد المواقع	translation (n)	ترجمة
choose (v)	يختار	invention (n)	اختراع	vehicle (n)	مركبة
click (n) (v) – ed	ضغطة (على الماوس)/يضغط	machine (n)	ماكينة/آلة		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions — أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

a click of a button	ضغطة على زر	do ... homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلى	make a mistake	يخطئ
as often as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع	do/perform CPR	يقوم بعمل التنفس الصناعى	make sure	يتأكد
at the door	عند الباب	dos and don'ts	ما يجب فعله وما لا يجب فعله	move away from	يتحرك بعيدًا عن
at the weekend	فى نهاية الأسبوع	get angry	يغضب	on ... computer	على الحاسب الآلى
at least	على الأقل	get lost	يتوه/يضل الطريق	on their own	بمفردهم
cycle around town	يتجول بالدراجة حول المدينة	have an argument with	لديه جدال مع	post online	ينشر على الإنترنت

protect ... against	يحمى ... ضد/من ...	coming up	قادم	know about	يعرف عن
putting parts together	تجميع أجزاء معًا	communicate with	يتواصل مع	lead to	يؤدى إلى
receive advice	يتلقى نصيحة	complain about	يشكو بشأن	live in	يعيش فى
stay calm	يبقى هادئًا	connect to	يتصل بـ	live on	يعيش على
get nervous	يتوتر	contact with	الاتصال بـ	look at	ينظرإلى
get around	يتجول/ينتقل من مكان لمكان	decide on	يقرربشأن	on fire	محترق
go out	يخرج	effect on	تأثيرعلى	ride on	يركب على
give advice	ينصح	fall on	يسقط على	shout at	يصرخ فى
give directions	يعطى اتجاهات	familiar with	مألوف لدى	sorry for	يأسف على
go abroad	يسافرللخارج	feel about	يشعربشأن	take action	يتخذ قرارًا
go down	يقل	find about	يكشف عن	take air in and out	يستنشق ويزفرالهواء
go online	يتصل بالإنترنت	go into	يدخل فى	think of / about	يفكرفى
agree with	يتفق مع	help with	مساعدة فى	useful for	مفيد لـ
belong to	ينتمى لـ/يخص	home for/to	موطن لـ	walk around	يتجول
change into	يتغيرإلى	interested in	مهتم بـ	worried about	قلق بشأن

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/conceal	ينكر
annoying	مزعج	disturbing/troublesome	pleasant/agreeable	سار/مقبول
argue	يجادل	debate/discuss/dispute	agree/harmonise	يتفق
argument	جدال	disagreement/debate	agreement/harmony	اتفاق/انسجام
avoid	يتجنب	evade/avert	face/support	يواجه/يدعم
careful	حريص	cautious/attentive	careless/reckless	مهمل / متهور
completely	تماما	totally/entirely	incompletely/partially	جزئيًا/غيركامل
danger	خطر	hazard/insecurity	safety/security	أمان
evacuate	يخلى (مكانًا)	abandon/empty	remain/stay	يظل
exactly	بالضبط	absolutely/accurately	nearly/doubtfully	تقريبًا
extreme	مبالغ فيه/شديد	severe/acute	moderate/mild	معتدل
fail	يفشل	break down/decline	succeed/pass	ينجح
interpret	يفسر	clarify/define	confuse/mix up	يربك

leave	يغادر	depart/abandon	arrive/reach	يصل
messy	فوضوى	untidy/disorderly	tidy/ordered/organised	مرتب
respond	يستجيب	reply/answer/react	ignore/request	يتجاهل/يتوقف
stressful	مجهد	exhausting/disturbing	relaxing/comfortable	مريح
terrible	فظيع/رهيب	horrible/awful	wonderful/amazing	رائع
understanding	فهم	grasping/comprehension	misunderstanding/ misinterpretation	إساءة الفهم
worried	قلق	anxious/troubled	calm/relaxed	هادئ/مريح

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**soil**	تربة زراعية
	earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب
	ground	أرض الشارع
	land	اليابسة
	floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة
2	**contain**	يحتوى على (بداخله)
	include	يشتمل على/يتضمن
	consist of	يتكون من
3	**journey**	رحلة/سفر: السفر من مكان إلى آخر (وخاصة السفر الطويل)
	trip	رحلة قصيرة لغرض معين
	voyage	رحلة بحرية
	flight	رحلة جوية
4	**electric (adj)**	كهربائى؛ أى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات والأجهزة)
	electrical (adj)	كهربائى؛ أى يتعامل مع الكهرباء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)
	electricity (n)	الكهرباء
	electrician (n)	عامل/فنى كهرباء
	electronic (adj)	إلكترونى
5	**(be) able to + (inf.)**	قادر على
	(be) capable of + (v-ing)	قادر على
	(have) the ability to + (inf.)	لديه القدرة على
	(someone/something) + enable + (someone/something) + to + (inf.)	... يُمكِّن ... من ...

Practice... Module (4) Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

Group 1

1. It's illegal to use the fire alarm except in case of ....

a) fluency b) allergy c) frequency d) emergency e) danger

2. Exams can sometimes be stressful. The antonyms of the word "stressful" are "....................".

a) difficult b) impossible c) comfortable d) hard e) relaxing

Group 2

1. Pollution has a .... effect on your health.

a) good b) serious c) dangerous d) fine e) proper

2. Your grandfather is .... well to the new medicine. I hope he will get better soon.

a) feeling b) responding c) replying d) reacting e) answering

Group 3

1. How many factory workers are in danger of losing their jobs? The antonyms of the word "danger" are "....................".

a) hazard b) freedom c) safety d) difficulty e) security

2. You must .... calm! Your father is sleeping.

a) make b) stay c) do d) wait e) keep

Group 4

1. The teacher said some useful advice to us. The synonyms of the word "useful" are "....................".

a) hurtful b) beneficial c) harmful d) fruitful e) accurate

2. Pregnant women should avoid certain foods such as raw eggs. The synonyms of the word "avoid" are "....................".

a) avert b) face c) confuse d) evade e) provide

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. The.................... was done by a team of smart scientists at Mansura University.

a) enquiry b) enquire c) research d) reserve

2. What are the .... of eating an apple a day?

a) inventions b) benefits c) navigations d) controls

3. It's very hot here. Why not take .... that woollen jacket?

a) out b) in c) off d) down

4. Her face is very .... I think I have met her somewhere.

a) familiar b) useful c) cultural d) unknown

5. My friend Ali has a/an .... to pepper. He never eats it.

a) allergy b) bacteria c) hygiene d) bedding

6. Before inventing the GPS, explorers used to .... by the stars.

a) control b) notice c) navigate d) relax

Group 2

1. A/An .... is an invention that can carry out people's different orders.

a) vehicle | b) robot | c) air-conditioner | d) fridge

2. Lack of .... between friends is very destructive in their relationship.

a) dishonesty | b) leaflet | c) trust | d) tissue

3. If you travel to Alex, you can use public transport to get ....

a) around | b) up | c) better | d) over

4. I soaked my trousers in some .... water and the stains بقع came out.

a) soapy | b) soup | c) muddy | d) rainy

5. Have you locked your ....? If you don't, someone may steal it.

a) vehicle | b) internet | c) link | d) map

6. My friend Dave didn't .... to any of my emails. I'm worried about him.

a) trust | b) agree | c) respond | d) apply

Group 3

1. Some tourists use maps in Cairo to get ....

a) in | b) round | c) around | d) random

2. All children should be taught road .... rules from an early age.

a) health | b) cuts | c) sponge | d) safety

3. Your photos can be viewed with a .... of a button.

a) navigation | b) kick | c) control | d) click

4. The number of students at the college has .... from 2000 to 2500.

a) doubled | b) grown | c) decreased | d) left

5. .... that all the doors are locked, please.

a) Look | b) Research | c) Check | d) Pull

6. I'm worried about my friend's .... He is very ill.

a) health | b) wealth | c) links | d) trust

Group 4

1. If you cut raw meat on a .... board, you should wash it well before using it for vegetables.

a) chopping | b) shopping | c) shipping | d) clicking

2. His illness is a direct .... of drinking polluted water.

a) cause | b) result | c) reason | d) justification

3. Bacteria like to .... in warm, wet places like a kitchen sponge.

a) plant | b) make | c) grow | d) plant

4. We went .... for a meal, then we watched a film.

a) in | b) with | c) out | d) on

5. Nobody swept the floor for a long time, and .... went everywhere.

a) dust | b) bin | c) leaflet | d) hygiene

6. There have been major new developments in laser .... in the medical field.

a) technology | b) invention | c) internet | d) robot

Group 5

1. My father was furious when he found .... that his money had been stolen.

a) in　b) at　c) on　d) out

2. A .... is a container for putting waste in. It should be at all homes.

a) pin　b) pan　c) pen　d) bin

3. Mr Ashraf was praised for the great .... he had done.

a) culture　b) project　c) guilt　d) position

4. Egypt has always had a rich .... around the River Nile since ancient times.

a) soil　b) floor　c) ground　d) earth

5. I wasn't .... with the area so I asked about the nearest bakery.

a) famous　b) known　c) familiar　d) similar

6. After the accident, I stood and waved to warn other drivers of the ....

a) dust　b) danger　c) breath　d) research

Group 6

1. A computer is a .... for storing a lot of information and using programs.

a) device　b) vehicle　c) consequence　d) robot

2. The enclosed medical .... contains all the information about the medicine.

a) service　b) leaflet　c) memory　d) bedding

3. The bakery can't install an air .... system as it will not work properly.

a) ventilator　b) drying　c) freshening　d) conditioning

4. The operation of breathing into someone's mouth and pressing on their chest to make them breathe again is called ....

a) CRC　b) CBC　c) CPR　d) MBC

5. Before starting the class, I like to .... for ten minutes to get ready.

a) notice　b) navigate　c) grow　d) relax

6. At ...., you should listen to his explanation before accusing him.

a) least　b) latest　c) numbers　d) times

Group 7

1. Dolphins use sound to .... with each other.

a) tell　b) report　c) communicate　d) reveal

2. Young children should learn how to .... road accidents.

a) agree　b) doubt　c) avoid　d) follow

3. I bought my husband a present and .... it in an attractive way.

a) burnt　b) evacuated　c) broke　d) wrapped

4. The airport was quickly .... after receiving a bomb threat.

a) evacuated　b) escaped　c) wrapped　d) damaged

5. All the staff of the restaurant should be careful about good .... in kitchen areas.

a) allergy　b) hygiene　c) leaflet　d) toilet

6. The town is cut off from .... with the outside world.

a) contact　b) contract　c) connect　d) communicate



Unit 7

(should – shouldn't) (must – mustn't)

لاحظ كيفية استخدام should – shouldn't للنصيحة والكلمات التى تساويهما:

should + inf.		shouldn't + inf.	
It's better to It's a good idea to It's desirable to It's advisable (for + object) to I advise you to You had better If I were you, I'd It is important to	inf.	It's better not to It's a good idea not to It's undesirable to It's inadvisable to I advise you not to You had better not If I were you, I wouldn't It is important not to	inf.

- I advise you to (not to) come to the meeting.
  = You should (not) come to the meeting.
  = You had better (not) come to the meeting.
  = If I were you, I would (not) come to the meeting.
  = It's (not)/ (in)advisable for you to come to the meeting.

لاحظ كيفية استخدام must – mustn't للإلزام والمنع والكلمات التى تساويهما:

must		mustn't	
It's necessary to It's obligatory to فاعل + be obliged to فاعل + need to	inf.	It's against the law to It's illegal to It's prohibited to It's banned to It's forbidden to It's not allowed	inf.

- You must drive slowly on this highway.
- It is necessary to drive slowly on this way.
- You must come to visit us tomorrow.
- I strongly advise you to eat healthy food.
- You must eat healthy food.

Unit 8

If Conditionals

- If + present simple .... present simple — حقيقة (حالة صفرية)

If you boil water, it turns into steam.

- If + present simple .... (will – can – may – should) + inf. — احتمال حدوث الفعل فى الحاضر أو المستقبل (الحالة الأولى)

If he comes late, he will (may) be punished.

You should sleep early if you want to get up early.

- If + past simple .... (would – could – might) + inf. — عدم احتمال حدوث الفعل فى الحاضر أو المستقبل (الحالة الثانية)

If they told me the truth, I would (could) help them.

If she were a doctor, she could (would) examine us.

- Unless = If + نفى — إذا لم (تعط معنى النفى)

Unless he studied hard, he would fail.

= If he didn't study hard, he would fail.

بدائل If

- without + noun/v.ing But for + noun — لولا

Ali will miss the bus without running fast.

But for teachers, we wouldn't be able to achieve progress.

- In case of + noun — فى حالة

In case of fire, call the emergency number.

- If = provided = provided that = providing = as long as = on condition that — فى الحالة الأولى

- You can take the car keys provided you get around the villa only.

- Should + فاعل + inf. .... (will – would) + inf. — الحالة الأولى والثانية

Should Hala do her best, she will (would) come first.

- Were + فاعل + to + inf. .... (would + inf.) — الحالة الثانية

Were he to go to school early, he would meet his friends.

- Were + فاعل + (صفة – وظيفة) .... (would/could + inf.)

Were he a policeman, he could help us. = If he were a policeman, he could help us.

Practice...

Module (4)
Language Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. You are getting fat. You .... to go to the gym more often.

a) should b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) need

2. You .... eat food that smells bad. It can be poisonous سام.

a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) needn't d) oughtn't

3. You .... wash your hands if you have touched an infected bird.

a) should b) mustn't c) had to d) will

4. I will come to attend the meeting if ....

a) is necessary b) it necessary c) necessary d) was necessary

5. If we found a new company, we .... your help.

a) would need b) will need c) would have needed d) needed

6. We wouldn't have good marks if we didn't study hard, but we .... hard.

a) study b) studied c) will study d) didn't study

Group 2

1. We .... help our neighbours with their problems yesterday.

a) had to b) must c) have to d) will have to

2. You mustn't smoke in hospitals. It is ....

a) necessary b) banned c) advisable d) mustn't

3. We .... get up early because it was a holiday, so we slept till late.

a) needn't b) needn't have to c) didn't have to d) mustn't

4. They shouldn't have wasted their time. They didn't get the marks they wanted. This sentence expresses ....

a) blame b) necessity c) prohibition d) deduction

5. If he .... much time, he'll attend the party tonight.

a) has b) will have c) have d) had

6. Hurry up. If you run very fast, you .... the train.

a) would catch b) will catch
c) won't catch d) would have caught

Group 3

1. .... I have a ticket to go to this concert or it's free?

a) Can b) Could c) Ought to d) Must

2. You were wrong. You .... this bad thing.

a) should do b) should have done
c) shouldn't have done d) needn't do

3. I couldn't find any room to stay in, so I .... sleep in my car.

a) must b) had to c) have to d) shouldn't

4. If my watch .... right, I wouldn't have to fix it.

a) will be b) had been c) were d) is

5. Plants die if they .... enough water.

a) didn't get b) won't get c) wouldn't get d) don't get

6. Sara will phone me .... that is important for her.

a) on condition b) unless c) provide d) in case of

Group 4

1. You .... sleep early to be able to catch the early train.

a) would better b) shouldn't c) had better d) prefer

2. You aren't allowed to park your car here. This sentence shows ....

a) necessity b) advice c) possibility d) prohibition

3. You have so many suits. I think you .... get a new one.

a) need to b) needn't c) mustn't d) should

4. If there is a big problem, I usually .... my teacher's advice.

a) will ask b) ask c) would ask d) asks

5. .... early to the company, the boss wouldn't be angry.

a) If he comes b) Unless he came c) Had he come d) Were he to come

6. What .... she feel if she read this offensive email?

a) did b) does c) will d) would

Group 5

1. You .... remember to bring your ticket or they won't let you in.

a) must b) has to c) shouldn't d) had to

2. It is getting too late. I .... go now.

a) don't have to b) had to c) need d) have to

3. If you want to lose weight, you .... eat too many carbohydrates.

a) needn't b) mustn't c) oughtn't d) don't need

4. If I .... enough money, I would buy a second-hand car. Really, I don't have.

a) has b) had c) have d) hadn't had

5. .... he to know the good news, he would jump to his feet.

a) Had b) Would c) Were d) If

6. Mona won't pass her exams .... being helped by her parents.

a) without b) in case of c) provided that d) unless

Group 6

1. I'm sorry, you .... speak loudly in the library.

a) have to b) needn't have c) mustn't d) don't have to

2. You .... drive so fast inside towns; we are not allowed.

a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) had to

3. You .... come and be with me all the day. It's my wedding party.

a) must   b) ought   c) shouldn't   d) mustn't

4. If I .... you a secret, would you promise not to tell anyone?

a) tell   b) will tell   c) told   d) have told

5. If she were happy in her job, she .... looking for another one.

a) won't   b) would be   c) wouldn't be   d) wasn't

6. If there is much traffic, you .... be patient.

a) should   b) would   c) will   d) ought

Group 7

1. You should .... water before you spill it into the cup.

a) to boiling   b) to boil   c) boils   d) boil

2. The sign says, "No smoking", so you .... smoke here.

a) mustn't   b) shouldn't   c) couldn't   d) needn't

3. You .... to help poor and needy people when they ask for help.

a) must   b) shouldn't   c) ought   d) can

4. If I were rich, I would buy this expensive car. But unfortunately I ....

a) wasn't   b) am not   c) can't be   d) haven't

5. .... walking is a good exercise, I will try my best to do this.

a) If   b) Unless   c) Without   d) In case of

6. Which sentence is structurally correct?

a) Were he clever, he will pass all his exams.
b) Were he to clever, he would pass all his exams.
c) Were he be clever, he would pass all his exams.
d) Were he clever, he would pass all his exams.

Practice... Module (4) Skills Question Bank

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Passage No. 1

Improving education is a significant issue. Technology can be used to improve teaching and learning and help our students be successful. It can be a "force multiplier" for the teacher. Instead of the teacher being the only source of help in a classroom, students can access online lessons and more to assist them.

Education doesn't stop at the end of the school day because students have access to teachers and resources at any time. Students can also get help and tutoring at any time, whether from the teachers by email or in online groups. They can connect with students at other schools and do collective work with them.

Parental contribution is another factor that can increase students' achievement. Thanks to technology, parents can go to a class website and see what their child is working on; they can contact teachers by email and websites; and they can even check their child's attendance and grades through online systems.

Teachers can use technology to find resources and attend virtual professional development seminars and conferences. They can also create personal learning networks and other resources to find and share ideas and resources and get support from their colleagues.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the passage, technology can .... education.

a) enhance b) imped c) evaluate d) limit

2. According to the passage, technology is a means which ....

a) helps with learning only
b) improves healthcare
c) serves teachers and learners
d) helps teachers only

3. The underlined word "tutoring" is close in meaning to ....

a) interesting
b) encouragement
c) private lessons
d) mass media

4. Involving parents in their children's education ....

a) increases their school performance
b) improves their behaviour
c) hinders their success
d) decreases their success

5. Which of the following sentences is not true?

a) Parents play a great role in their children's education.
b) Education doesn't stop at the end of the school day.
c) Students can access online lessons, and more to assist them.
d) The teacher is the only source of education.

6. The most suitable title for the passage is ".....................".

a) The drawbacks of modern technology
b) How technology can improve education
c) Technology replaces teachers inside classrooms
d) Social media networking

7. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) teachers b) parents c) students d) websites

Passage No. 2

Energy experts believe that the world is running out of oil and that there could be serious shortages in ten years' time. The population explosion means that each year many more people will be using oil in some form or another.

Electricity is generated from oil, and power stations depend mainly on it. Governments are searching for a suitable alternative. They have found that neither coal nor natural gas can take the place of oil in their economies. Coal is a heavy pollutant. Coal mines are ugly and have a serious effect on animal and plant life. Natural gas is also the most limited.

The only solution lies in nuclear power stations. They need very little fuel to produce enormous amounts of power, and they do not pollute the atmosphere. Their dangers are so great and the costs of building them are so high that some governments are unwilling to invest in them.

Scientists have turned their attention to the sun, the sea, the wind and hot springs, but so far in vain. The sun seems to be the most promising source for the future. Houses are heated entirely by solar energy which is acceptable to environmentalists.

The sea and the wind are not a very promising solution to the energy crisis because they need a lot of energy to generate electricity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists do not approve of natural gas to replace oil because ....

a) it is a heavy pollutant
b) it causes a lot of dangers
c) its supplies are small in amount
d) it often explodes

2. Nuclear power stations ....

a) pollute the atmosphere
b) often explode
c) are cheap to build
d) are very costly

3. The expression "but so far in vain" refers to the fact that experts ....

a) have succeeded in their attempts
b) have failed till now in their attempts
c) were vain in their attempts in the past
d) were of no use

4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

a) Scientists.
b) Governments.
c) Nuclear power stations.
d) Amounts of power.

5. The population explosion has a/an .... effect on energy.

a) serious
b) ordinary
c) difficult
d) weak

6. The .... can't be considered a solution to the problem of energy.

a) sea
b) solar energy
c) sun
d) all mentioned above

7. To generate electricity, we need ....

a) oil
b) gas station
c) coal
d) both a & b

2 Translation:

Group 1

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The first industrial robot was introduced to the U.S. in the 1960s. Since then, their technology has improved rapidly, creating many advantages of robots.

a) تم تقديم أول إنسان آلى صناعى فى الولايات المتحدة فى التسعينيات، ومنذ ذلك الوقت تقدمت التكنولوجيا الخاصة بهم بسرعة والتى ابتكرت العديد من الاختيارات للإنسان الآلى.

b) تم تقديم أول إنسان آلى صناعى فى الولايات المتحدة فى الستينيات، ومنذ ذلك الوقت تقدمت التكنولوجيا الخاصة بهم بسرعة والتى ابتكرت العديد من المميزات للإنسان الآلى.

c) تم تقديم أول إنسان آلى فى الولايات المتحدة فى الستينيات، ومنذ ذلك الوقت تقدمت التكنولوجيا الخاصة بهم بسرعة والتى صممت العديد من المميزات للإنسان الروبوت.

d) أول روبوت صناعى عرف فى الولايات المتحدة فى الستينيات، ومنذ ذلك الوقت تقدمت التكنولوجيا الخاصة بهم بسرعة والتى ابتكرت العديد من المميزات للإنسان الآلى.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- إذا لم أشعر بتحسن، فسوف أقوم بزيارة الطبيب مرة أخرى لكى أطمئن أن الأمر على ما يرام.

a) If I do better, I will see the doctor again to make sure I'm fine.

b) Provided I feel good, I would see the doctor again to make sure it's fine.

c) Unless I feel better, I will see the doctor again to make sure I'm OK.

d) Unless I feel good, I will see the doctor again to ensure I'm well.

Group 2

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Communication among world countries has become easier. This has resulted in a tough race among nations to obtain advanced technology.

a) قد أصبح التواصل بين دول العالم أسهل، وهذا أدى إلى تنافس شرس بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.

b) لقد أصبح التواصل بين دول العالم أسهل، وهذا أدى إلى تنافس حميم بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.

c) التواصل أصبح بين دول العالم أسهل، وهذا أدى إلى تنافس عنيف بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.

d) قد يصبح التواصل بين دول العالم أسهل، وهذا أدى إلى تنافس رحيم بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب أن تلجأ كل دول العالم إلى الحلول السياسية لمشكلاتها لأن الحروب تؤدى إلى الدمار.

a) All world countries must resort to the political solutions to their problems because wars lead to construction.

b) All world countries must resort to the economic solutions to their problems because wars lead to destruction.

c) All world countries must resort to the political solutions to their problems because wars lead to destruction.

d) All world cities must resort to the political solutions to their problems because wars aim for destruction.

Group 3

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Space technology helps us to understand what is beyond Earth. It has already helped us a great deal and we always discover more because of it.

a) تكنولوجيا الفضاء تساعدنا على فهم ما وراء التربة ولقد ساعدناها بالفعل بشكل كبير وهى دائمًا ما تكتشف المزيد بسببنا .

b) تساعدنا تكنولوجيا الفضاء على فهم ما وراء الأرض ولقد ساعدتنا بالفعل بشكل كبير ونحن دائمًا ما نكتشف المزيد بسببها.

c) تكنولوجيا الفضاء تساعدنا على فهم ما وراء كوكب الأرض ولقد ساعدتنا بالفعل بشكل كبير ونحن دائمًا نخترع المزيد بسببها.

d) تساعدنا تكنولوجيا الفضاء على تفقد ما وراء الكرة الأرضية ولقد ساعدتنا فى الماضى بشكل كبير ونحن دائمًا ما نصنع المزيد بسببها.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- ينبغى على الجيل الحالى استكمال الإنجازات التى حققتها الأجيال السابقة فى الماضى.

a) The new generation should continue the achievements which were made by the previous ones in the past.

b) The recent generation should compete the achievements which were made by the previous ones in the past.

c) The current generation may complete the achievements which were done by the previous ones in the past.

d) The recent generation should complete the achievements which were made by the previous ones in the past.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. Our role towards the disabled and elderly people. (سوهاج - إدارة المراغة)

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. "Pros and cons of having a private car." (الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم)

....
....
....
....
....
....

3. How to stay safe online. (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق)

....
....
....
....
....
....



A Vocabulary

Unit (9) — أهم مفردات الوحدة التاسعة

advertise (v) – d	يعلن	education (n)	تعليم	orphan (n)	يتيم
argument (n)	جدال	employ (v) – ed	يوظف	science (n)	علم
brilliant (adj)	رائع	equipment (n)	معدات	scientific (adj)	علمى
bullying (n)	البلطجة / التنمر	explain (v) – ed	يشرح / يفسر	servant (n)	خادم / خادمة
change (v) – d	يغير	governess (n)	مربية	serve (v) – d	يخدم
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	home-schooling (n)	التعليم فى المنزل	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
decade (n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	housekeeper (n)	مديرة المنزل	team sports (n)	رياضات جماعية
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	miss (v) – ed	يفقد		

Unit (10) — أهم مفردات الوحدة العاشرة

apply (v) (y) – ied	يقدم (طلبًا)	degree (n)	مؤهل	natural (adj)	طبيعى
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب فى المهنة	experience (n)	خبرة	personal qualities (n)	صفات شخصية
attendant (n)	مُرافق / عامل فى مكان عام	fancy (v) (y) – ied	يتخيل	practical (adj)	عملى
attention to detail	الانتباه للتفاصيل	fire engine (n)	سيارة مطافئ	punctual (adj)	منضبط
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	firefighter (n)	رجل مطافئ	qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
career (n)	حياة مهنية	flexible (adj)	مرن	reassure (v) – d	يطمئن
casualty department (n)	قسم الطوارئ	hard-working (adj)	مجتهد	reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه
communicator (n)	محاور/متواصل	honest (adj)	أمين / صادق	rewarding (adj)	مجزٍ
community (n)	مجتمع	honesty (n)	أمانة	stress (v) – ed (n)	يرهق / ضغط عصبى
compassion (n)	تعاطف	industry (n)	صناعة	stressful (adj)	مرهق
confidence (n)	ثقة	job opportunities (n)	فرص عمل	teammate (n)	عضو الفريق
confident (adj)	واثق	job fair (n)	معرض الوظائف	training (n)	تدريب
construction (n)	البناء	loyal (adj)	مخلص	variety (n)	تنوع
contract (n)	عقد	loyalty (n)	إخلاص	various (adj)	متنوع
deadline (n)	الموعد النهائى	medical (adj)	طبى		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

at times في بعض الأحيان	keep in touch with يبقى على اتصال مع	listen to يستمع إلى
Bachelor's Degree in English درجة البكالوريوس في اللغة الإنجليزية	lose a job يفقد وظيفة	look for يبحث عن
become friends with يصبح صديقًا مع	lose touch with يفقد الاتصال بـ	move to ينتقل إلى
bring success يجلب النجاح	make a mistake يرتكب خطأ	Post-Graduate Certificate in Education شهادة الدراسات العليا في التربية
do ... training يؤدي تدريبًا	make friends يكون صداقات	received no replies لم يتلق ردًا
do experiment يقوم بعمل تجربة	meet the deadline تلبية الموعد النهائي	send away يطرد
do research into يقوم بعمل أبحاث في	on a training course في دورة تدريبية	take ... out of يخرج ... من
do something well يفعل شيئًا جيدًا	adapt to يتأقلم مع	plenty of الكثير من
drive down the streets يجول في الشوارع	apply for يتقدم إلى (وظيفة)	popular with محبوب لدى
express an opinion يعبر عن رأي	care for يعتني بـ	reason for سبب لـ
free-time activities أنشطة وقت الفراغ	cruel to قاسٍ مع	return to يعود إلى
get a job يحصل على وظيفة	disagree with لا يتفق مع	save from ينقذ من
get an education ينال تعليمًا	fight with يحارب / يتقاتل مع	stay in يبقى في
get bored يمل	good at جيد في	suitable for مناسب لـ
get on well with ينسجم مع	hear about يسمع عن	support ... with يدعم ... بـ
give opinions يعطي آراء	learn about يتعلم بشأن	take part in يشارك في
keep ... under control يبقى ... تحت السيطرة	learn from يتعلم من	thanks to بفضل

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
compassion	تعاطف	sympathy/mercy	cruelty/harshness/brutality	قسوة
construction	البناء	building/creation	destruction/ruin	الهدم
cruel	قاسٍ	unkind/wicked	friendly/gentle	ودود / لطيف
develop	يطور	advance/progress	decline/lessen	يتدهور
exactly	بالضبط	accurately/definitely	inexactly/inaccurately	بصورة غير دقيقة
flexible	مرن	adjustable/malleable	inflexible/rigid	غير مرن
frightened	خائف	afraid/scared	unafraid/bold	غير خائف
honest	أمين / صادق	trustful/candid	dishonest/untruthful/deceitful	غير أمين

importance	أهمية	significance/essentiality	insignificance/unimportance	عدم أهمية
incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق	amazingly/astonishingly	commonly/usually	بشكل عادى أو شائع
involve	يتضمن	include/contain	exclude/lack	لا يتضمن
loyal	مخلص	faithful/trusty	disloyal/unfaithful	غير مخلص
necessary	ضرورى	essential/vital	optional/inessential	اختيارى/لا حاجة له
previous	سابق	earlier/former	later/next	فيما بعد
reassure	يطمئن	assure/comfort	annoy/worry	يضايق
reliable	موثوق فيه	dependable/sincere	unreliable/tricky	غير موثوق فيه

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	work with	يعمل مع
	work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح
	work in	يعمل فى (مكان/مجال)
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)
	work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)
2	gain	يكتسب/يحصل على شىء معنوى مفيد (خبرة/معرفة معلومات/شهرة/الوزن/السرعة)
	earn	يكسب (قوتًا أو رزقًا) مقابل عمل
	win	يفوز بشىء
3	apply for	يتقدم بطلب للحصول على وظيفة
	apply to	يقدم طلبًا لشركة أو لشخص
4	pay for	يدفع مقابلًا
	pay somebody for something	يدفع لشخص مقابل شىء
	pay somebody something	يدفع لشخص (مبلغًا من المال)
	pay (in) cash	يدفع (نقدًا)
	pay by (cheque/credit card)	يدفع بشيك أو بكارت ائتمان
	pay somebody to + inf.	يدفع لشخص لفعل شىء
5	experience	الخبرة: ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين (لا تُعد)
	experience(s)	مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات فى الحياة (تُعد)
	experiment	تجربة علمية (داخل معمل)

Practice...

Module (5) Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

Group 1

1. I plan to employ over 20 persons in my company this season. The synonyms of the word "employ" are "..................".

a) engage b) hire c) fire d) discharge e) persuade

2. The importance of our youth lies in their strength. The antonyms of the word "importance" are "..................".

a) advertisement b) unimportance c) significance d) insignificance e) influence

Group 2

1. Children should have good knowledge about the environment they live in. The synonyms of the word "knowledge" are "..................".

a) lesson b) incompetence c) ignorance d) awareness e) expertise

2. Sally was very .... to see her beloved baby for the first time.

a) unconcerned b) indifferent c) keen d) noisy e) eager

Group 3

1. The nurse reassured me when she smiled. The antonyms of the word "reassure" are "..................".

a) annoy b) encourage c) worry d) assure e) comfort

2. These sheets of paper are .... You can't throw them.

a) extra b) additional c) necessary d) unreliable e) essential

Group 4

1. The words ".................. and ...." are antonyms.

a) succession b) succeed c) failure d) schooling e) success

2. A nurse looks after sick people. The synonyms of "looks after" are "..................".

a) cares for b) finds about c) gets around d) turns down e) takes care of

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. It is .... to make your children work when they are young.

a) merciful b) cruel c) keen d) kind

2. When his parents died in an accident, he became ....

a) an orphan b) glad c) governess d) a child

3. I've got some .... news for you. You won the first prize.

a) clear b) repeated c) exciting d) broken

4. We must improve our local .... to cope with the foreign ones.

a) products b) opportunities c) hardships d) routes

5. Try to be .... while choosing the winner of this competition.

a) non-biased b) unreliable c) dishonest d) careless

6. I tried to .... the girl by saying that the ambulance would arrive soon.

a) reassure b) sure c) ensure d) insure

Group 2

1. The most important skill for an interviewer is to be a good ....

a) actor b) communicator c) builder d) user

2. It will be a struggle to meet the .... The work is too much.

a) dead time b) deadline c) dream time d) sideline

3. My son is very popular .... his friends at school as he is a sociable person.

a) in b) with c) by d) at

4. Waleed wants to do a/an .... to learn how to be a baker.

a) attendant b) industry c) degree d) apprenticeship

5. New .... have been developed by the new ministry to lead the market.

a) chemistries b) degrees c) industries d) contracts

6. He was a .... man. He always abused أساء لـ his children and his wife.

a) merciful b) cruel c) keen d) kind

Group 3

1. The antonym of the word "wealthy" is ".....................".

a) rich b) poverty c) destitute d) healthy

2. I told my son that playing computer games is a .... of time.

a) mast b) waist c) waste d) cast

3. The company is ready to meet the .... of the next few years.

a) skills b) contracts c) challenges d) ideas

4. Ramy became a/an .... at an early age when his parents died in an accident.

a) orphan b) murder c) dead d) honest

5. Your story doesn't agree .... what the police have told us.

a) for b) at c) to d) with

6. I don't .... going to the theatre this evening; I'm really exhausted.

a) decide b) fancy c) adapt d) pay

Group 4

1. A newspaper reporter should have .... and accuracy.

a) wealth b) unkindness c) cruelty d) honesty

2. Because of his financial problems, he left school to begin a/an ....

a) job fair b) compassion c) apprenticeship d) construction

3. Once they reached the hospital, they took the patient to the .... department.

a) training b) deadline c) qualification d) casualty

4. Miss Havisham was shown as a cruel woman with no .... or mercy.

a) casualty b) compassion c) medicine d) reassurance

5. All parents work hard to provide a good .... for their children.

a) advertisement b) unemployment c) cruelty d) education

6. The hotel is currently under .... It will be finished after three months.

a) industry b) reward c) contract d) construction

Group 5

1. The blue shirt wasn't suitable .... me. I ordered a bigger size.

a) to b) for c) with d) at

2. When I visited Morocco, I tried its .... which was delicious.

a) industry b) garage c) company d) cuisine

3. A campaign against .... should be launched in all schools.

a) knowledge b) bullying c) engineering d) thinking

4. If you want to .... a secretary, what qualifications should they have?

a) employ b) fire c) imply d) apply

5. Ali always goes to work on time. He is very ....

a) lazy b) interesting c) punctual d) disloyal

6. Amr Diab's concert was .... in all the national newspapers.

a) employed b) advertised c) learned d) taught

Group 6

1. The internet helps us to .... new friends from all over the world.

a) make b) do c) play d) explore

2. Samira was sent to a/an .... school in the city, and she rarely saw her family.

a) broad b) abroad c) boarding d) board

3. Our school is provided with a laboratory which has all the latest ....

a) equation b) failure c) equipment d) subject

4. Akmal has the needed .... for this job, so he should apply for it.

a) experiences b) expert c) experiment d) experience

5. Waiting for your feedback after the interview is very ....

a) obvious b) qualified c) stressed d) stressful

6. The synonym of the word "compassion" is "....................".

a) sympathy b) cruelty c) destruction d) building

B Language

Unit 9

1 Passive

يتم تحويل الجملة إلى المجهول كما يلى:

- نبدأ بالمفعول به ليصبح فاعلاً.

- نستخدم v. to be حسب زمن الجملة الأصلى.

- نستخدم التصريف الثالث للفعل بعد v. to be.

المبنى للمجهول يتكون من **v. to be + P.P.**

1. (am – is – are) + P.P.	مضارع بسيط
2. (was – were) + P.P.	ماضٍ بسيط
3. (am – is – are) + being + P.P.	مضارع مستمر
4. (was – were) + being + P.P.	ماضٍ مستمر
5. (have – has) + been + P.P.	مضارع تام
6. (had) + been + P.P.	ماضٍ تام
7. (will – would – can – could – may – might – shall – should – must) + be + P.P.	الأفعال الناقصة

2 Past Simple Tense

Past Simple Tense

Usage

- حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.
- I visited Luxor three years ago.
- أحداث متكررة فى الماضى مع الأحوال الدالة على الاستمرارية.
- I usually played football when I was young.

Form

التصريف الثانى للفعل بإضافة (d – ed – ied) وهناك أفعال غير منتظمة لها شكل محدد فى الماضى.

visited – arrived – studied – went

Negative

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. مصدر

- I didn't play football.
- They didn't go to the club.

Passive

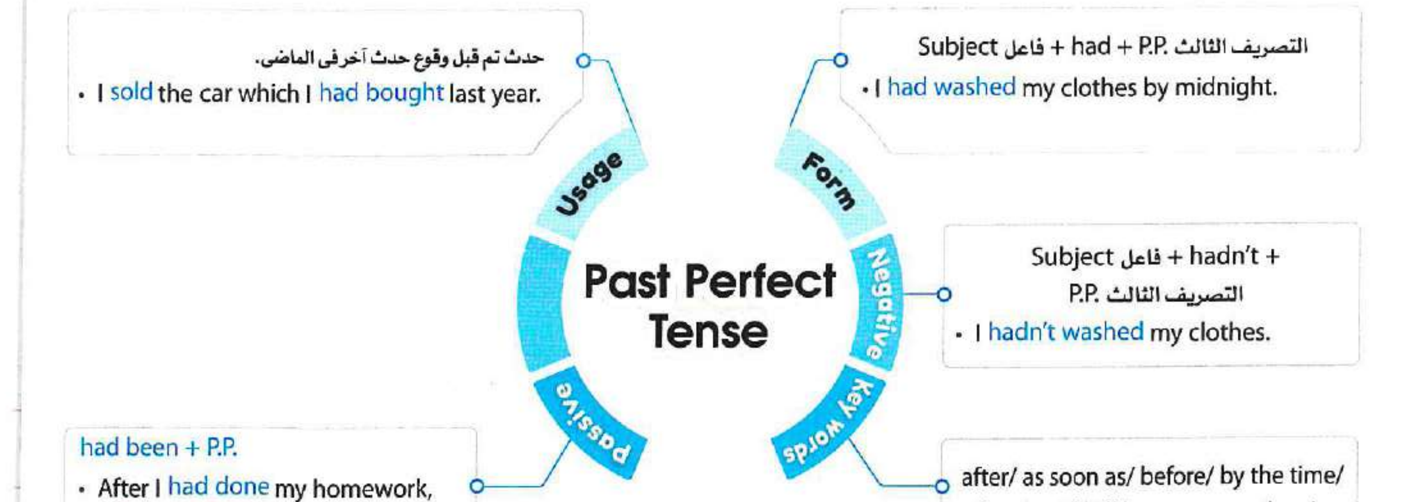
was/were + P.P.

- The government built a new school last year. (Active)
- A new school was built by the government last year. (Passive)

Key words

yesterday/ last/ once/ ago/ one day/ in the past/ the previous/ in the ancient times/ in (2000)/ how long ago

3 Past Perfect Tense



Notes



(After – As soon as – When) + past perfect ⟶ past simple

(Before – By the time – When) + past simple ⟶ past perfect

ماضٍ تام + until/ till + ماضٍ بسيط منفى

No sooner + had + فاعل + P.P. ⟶ than + past simple

Scarcely – Hardly + had + فاعل + P.P. ⟶ when + past simple

After + (v. + ing) ⟶ past simple

Before + (v. + ing) ⟶ past perfect

Having + P.P. ⟶ past simple

On + (v. + ing) ⟶ past simple

Unit 10

1 Reported Speech

عند التحويل من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتى:

1 تحويل فعل القول.

- say – says – said ⟶ تبقى كما هى
- say to – says to – said to ⟶ tell – tells – told

2 حذف الأقواس واستخدام الرابط.

- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ that، ومن الممكن عدم استخدامها (مع الجملة الخبرية).
- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ inf. + (to – not to) (مع الجملة الأمرية).

3 تحويل الضمائر.

• يتم تحويل الضمائر داخل الأقواس حسب الضمائر خارجه وحسب المعنى.

I	he – she
you (إذا كانت فاعلًا)	I – he – she (مخاطب)
you (إذا كانت مفعولًا)	me – him – her (مخاطب)
your	my – his – her (ملكية للمخاطب)
me	him – her
my	his – her (متكلم)

4 تحويل الأزمنة.

• تتحول الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضى.

present simple	past simple
present continuous	past continuous
present perfect	past perfect
past simple	past perfect
will – can – may – must	would – could – might – had to

5 تحويل بعض الكلمات.

yesterday	the day before – the previous day
last (week – year – month)	the (week – year – month) before
next (week – month – year)	the following (week – month – year)
tomorrow	the next/following day – the day after
today – tonight	that day – that night
this	that
here	there
these	those
now	then

6 لاحظ أن الأزمنة لا تتحول إذا كان:

• فعل القول مضارعًا (say –says –tell –tells).

• فعل القول ماضيًا مع كلمة تدل على حدوث الفعل منذ فترة قصيرة مثل (just now).

• ما بداخل الأقواس حقيقة علمية ثابتة.

2 Reported Questions

وعند تحويل الجملة الاستفهامية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتى:

١- يتحول فعل القول said إلى: asked –wondered –wanted to know

٢- إذا بدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص تحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ if أو whether

٣- إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام نربط بنفس الأداة.

٤- يحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية ويأتى الفاعل بعد أداة الاستفهام أو if/whether

٥- الضمائر داخل الأقواس تتحول حسب الضمائر خارجها كما سبق ذكره.

٦- يتغير الزمن من المضارع إلى الماضى داخل الأقواس إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا.

٧- الأزمنة داخل الأقواس تبقى كما هى:

• إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا (ask –asks –say –says)

• عند وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الفعل منذ فترة قصيرة جدًا (just now) أو تعبر الجملة عن حقيقة.

٨- تحول الكلمات الدالة على الزمان والمكان كما سبق ذكره.

Practice...

Module (5)
Language Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. For many years, trees .... down.

a) are cut b) had cut c) were cut d) have been cut

2. Some medicines .... by accident.

a) were discovered b) has been discovered c) discovered d) have discovered

3. Most furniture .... of wood.

a) are made b) make c) makes d) is made

4. Radwan .... to enter the company until he had shown his identity card.

a) wasn't allowed b) didn't allow c) isn't allowed d) allowed

5. My boss told me that I .... to Paris on business the following week.

a) am going b) would go c) will go d) had gone

6. My father advised me .... my time.

a) to waste b) not to waste c) don't waste d) had wasted

Group 2

1. Oil .... in Sinai and the Middle East.

a) have been found b) found c) finding d) is found

2. The police .... all the criminals last week.

a) was arrested b) were arrested c) arrested d) are arrested

3. Who was this house .... by?

a) design b) designing c) designed d) be designed

4. This remote place is rarely ....

a) visited b) visiting c) be visited d) being visited

5. Ayman promised he .... me as soon as he could.

a) will help b) should help c) would help d) helps

6. Emad .... his father was happy to hear about his success.

a) told b) asked c) wanted to know d) said

Group 3

1. The report was written and .... to the manager of the company.

a) be sent b) send c) sending d) sent

2. The ancient sky map .... some time ago.

a) discovered b) was discovered

c) is discovered d) has been discovered

3. Naguib Mahfouz .... the Nobel Prize in Literature.

a) was awarding b) awarded c) was awarded d) is awarded

4. He said he .... love to visit us again.

a) would b) had c) will d) could

5. My books .... on a shelf.

a) are keeping b) keep c) are kept d) is kept

6. "Al Ayam" .... by Taha Hussein is an autobiography.

a) wrote b) was written c) written d) was writing

Group 4

1. Many projects .... set up in Egypt at the present time.

a) will be b) are being c) have been d) were

2. The girl .... yesterday, and she cried a lot.

a) punished b) was punished c) who punishes d) is punished

3. By the time the firemen arrived, the warehouse .... down.

a) is burnt b) has been burnt c) had been burnt d) is being burnt

4. Yassin told me just now that he .... a holiday next week.

a) would have b) was having c) had had d) will have

5. I didn't watch the film .... I had read its story.

a) while b) before c) by the time d) until

6. They suggest that they .... us the next day.

a) meeting b) had met c) meet d) to meet

Group 5

1. After the accident, my friend .... to hospital.

a) was taken b) was taking c) has been taken d) took

2. As soon as my friends .... me, I put on my clothes and went out.

a) phone b) had phoned c) were phoning d) phones

3. I was very angry because when I arrived at the station, the train ....

a) had left b) has left c) is leaving d) leaves

4. I .... him I had never eaten shrimps before.

a) stated b) told c) said d) asked

5. I .... Omar didn't like spicy food, but you didn't hear me.

a) said b) believed c) told d) inquired

6. My wife .... that our daughter had spent all her pocket money on Sunday.

a) told b) promised c) predicted d) complained

Group 6

1. I don't know who the problem .... by.

a) was solved b) solve c) solved d) was solving

2. After my house ...., I moved into it.

a) were built b) was built c) is built d) had built

3. Surely, all my friends .... to my sister's wedding party last week.

a) invited b) are going to invite c) will be invited d) were invited

4. I managed to catch the train as I .... a taxi.

a) was taking b) had taken c) have taken d) would take

5. I have just told my son that I .... him a car tomorrow.

a) would buy b) is buying c) will buy d) bought

6. Mona asked me .... I had finished my reports.

a) where b) if c) who d) unless

Group 7

1. I'd like that letter .... at once, please.

a) send b) to send c) to be sent d) was sent

2. When .... the thief arrested?

a) were b) has c) was d) had

3. Having .... the book, he made notes on it.

a) read b) reading c) had read d) been read

4. Soliman asked him what .... doing on holiday.

a) did he like b) did you like c) he liked d) he has liked

5. The teacher .... the students that they had to study hard.

a) told b) tells c) says d) said

6. I told Yara that I .... my driving test.

a) passes b) have passed c) had passed d) was passed

Practice...

Module (5)
Skills Question Bank

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Passage No. 1

Einstein, Leonardo da Vinci, and Napoleon were all left-handed. In fact, the Latin word for "left" is "threatening evil." Due to this prejudice against left-handed people, they were forced to switch hands. This change caused many problems for lefties at school, which resulted in bad behaviour, and high drop-out rates from school. Maybe that is why lefties were considered stupid.

Researchers studying the brain have found differences in the left and right sides of the brain. Actually, right-handed people use the right side of the brain less than the left side, whereas left-handed people use both almost equally. The part connecting the two halves of the brain is usually larger in left-handed people.

The left part of the brain controls speech, language, writing, logic, mathematics, and science. The right one controls music, art, creativity, and emotion. Since lefties use both sides, they are often both creative and scientific.

Approximately ten percent of the world is left-handed, and the ratio of left-handed males to left-handed females is two to one. Thankfully, parents and teachers no longer treat left-handedness as a problem to be cured. It may actually contribute to a child's excellence! If allowed to learn and develop in their own way, lefties will excel in school. Perhaps one of these lefties might turn out to be the next Einstein or da Vinci.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the passage, right-handed people would be better at ....

a) writing a piece of music
b) painting
c) developing a cure for cancer
d) helping with emotional problems

2. In the past, people thought the left-handed were .... due to their bad behaviour, and high drop-out rates from school.

a) intelligent b) unintelligent c) smart d) creative

3. The underlined word "switch" here means ....

a) turn on b) lock c) open d) change

4. Which of the following is NOT a result of forcing a child to switch hands?

a) Quitting school.
b) Getting angry.
c) Better handwriting.
d) Doing bad things in class.

5. What is the main idea of this passage?

a) There are more right-handed people than left-handed people.
b) Left-handed people are good at music.
c) Left-handed people have larger brains.
d) Left-handed people are more gifted than once thought.

6. For every 100 left-handed males, about how many left-handed females are there? ....

a) 100 b) 50 c) 200 d) 75

7. At present, parents and teachers treat left-handed children ....

a) terribly b) less efficiently c) badly d) normally

Passage No. 2

College is an exciting place to learn and to make friends that will last a lifetime. Many students do not like to worry about finances, and would rather not think about it. However, it doesn't matter whether a student's parents pay for everything or whether the student works part-time to help pay for his or her education. All students can get into money trouble if they're not careful.

Compared to Egypt, the cost of college education can be high in English-speaking countries like Canada and America, where the average cost per student per year can be over $15,000. Students must also pay for books, paper, pens, etc. These can cost $500–$1,000 per year. Students must also pay thousands more per year for room and board. Add money for clothes, travel, and other personal expenses, so students need to spend their money carefully.

At most universities, councillors suggest writing down your income and then listing all of your expenses. Put your expenses into two groups: those that change (phone, books, travel), and those that will stay the same (tuition, room). Add together all of your expenses. Will you need to ask for a loan from family or friends? As you can see, there's more to learn at college than just what's taught in the classroom!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined phrase "ask for a loan" means the same as ....

a) borrow b) lend
c) owe d) invest

2. The cost of .... is NOT a personal expense.

a) clothes b) travel
c) getting a toothpaste d) tuition and room

3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) money b) college
c) education d) part-time job

4. According to the passage, what do many students think very little about?

a) Studying. b) School term.
c) Money matters. d) Parents.

5. The average cost of one year at university in Canada can be ....

a) $500 to $1,000 b) exactly $15,000
c) about $15,000 d) $20,000 to $30,000

6. On a list of expenses, advisors say that the cost of phone and tuition should be ....

a) grouped together b) in different groups
c) left out d) added to books and travel

7. The cost of a college education in Egypt is .... that of Canada.

a) more than b) much higher than
c) the same as d) less than

2 Translation:

Group 1

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Many teenagers are being bullied at school. We should help them and encourage them to face the bullies and not to be afraid of them to make our schools safe for everyone.

a) الكثير من المراهقين يتعرضون للضرب فى المدرسة ، ويجب أن نساعدهم ونشجعهم على مواجهة المتنمرين وألا يخافوا منهم لكى نجعل مدارسنا آمنة للجميع.

b) إن العديد من الطلاب يتعرضون للبلطجة فى المدرسة ، ويجب أن نساعدهم ونشجعهم على رؤية البلطجية وألا يخافوا منهم لكى نجعل مدارسنا آمنة للجميع.

c) إن العديد من المراهقين يتعرضون للتنمر فى المدرسة ، ويجب أن نساعدهم ونشجعهم على مواجهة المتنمرين وألا يخافوا منهم لكى نجعل مدارسنا آمنة للجميع.

d) يتعرض العديد من المراهقين للتنمر فى المدرسة ، ويجب أن نساعدهم ونشجعهم على رؤية المتنمرين وألا يخافوا منهم لكى نجعل مدارسنا آمنة للجميع.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يهدف الإرهاب إلى خلق جو من الرعب وتدمير صناعة السياحة إحدى ركائز الدخل القومى.

a) Terrorism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying the tourism industry which is one of the pillars of the national income.

b) Terrorism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying the tourism industry, one of the pillars of the international income.

c) Tourism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying the tourism industry, one of the ladders of the national income.

d) Tourism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying the tourism industry, one of the pillars of the national income.

Group 2

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Many experts predict that the population of the world will increase to around ten billion by the year 2100. At that time, they believe, that rapid climate change will affect the environment.

a) يعرف العديد من الخبراء أن سكان العالم سوف يزدادون إلى حوالى ١٠ بلايين بعد حلول عام ٢١٠٠ وفى هذا الوقت هم يعتقدون أن التغير السريع فى الجو سوف يؤثر على البيئة.

b) يتنبأ العديد من الخبراء أن سكان العالم سوف يزدادون إلى حوالى ١٠ مليارات بحلول عام ٢١٠٠ وفى هذا الوقت هم يعتقدون أن التغير السريع فى المناخ سوف يؤثر على البيئة.

c) العديد من الخبراء يتنبأ أن سكان العالم سوف يزدادون إلى حوالى ١٠ آلاف بحلول عام ٢١٠٠ وفى هذا الوقت هم يعتقدون أن التغير السريع فى المناخ سوف يؤثر على البيئة.

d) العديد من الخبراء متأكدون أن سكان العالم سوف يزدادون إلى حوالى ١٠ ملايين بحلول عام ٢١٠٠ وفى هذا الوقت هم يعتقدون أن التغير السريع فى المناخ سوف يؤثر على البيئة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد تغير مفهوم التعليم من الحفظ والتلقين إلى التفكير الناقد والإبداع.

a) The concept of education has changed from memorisation and indoctrination to critical thinking and creativity.

b) The understanding of education has exchanged from memorisation and indoctrination to critical thinking and creativity.

c) The concept of education has recharged from memorisation and prompting to critical thinking and creativity.

d) The understanding of education has changed from memorisation and manipulation to critical thinking and creativity.

Group 3

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Whenever people enjoy freedom, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, this freedom is not absolute. It ends at the borders of other people's freedom.

a) حينما يتمتع الأفراد بالحرية فمن الممكن أن يحققوا التقدم فى كل الميادين ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة فهى تنتهى عندما يقرر الآخرون.

b) حيثما يتمتع الأفراد بالحرية فمن الممكن أن يحققوا التقدم فى كل المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مجردة فهى تنتهى عند حدود حرية الآخرين.

c) عندما يتمتع الأفراد بالحرية فمن الممكن أن يحققوا التقدم فى كل الحقول ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة فهى تنتهى بعد حرية الآخرين.

d) حينما يتمتع الأفراد بالحرية فمن الممكن أن يحققوا التقدم فى كل المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة فهى تنتهى عند حدود حرية الآخرين.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- إن تشجيع المنتجات المصرية وتدعيم شعار (صنع فى مصر) واجب وطنى يجب علينا جميعًا أن نقوم به.

a) Discouraging Egyptian production and strengthening the slogan "Made in Egypt" is a national duty that we all must do.

b) Encouraging Arab products and strengthening the slogan "Made by Egypt" is a national duty that we all must do.

c) Encouraging Egyptian products and strengthening the slogan "Made in Egypt" is a national duty that we all must do.

d) Encouraging Egyptian production and strengthening the slogan "Made in Egypt" is an international duty that we all must do.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. "Hygiene at home". (بورسعيد)

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. "Why do people travel abroad?" (الفيوم - إدارة أبشواى)

....
....
....
....
....
....

3. There are different reasons for happiness. Discuss. (القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة)

....
....
....
....
....
....

Study... Revision on Module 6 | Units 11 & 12



A Vocabulary

Unit (11)

أهم مفردات الوحدة الحادية عشرة

achieve (v) – d	يحقق	difference (n)	اختلاف	Paralympian (n)	لاعب بارالمبى
achievement (n)	إنجاز	disability (n)	إعاقة	Paralympics (n) = Paralympic Games	الألعاب البارليمبية
activist (n)	ناشط	disabled (adj)	معاق	physical (adj)	بدنى
athlete (n)	رياضى	inspire (v) – d	يلهم	positive (adj)	إيجابى
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	muscle (n)	عضلة	powerlifting (n)	رفع الأثقال
campaign (n) (v) – ed	حملة / يقوم بعمل حملة	national team (n)	الفريق القومى	ramp (n)	منحدر
community (n)	المجتمع	Olympic Games (n)	الألعاب الأوليمبية	surfing (n)	ركوب الأمواج
compete (v) – d	يتنافس	opportunity (n)	فرصة	snowboarding (n)	التزلج على الجليد
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات	organisation (n)	منظمة	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

Unit (12)

أهم مفردات الوحدة الثانية عشرة

abandoned (adj)	مهجور	guilty (n)	مذنب / مجرم	proof (n)	دليل / برهان
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	instead (adv)	عوضًا عن	prove (v) – d	يثبت
BCE = Before Common Era	قبل الميلاد	legend (n)	أسطورة	puzzle (n)	لغز
characters (n)	شخصيات	local people	السكان المحليون	recommend (v) – ed	يوصى بـ
check (v) – ed	يفحص / يتأكد	monster (n)	وحش	shape (n)	شكل
cottage (n)	كوخ / بيت ريفى	mystery (n)	لغز / غموض	solve (v) – d	يحل
crime (n)	جريمة	pace (n)	سرعة (الأحداث فى رواية)	surprised (adj)	مندهش
disappear (v) – ed	يختفى	page-turner (n)	كتاب شيق	theme (n)	موضوع / فكرة
distant (adj)	بعيد	pale (adj)	شاحب / باهت	treasure (n)	كنز
divide (v) – d	يُقسم	pharaohs (n)	فراعنة	village (n)	قرية
ensure (v) – d	يؤكد	pirate (n)	قرصان	warehouse (n)	مستودع
fireplace (n)	المدفأة	plot (n)	حبكة روائية	weaver (n)	صانع النسيج

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

(be) engaged to	مخطوب/مخطوبة لـ	take photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ	hide from	يختفي من
(be) married to	متزوج/متزوجة من	take place	يحدث	impact on	تأثير على
do sport	يمارس الرياضة	the same as	نفس	join in	ينضم إلى
drive across	يقود عبر	belong to	ينتمي إلى	know about	يعرف عن
earn money	يكسب مالًا	campaign for	حملة من أجل	recommend ... to	يوصى/يرشح ... لـ
go back to	يعود إلى	compared to	بالمقارنة بـ	remember about	يتذكر بشأن
go wrong	يفشل/يخطئ	compete in	يتنافس فى	retire from	يتقاعد/يعتزل من
hit the ball	يضرب الكرة	disappear from	يختفى من	stay with	يبقى مع
in the north of	فى شمال	forget about	ينسى بشأن	successful in/at	ناجح فى
live a lonely life	يعيش حياة وحيدة	friendly to	ودود لـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
mystery stories	قصص الغموض	good at	جيد فى	think about	يعتقد/يفكر بشأن
play tennis in wheelchairs	تلعب تنس على كرسى متحرك	guilty of	مذنب بشأن	work as	يعمل كـ
put pressure on	يقوم بالضغط على	happen to	يحدث لـ		

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
abandoned	مهجور	deserted/discarded		inhabited/occupied	مسكون
bother	يضايق	annoy/harass		please/satisfy	يسعد/يرضى
deep	عميق	rooted/profound		shallow/superficial	ضحل
difference	اختلاف	distinction/variation		similarity/harmony	تشابه/تناغم
disappear	يختفى	vanish/conceal		appear/come out	يظهر
earlier	فيما مضى	former/previous		later/next	فيما بعد
equally	بشكل متساوٍ	evenly/fairly		unequally/unfairly	بشكل غير متساوٍ
funny	مضحك	humorous/comical		serious/sad	جاد
guilty	مذنب	convicted/accusable		guiltless/innocent	غير مذنب
happiness	سعادة	delight/pleasure		displeasure/gloom	سخط/حزن
inspire	يلهم	stimulate/encourage		discourage/depress	يثبط
interesting	شيق	amusing/entertaining		boring/unattractive	ممل
loud	مرتفع (للصوت)	noisy/blaring		calm/quiet	هادئ
pale	شاحب/باهت	faint/faded		bright/glowing	لامع/متوهج

physical	بدنى	bodily/materialistic	mental/psychological/spiritual	عقلى/نفسى/روحى
prove	يثبت	confirm/determine	disprove/deny	ينكر/ينفى
repair	يصلح	fix/mend	break/damage	يكسر/يحطم
support	يدعم	provide/aid	neglect/ignore	يتجاهل
unpleasant	غيرسار	nasty/undesirable	pleasant/cheerful	سار

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**affect = influence**	يؤثرعلى (بدون حرف جر)
	effect = influence = impact on	تأثيرويأتى معهم حرف الجر on
	effective = influential	مؤثر/فعال
2	**decide to + inf.**	يقررأن
	decide on + (noun)	يقرر/يحدد (بعد تفكير)
	decide that + جملة	يقررأن
3	**steal + (something)**	يسرق (شيئًا)
	rob + (place)	يسرق (مكانًا)
	rob + (someone) + of + (something)	يسرق (شيئًا) من (شخص)
4	**adopt**	يتبنى (طفلًا/فكرة)
	adapt (to)	يتكيف مع
5	**lay – laid – laid**	تضع البيض/يجهز/يضع
	lie – lay – lain	ينام/يرقد
	lie – lied – lied	يكذب
6	**coast**	ساحل
	shore	شاطئ البحر
	beach	البلاج (الجزء الرملى عند حافة البحر)
	bank	ضفة النهرأو القناة

Practice...

Module (6)
Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers of the FIVE (5) options:

Group 1

1. The coach's speech inspired us all. We can replace "inspire" with ....

a) encourage b) discourage c) stimulate d) put off e) entertain

2. The stream wasn't deep so we were able to walk across it. The antonyms of the word "deep" are "....................".

a) shallow b) remote c) superficial d) profound e) near

Group 2

1. Amira finds her work with charities very rewarding. The synonyms of the word "rewarding" are "....................".

a) unrewarding b) fruitful c) existing d) deceitful e) beneficial

2. We had to .... the car was quite safe for the trip.

a) ensure b) assure to c) insure of d) make sure e) reassure

Group 3

1. Samir is .... the Faculty of Engineering, Cairo University.

a) a graduate b) a graduate of c) graduated
d) graduated from e) graduated at

2. It's really difficult to live in an abandoned place. The word "abandoned" can be replaced with ....

a) ordinary b) occupied c) inhibited d) discarded e) deserted

Group 4

1. What an amazing book! It's really interesting. The word "amazing" can be replaced with ....

a) old b) surprising c) expensive d) astonishing e) boring

2. My grandfather decided to .... to his village after he had retired.

a) stay b) live c) move d) adopt e) return

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. Mourad was found ...., so he was sent to prison.

a) transparent b) guilty c) mysterious d) proved

2. I believe we should support responsible organisations in .... for the right of animals.

a) achieving b) improving c) inspiring d) campaigning

3. My son Mohammed is very successful .... his work.

a) of b) with c) in d) on

4. Many people think that the .... of economic reform has been rapid.

a) plot b) pace c) theme d) page-turner

5. On my first day at work, my .... held a welcome party for me.

a) colleges b) colleagues c) classmates d) friendships

6. This novel is a .... I can't wait to know the end of it.

a) theme b) page-turner c) plot d) community

Group 2

1. The goods were received and stored in the .... last month.

a) pace b) shape c) community d) warehouse

2. The group needs a leader who can .... them to do their best.

a) achieve b) campaign c) compete d) inspire

3. A/An .... is someone who works hard doing practical things to achieve social change.

a) athlete b) disabled c) activist d) Paralympian

4. I want to go to university to study for a/an ....

a) skill b) degree c) apprenticeship d) contract

5. Mahmoud has the .... to be the teacher's assistant.

a) qualify b) qualifications c) qualified d) disqualified

6. A/An .... is someone who sails on the sea, attacking other boats and stealing things from them.

a) archaeologist b) community c) monster d) pirate

Group 3

1. Shaimaa eventually .... her goal of becoming a professor.

a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved

2. Finally I achieved my dream of becoming a secondary school student. The antonym of the word "achieve" is "..................".

a) accomplish b) contest c) develop d) abandon

3. Don't bother the tourists otherwise they will complain to the officer. The synonym of the word "bother" is "..................".

a) entertain b) steal c) rob d) annoy

4. Something must be done to reduce the number of .... in the area.

a) crimes b) plots c) medals d) merits

5. How can I .... you after you've lied to me twice?

a) decide b) trust c) prove d) dislike

6. Winning 6 medals in Tokyo 2020 was a great .... for the Egyptian delegation بعثة.

a) competition b) chance c) opportunity d) achievement

Group 4

1. Some women began a/an .... for equal rights as men in society.

a) achievement b) improvement c) campaign d) inspiration

2. Gehan came up with a/an .... idea for her new novel.

a) keen b) interested c) brilliant d) proud

3. The .... between students should be fair.

a) competition b) completion c) medal d) achievement

4. Uncle Gaber has a permanent .... which prevents him from working as a labourer.

a) cycling b) disability c) ramp d) opportunity

5. A bag of money .... from my car while I was changing the tyre.

a) emptied b) missed c) disappeared d) lost

6. No one could solve the .... in the end of the film.

a) mystery b) decision c) proof d) story

Group 5

1. He could finally walk after he had been in a .... for years.

a) competition b) charity c) condition d) wheelchair

2. I still don't know what happened to my pen. It's a ....

a) fireplace b) crime c) plot d) mystery

3. Becoming a world .... in your sport is an amazing achievement.

a) champion b) passenger c) activist d) campus

4. Are you planning to return .... the U.S.A?

a) with b) to c) for d) in

5. Osama and Ali have a common .... in football.

a) loyalty b) confidence c) interest d) flexibility

6. The .... was so complicated that I was totally confused by the time I was two chapters in.

a) happiness b) evil c) offer d) plot

Group 6

1. I asked my brother to turn the music .... as I was reading something important.

a) down b) up c) into d) out

2. The workers .... the machines and waited for the engineer to check its condition.

a) walked b) operated c) supported d) engaged

3. They are .... a relationship to be married. They're engaged.

a) about b) at c) in d) on

4. I want to lose some weight, so I was advised to .... some practice.

a) do b) make c) succeed d) have

5. The .... of the story are divided into good and bad.

a) themes b) characters c) plots d) paces

6. The final match will take .... in a neutral stadium.

a) part b) the place c) place d) occur

Group 7

1. Kung fu is a Chinese sport which .... fighting with your hands and feet.

a) achieves b) lifts c) competes d) involves

2. Shall I refill the .... bottles for you?

a) full b) empty c) occupied d) evacuated

3. Smoking has a very bad .... on our health especially the lungs.

a) affect b) affection c) influence d) influential

4. We were searching for the sailors who had .... in the storm.

a) appeared b) showed c) disappeared d) advanced

5. Karam .... all his goals and felt there were no challenges left for him.

a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved

6. It was impossible for women to .... with men in the past.

a) compete b) participate c) campaign d) achieve

B Language

Unit 11

Relative Clauses

عبارات الوصل

who/that	تحل محل الفاعل العاقل لذلك يأتى بعدها فعل وقبلها اسم عاقل. • The boy who (that) broke the window was punished. • My uncle, who works as a teacher, is loved by many people.
who/whom/that	تحل محل المفعول العاقل لذلك يأتى بعدها فاعل وقبلها اسم عاقل. • My uncle, who/whom I love, works as a teacher. • The boy who/whom/that we punished made many mistakes.
which/that	تحل محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل أو تعود على جملة قبلها. • The car which/that Osama was driving was very fast. • He can't write at all, which surprised me.
whose	تحل محل ضمير الملكية وبعدها اسم مملوك للاسم قبلها. • The woman whose bag was stolen was angry.
where = which ... prep. حرف جر	تحل محل المكان وتساوى which مع حرف الجر. • The house where I live is very old. • The house which I live in is very old. • The house in which I live is very old.
when = which ... prep. حرف جر	تحل محل الزمان وتساوى which مع حرف الجر. • August is the month when I go on holiday. • August is the month in which I go on holiday.

Unit 12

Modal Verbs (must, can't & might)

الاستنتاج باستخدام الأفعال الناقصة

الكلمات الدالة	Present فى المضارع		Past فى الماضى
- I'm sure - I'm certain - I believe - certainly	must + مصدر - I'm sure he is a teacher. - He must be a teacher.	للتأكيد للإثبات	must have + P.P. - I believe he won the match. - He must have won the match.
	can't + مصدر - I'm sure, he isn't poor. - He can't be poor.	استحالة	can't have + P.P. - I'm certain he didn't succeed. - He can't have succeeded.
- not sure - uncertain - It is possible - I don't think - I don't believe	might + مصدر - It's possible he plays well. - He might play well.	احتمالية / عدم تأكد	might have + P.P. - I don't think he phoned me. - He might have phoned me.

Practice...

Module (6) Language Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. I will spend the summer holiday in Alexandria .... contains a lot of interesting places.

a) where b) which c) in which d) what

2. The man from .... you bought this car is dishonest.

a) whose b) whom c) which d) who

3. 1973 was the year .... I was born.

a) where b) when c) on which d) who

4. The last film .... in the cinema was very amazing and creative.

a) which b) where c) that d) no word

5. Mai got the full mark in the last year's exam. She .... clever.

a) won't have been b) can't have been c) must be d) can't be

6. Ashraf looks very happy. His team .... have won the match.

a) must b) should c) can't d) shouldn't

Group 2

1. Those two cars are really the same, ... is very confusing for me.

a) what b) which c) whose d) whom

2. A: .... did you post a letter last week? **B:** My brother.

a) Who b) Whom c) What d) To whom

3. Dickens, ... novels are still read today, was a great writer.

a) who b) who's c) that's d) whose

4. The lawyer .... office my son works, is very kind.

a) in whose b) whose c) where d) whom

5. Miss Sama has so many houses and cars. She .... much money.

a) must have b) must have had c) can't have d) could have had

6. Miss Sama .... poor. I saw her wearing a gold necklace.

a) can't be b) must be c) should be d) must have been

Group 3

1. My uncle works in a company .... sells computers.

a) which b) when c) where d) no word

2. The policeman thought I was the criminal for .... he was looking.

a) whom b) who c) that d) which

3. I can't remember the name of the person .... I lent my book.

a) from whom b) whose c) to who d) to whom

4. That is the box .... I put all my odds and ends.

a) which b) where c) when d) no word

5. I couldn't find the book .... in the school library.

a) that wanted b) which I wanted it c) wanting d) I wanted

6. Ahmed was absent yesterday. He .... ill in bed.

a) can't be b) would be c) must be d) must have been

Group 4

1. A lot of people walk in the street .... I clean every day.

a) where b) when c) no word d) whose

2. The man .... next to me is one of my friends.

a) sits b) who sitting c) sitting d) whom sits

3. The day .... my son was born is considered the most important day for all of us.

a) where b) at which c) which d) on which

4. Can you tell me .... met you and told you that thing?

a) that b) what c) whom d) who

5. **A:** Do you think he will come? **B:** I am not sure; he .... do.

a) might b) must c) should d) can't

6. This man must be rich. He has so much money and so many cars. This sentence expresses ....

a) necessity b) prohibition c) deduction d) possibility

Group 5

1. The police officer .... car was damaged arrested the criminals.

a) who b) whose c) who's d) no word

2. I interviewed the applicant .... achieved lots of things in his career.

a) which b) whose c) who's d) no word

3. Remas, my daughter, chose the dog .... eyes are green.

a) who's b) whose c) which d) which's

4. The manager .... sent an email yesterday. I am quite sure.

a) may have b) must have c) might have d) would have

5. This restaurant .... very good. It's always full of customers.

a) must be b) can't be c) may be d) might be

6. This man is carrying a stethoscope سماعة طبيب around his neck. He .... a doctor.

a) might b) must be c) shouldn't be d) can't be

Group 6

1. All .... we need is an equal treatment.

a) which b) what c) where d) that

2. Karam Gaber is the most inspiring athlete .... I have ever met.

a) that b) whose c) which d) whom

3. I'll open the door. It .... Hana I asked her to come for breakfast.

a) must be b) can't be c) can't have been d) needn't be

4. I can't find my English notebook. Someone .... it. I don't remember.

a) had to borrow b) should have borrowed
c) might have borrowed d) must borrow

5. Asmaa can hardly get out of her bed. She .... be very sick.

a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) should

6. What a lovely diamond ring! It .... cost a fortune.

a) must b) can't c) might d) mustn't

Group 7

1. The book .... is on the desk is mine.

a) who b) whom c) which d) what

2. I found the wallet for .... you had been searching.

a) that b) which c) whom d) what

3. It .... our train. It is still too early.

a) must be b) can't be c) might be d) must have been

4. I went to the theatre with my friends, but I .... to the cinema with my family.

a) needn't go b) could have gone c) can't have gone d) must go

5. I can't find my headphone. I .... it on the train.

a) can't have left b) must leave c) might have left d) may leave

6. Khadeja had no money, I know that she .... you some.

a) may lend b) must have lent c) can't lend d) can't have lent

Practice...

Module (6)
Skills Question Bank

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Passage No. 1

Needless to say, the cost of housing units has been rising to astronomical levels as a result of the rise in the cost of building materials and land and the shortage of construction workers, many of whom have been emigrating to the Gulf States in search of better incomes. Ironically, while many young couples search for suitable flats to live in, thousands of unoccupied apartments remain closed because nobody can afford them. An expert on housing said: "Egypt is now a state of flats without inhabitants, and a state of inhabitants without flats."

The lack of adequate housing has led to social problems. Many young people have been unwilling to marry because they cannot afford to pay the monthly rents demanded for furnished flats, let alone buy a flat. For lack of any real alternatives, many couples have been forced to live in rooms in their parents' houses.

Others have to leave for foreign countries where they can make money and return to buy flats. In this case, the richer nations deprive the poorer nations of their most able citizens. Others, with poor incomes, build tin or cardboard kiosks nearby and among tombs. Such informal housing does fall below health specifications and human dignity. It is noteworthy that the existing laws organising the relationships between landlords and tenants are another cause of the housing crisis.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The high cost of building materials resulted in ....
- a) the shortage of construction workers
- b) the emigration of workers to the Gulf States
- c) the search for better incomes
- d) raising the cost of housing units astronomically

2. "A state of flats without inhabitants." This means a country ....
- a) in which there are a great number of unoccupied apartments
- b) where nobody can rent a flat
- c) with experts on flats and inhabitants
- d) of no housing crisis

3. As he can't find a flat to buy or rent, a young man ....
- a) is forced to marry
- b) builds his own flat
- c) is usually forced to remain unmarried
- d) can live in a furnished flat

4. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to ....
- a) young men
- b) parents
- c) landlords
- d) couples

5. The best title for the passage is "......................".
- a) The housing problem
- b) The population problem
- c) The pollution problem
- d) The life problem

6. Why do young men have to leave for foreign countries?
- a) To have fun there.
- b) To marry there.
- c) To make money.
- d) To visit friends.

7. The informal housing is very ....
- a) healthy
- b) unhealthy
- c) useful
- d) suitable

Passage No. 2

The residents of Street 44 in Kali City woke up and started a terrifying day. Three neighbours were found dead that morning. They were killed in the same way and nearly on the same day. The detective thinks it was committed by one professional criminal because there was no evidence at the three crime scenes.

There wasn't a link between the victims and they didn't even know each other. The first victim was a doctor who worked at the city's public hospital; the second was an engineer who worked for a famous construction company; and the third one was a lawyer who had a big office in Kali.

Two days later, the detective got documents which proved the doctor was involved in doing illegal surgeries for his benefit, the engineer took bribery from a landowner to change the design of a bridge passing through his land; and the lawyer was known for defending criminals and drug dealers who had been proven guilty.

This was the only link between the victims; they were all greedy and corrupt. It became a mystery. On his way to the police station, a boy gave the detective a briefcase and a message, then he ran fast. "I did; you're next." The message said. The detective shivered in fear because he was used to taking bribes to manipulate cases, too. Once he looked around holding his gun, the briefcase exploded, and he was dead.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does the underlined word "detective" mean?

a) The one who carries dead people.
b) The one who investigates crimes.
c) The worker who prepares investigation tools.
d) The man who kills corrupt people.

2. The underlined word "scenes" means ....

a) theatres b) places c) weapons d) motivations

3. The criminal was thought to be professional because ....

a) there was no evidence
b) the crimes were committed at the same time
c) the crimes scenes were close to each other
d) no one was hurt in the crimes

4. The link between the victims was that they were ....

a) rich b) famous c) charitable d) corrupt

5. The detective was killed by ....

a) the boy b) his manager c) the policemen d) the same killer

6. The best title for the passage is "......................".

a) The bad doctor b) The smart detective
c) The illegal justice d) The briefcase

7. The message made the detective shiver because ....

a) he is a coward b) he was corrupt
c) the briefcase was heavy d) the boy was scared

2 Translation:

Group 1

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Home-schooling is a good solution to ensure a quality education. The number of students is small, and they are taught everything about life besides school subjects.

a) تعليم المنزل هو حل جيد لضمان كمية التعليم، فعدد الطلاب صغير ويتعلمون كل شيء عن الحياة إلى جانب مواد الدراسة.

b) التعليم بالمنزل هو حل جيد لضمان جودة التعليم، فعدد الطلاب صغير ويتعلمون كل شيء عن الحياة إلى جانب موضوعات الدراسة.

c) التعليم بالمنزل هو حل جيد لتأمين جودة التعليم، فعدد الطلاب صغير ويتعلمون كل شيء عن الحياة إلى جانب فاعل الدراسة.

d) التعليم بالمنزل هو حل جيد لضمان جودة التعليم، فعدد الطلاب صغير ويتعلمون كل شيء عن الحياة إلى جانب مواد الدراسة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- أصبح تلوث البيئة من القضايا الأساسية التى جذبت انتباه العالم أجمع للوصول إلى حل عالمى.

a) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a national solution.

b) The environment pollution has become one of the minor issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global salutation.

c) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global lotion.

d) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global solution.

Group 2

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- We should spread awareness among individuals to protect themselves from disasters when they take place. TV shows can do that well because most people watch them.

a) يجب علينا نشر الوعى بين الأفراد لحماية أنفسهم من الأمراض عند حدوثها، وتستطيع العروض التلفزيونية فعل ذلك جيدًا لأن معظم الناس يشاهدونها.

b) إن نشر الوعى بين الأفراد لحماية أنفسهم من الكوارث عند حدوثها واجب علينا وتستطيع البرامج التلفزيونية فعل ذلك جيدًا لأن معظم الناس يشاهدونها.

c) يجب علينا نشر الوعى بين الأفراد لحماية أنفسهم من الكوارث عند أخذ مكانها وتستطيع العروض التلفزيونية فعل ذلك جيدًا لأن معظم الناس يتابعونها.

d) يجب علينا فرض الوعى بين الأفراد لحماية أنفسهم من الأمراض قبل أن تأخذ مكانها وتستطيع العروض التلفزيونية فعل ذلك جيدًا لأن معظم الناس يتابعونها.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب علينا جميعًا أن نحافظ على صحتنا، والصحة الجيدة تتطلب الحصول على طعام صحى ونوم كاف وممارسة الرياضة بانتظام.

a) We must all keep ourselves healthily. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.

b) We must keep ourselves health. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.

c) We must keep ourselves healthy. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.

d) We must keep ourselves healthy. Good health enquires getting health food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.

Group 3

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- School is the place where we learn, do activities and make new friends. It plays an important role in our lives.

a) المدرسة هى المكان الذى نتعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوِّن صداقات جديدة. فهى تلعب قاعدة مهمة فى حياتنا.

b) إن المدرسة هى المكان الذى نعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوِّن صداقات جديدة. فهى تؤدى دورًا مهمًا فى الحياة.

c) إن المدرسة هى المكان الذى نتعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوِّن صداقات جديدة. فقد تلعب دورًا فعالًا فى حياتنا.

d) إن المدرسة هى المكان الذى نتعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوِّن صداقات جديدة. فهى تلعب دورًا مهمًا فى حياتنا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

– لقد جعلت التكنولوجيا الحديثة حياة الناس أسهل من ذى قبل، ولكنها فى نفس الوقت قد تكون مصدرًا للقلق لو أساء الإنسان استخدامها.

a) Modern technology has made human life harder than before. And at the same time, it may be a source of anxiety if a person misuses it.

b) Modern technology has made human life easier than before. But at the same time, it may be a waste of time if a person uses it.

c) Modern technology has made human life easier than before. But at the same time, it may be a source of anxiety if a person misuses it.

d) Modern technology has made human life easier than before. But at the same time, it may be a source of anxiety if a person spends too much money on it.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. The role of technology in our life. (الشرقية – إدارة القنايات)

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. What job would you like to do in the future? (الشرقية – إدارة العاشر من رمضان)

....
....
....
....
....
....

3. "Parents can lead their children to do their best, but they also can cause them to fall". (القاهرة – إدارة الزيتون)

....
....
....
....
....
....

Story — Treasure Island Revision

Vocabulary

أهم المفردات

advantage (n)	أفضلية/ميزة	firewood (n)	حطب	remain (v) (ed)	يبقى
adventure (n)	مغامرة	follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	rocky (adj)	صخرى
agreement (n)	اتفاقية/اتفاق	fort (n)	حصن	rule (n)	قاعدة
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	frighten (v) (ed)	يخيف	sail (n) (v) (ed)	شراع/يبحر
anchor (n)	مرساة السفينة	gang (n)	عصابة	save (v) (d)	ينقذ
anchor rope (n)	حبل المرساة	ground (n)	أرض	shoot (v)	يطلق النار
arrest (v) (ed)	يقبض	guard (n) (v) – ed	حارس/يحرس	skeleton (n)	هيكل عظمى
attach (v) (ed)	يربط	gun fire (n)	نيران البنادق	smile (v) (d)	يبتسم
bandage (n)	ضمادة	hide (v)	يخفى/يختفى	spade (n)	جاروف/مِجْرَفَة
blow (v)	تهب (الرياح)/ينفخ	hit (v)	يضرب	steer (v) – ed	يوجه/يقود
call (v) – ed	يطلق لقبًا على شخص	join (v) (ed)	ينضم	supplies (n)	مؤن
cape (n)	لسان داخل البحر/خليج	jump (n) (v) (ed)	قفزة/يقفز	surprised (adj)	مندهش
care (v) (d)	يهتم	kill (v) (ed)	يقتل	sword (n)	سيف
cave (n)	كهف	knife (n)	سكين	thick (adj)	سميك
chains (n)	سلاسل/قيود	leader (n)	زعيم	thirsty (adj)	عطِش
cliff (n)	منحدر	mean (v)	يعنى	torch (n)	كشاف
close (adj)	قريب	mist (n)	ضباب	trap (n)	فخ
cough (v) – ed (n)	يسعل/يكح/كحة	mud (n)	طين	trial (n)	محاكمة
crazy (n)	مجنون	negotiate (v) (d)	يتفاوض	trick (n)	خدعة
crew (n)	طاقم السفينة	nod (n) (v) (ded)	إيماءة/إشارة/يومئ برأسه	truce (n)	هدنة
deck (n)	ظهر السفينة	noise (n)	ضجيج	useless (adj)	عديم الفائدة
dig (v)	يحفر	offer (n)	عرض	waste (v) (d)	يسرف/يبذر
distant (adj)	بعيد	paddle (n) (v) – d	مجداف/يجدف	wave (n)	موجة
drink (n) (v)	مشروب/يشرب	painfully (adv)	بشكل مؤلم	weakly (adv)	بضعف
empty (adj)	فارغ	pirate (n)	قرصان	weapon (n)	سلاح
excited (adj)	فرح/منفعل	pirate flag (n)	علم القراصنة	wound (n)	جرح
fence (n)	سور/حائط	point (v) (ed)	يشير	wreck (n)	حطام السفينة
fight (v)	يقاتل	realise (v) (d)	يدرك		

Summary

Chapter (7)

- Jim Hawkins walked with Ben Gun, and soon they reached the fort. Jim asked him to go inside but he refused and said he didn't trust anyone.
- Jim waited till night and called out to enter the fort. Dr Livesy opened the door and let him inside. Jim told him his story.
- The next morning, a voice woke them up. Some pirates came to the fort with a white flag. They wanted a truce. Silver told Captain Smollett what he wanted. He asked him to come to the ship to talk about how to get home.
- Captain Smollett told him if he had something to say, he could come into the fort. Silver climbed over one of the fences and walked slowly up the hill.
- Soon he was standing in front of Captain Smollett, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort. They spoke to each other, but they didn't reach any agreement.
- Silver left angrily. Smollett came back into the fort and said that Silver would be back in an hour to attack the fort.

Chapter (8)

- The men in the fort prepared their weapons and the captain told them what to do.
- After an hour, there was gunfire. There was a lot of noise and smoke, but nobody was hurt.
- A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again.
- There was a battle; some men were killed in the fort and Captain Smollett was hurt. Some pirates were also killed. The pirates did not return that day.
- In the early afternoon, Doctor Livesy took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his pocket and left the fort. It was thought he was going to visit Ben Gun.
- Jim put the small boat which Ben Gun told him about into the water, and began his journey to the Hispaniola. Soon, he began cutting the thick anchor rope and moving away from the ship. The wind took him quickly out to sea. The wind moved the Hispaniola, too. After a while, he found himself on the south-west end of the island.

Chapter (9)

- Jim Hawkins saw the *Hispaniola* sailing around. He watched it and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Nobody was sailing it.
- He thought he could get onto the ship and return it to Captain Smollett. He used his boat to get closer to the ship.
- As he got nearer, he saw nobody on the ship. He held onto a rope at the side of it. He climbed up onto the deck which seemed empty.
- He saw Hands, who was one of the pirates, fighting with another one. He thought Hands was dead, but he was just injured.
- Jim decided to take the ship to the north of the island. He found a bandage to put on Hands' wound and also gave him some food and water.
- Hands soon looked better. He told Jim how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon they could see the rocky north of the island.
- They arrived near the north of it. Hands tried to kill Jim, but Jim shot him by accident. Before he was shot, he hit Jim in the shoulder with a knife.
- Jim found a bandage for his wound. He took down all the sails. When he reached the shallow water, he walked onto the sand, leaving the *Hispaniola* half on the beach and half in the water.

Chapter (10)

- Jim remembered the map, so he knew how to return to the place where he had met Ben Gun for the first time.
- He quietly went back inside the dark fort, and he was very pleased to hear the men inside talking quietly. Then he realised that they were not his friends they were the pirates. He was trapped.
- Silver offered Jim to be one of his men. He also told him that he couldn't go back to his friends because they thought he had left them.
- Jim was pleased to hear that his friends were still alive, but he was not happy to hear that they did not want him anymore.
- Silver and the pirates were very angry. The pirates had a quarrel with Silver and they didn't want him to be the captain anymore.
- Silver wanted Jim to cooperate with him so that they both could survive.

Chapter (11)

- The pirates had a discussion with Silver. They didn't want Silver to be the captain, but he succeeded in persuading them to remain the captain.
- Dr Livsey paid them a visit. He looked after the patients and gave them medicine.
- The doctor asked to talk to Jim. The pirates didn't agree; however, Silver agreed on condition that Jim promised not to run away and Jim did.
- He talked to the doctor through a window. He didn't agree to escape when the doctor asked him.
- He told him about the ship. He said that he had the ship in the north of the island.
- The doctor was pleased to hear that news. He told Silver to keep Jim close to him.

Chapter (12)

- Silver told the pirates that the doctor's men had the ship.
- The pirates left the fort carrying supplies, spades and their weapons. They looked at the map to see where they should go.
- The pirates attached Jim to Silver with a rope so that he could not escape. They found a skeleton of a man lying on the ground.
- They saw a very tall tree which was on the map and they knew that they were close to the treasure.
- They discovered that someone had been there before them and the treasure was gone. Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the pirates fell down and the other three started to run.
- Now Silver, the doctor and his friends decided to leave the island with the treasure. It was a difficult journey back on the Hispaniola because the crew was so small.
- After a few days, they reached a town in South America where they went to find more people for the crew.
- Silver had taken a boat and some money. He was gone, but nobody was sad about that. With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped them all in England.

Practice...

Treasure Island General Exercises

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Chapters (7-8)

1. When I was young, I loved reading novels about .... who attack ships to steal from them.
a) pirates b) supplies c) chains d) guards

2. I hate her because she always plays .... on me.
a) supplies b) chains c) tricks d) guards

3. I think the black team will .... the cup.
a) earn b) gain c) win d) make

4. She refused his .... when he wanted to marry her.
a) mistake b) fool c) offer d) problem

5. The trial my friend .... on proved that he was innocent.
a) went b) had c) offered d) became

6. The soldiers wanted to break into the ...., although it was the strength point of the enemy.
a) hill b) box c) boat d) fort

7. During the ...., my father was unable to drive the car easily.
a) mist b) fight c) trial d) light

8. The .... around our garden makes it difficult to enter it except from the door.
a) firewood b) truce c) fort d) fence

9. The offer the team had .... to the new player was rejected by his father.
a) done b) made c) become d) gone

10. The gang was digging a hole to .... the stolen money in.
a) hide b) show c) appear d) empty

Chapters (9-10)

11. People have found lots of treasure in an old .... under the sea.
a) crash b) wreck c) trash d) waste

12. I was hot and .... after playing a football match yesterday.
a) thirst b) hunger c) thirsty d) thirty

13. He is very ill. Don't .... any closer, please.
a) come b) get c) give d) both a & b

14. You should always take your shoes .... at the door.
a) off b) of c) turns d) place

15. The old man had a .... on his wounded arm.
a) sail b) bandage c) sheet d) cover

16. When we heard the alarm, we went up on ....
a) device b) deck c) duck d) click

17. I could see a .... to the right of her neck which was bleeding quite heavily.
a) cure b) disease c) sickness d) wound

18. The captain managed to .... the boat between the rocks.
a) sail b) drive c) sell d) blow

19. He took .... his clothes and got into the bath.

a) off b) up c) after d) with

20. Is our hotel .... to the beach?

a) close b) beside c) inside d) outside

Chapters (11-12)

21. My father .... me to do the homework.

a) threatened b) reminded c) remembered d) provided

22. The bird made a loud .... and then flew from the trees.

a) voice b) song c) cry d) laugh

23. I could feel them .... me with their eyes. They notice everything I do.

a) catching b) hanging c) moving d) following

24. People can get ill with .... in countries with a lot of mosquitoes.

a) cold b) diabetes c) malaria d) pain

25. I don't like playing tricks .... old people; we should respect them.

a) at b) in c) on d) for

26. They argued for hours, but finally they .... to an agreement.

a) came b) reached c) arrived d) left

27. If you don't know the English word, you can .... at the food you want.

a) mark b) sign c) suggest d) point

28. When we went to the museum, we saw a .... of a huge whale.

a) skeleton b) bones c) building d) deck

29. We knew that she passed the exam when we saw the .... on her face.

a) noise b) cry c) smile d) talk

30. We have .... of food and drink enough for a week.

a) holes b) thieves c) supplies d) spades

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

Group 1

1. Why do you think that the pirates always raise a black flag not white?
2. Captain Smollett was very cautious and intelligent. Do you agree?
3. Why do you think that the good people in the fort wanted the pirates to leave the island quickly?

Group 2

1. Silver didn't really want a truce as everyone knew that he wasn't an honest man. Do you agree with this or not? Why?
2. Why do you think Captain Smollett was worried about the north of the fort?
3. Jim owed his life to Gray. Do you agree or not? Why?

Group 3

1. Ben Gun was of great help for Jim. Do you think so? Why?
2. According to Jim's friends in the fort he was disloyal when he left the fort. Do you think they were right? Why?
3. Why do you think that there wasn't anyone on the ship when Jim climbed on it?

Group 4

1. On the ship, there was good and evil. How can you illustrate this?
2. Hands offered to help Jim as he was a very helpful and kind pirate. Do you think so? Why?
3. In your opinion, why did Jim decide to take command of the ship?

Group 5

1. Why do you think that Jim looked forward to telling his friends about his adventure?
2. Do you think that Dr Livesy was a generous man? Why?
3. Do you think the boat that Ben Gun made is beneficial?

Group 6

1. From your own opinion of Silver, would he really ask another ship to come to take them home if Captain Smollett accepted his offer?
2. Jim thought that his friends didn't want him anymore. Do you agree with this feeling?
3. Why do you think that Dr Livesy went to Silver with a white flag?

Group 7

1. How do you think Jim was a great enemy of Silver? What was the result of that?
2. Do you think that all the pirates were loyal to Silver? Why?
3. Why do you think Dr Livesy treated the pirates and wanted them to be better?

Group 8

1. Why do you think Silver wanted to help the boy, although he was the leader of the gang of pirates?
2. Show that Silver was a tricky character.
3. Why do you think that George was not happy even after seeing the map?

Group 9

1. In your own opinion, was Jim right when he decided to stay with the pirates and not to run away?
2. Why do you think that there was a pointing skeleton?
3. How do you think Dr Livesy could mislead the pirates?

Group 10

1. What is your opinion about the character of Dr Livesy?
2. How do you think Silver tried to maintain trust among the pirates?
3. Why do you think that the journey back to Bristol was challenging?

Part 4

Final Tests



- Tests
- Al-Azhar Listening Texts



30 Test (1)

القاهرة - إدارة المعصرة

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The players are standing close to their trainer. The antonyms of "close" are ....

a) distant b) open c) deep d) remote e) shut

2. The voice on the phone was familiar. The synonyms of "familiar" are ....

a) strange b) known c) unknown d) strong e) clear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The doctor told me to stop this medicine as I have a/an .... to it.

a) sensibility b) reactor c) admiration d) allergy

4. She was sent to study at a/an .... school where she lived and studied.

a) abroad b) boarding c) aboard d) boarder

5. In case of fire, everyone is asked to .... the burning house quickly.

a) evacuate b) remove c) move d) enter

6. Her father's condition is really serious, so he needs to be taken to .... department at once.

a) railway b) aquarium c) casualty d) quality

7. The .... of the plane has made it easier to travel around the world.

a) discovery b) exploration c) presentation d) invention

8. A/An .... is a period of time in which someone works to learn the skills needed to do a job.

a) apprenticeship b) relationship c) partnership d) championship

9. This is the engineer .... designs are so wonderful.

a) whose b) who c) which d) whom

10. You .... smoke in the hospital. It is illegal.

a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) needn't d) don't have to

11. He .... a prize for winning the drawing competition.

a) gave b) had given c) was given d) has given

12. Fatma .... her sister that she was going to the library to study.

a) said b) asked c) requested d) told

13. I asked her why .... early the previous day.

a) did she leave b) would she leave c) had she left d) she had left

14. If I had money, I .... in a villa.

a) would live b) will live

c) live d) would have lived

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What are your goals and ambitions for the future? Which job do you want to do when you leave school? Everyone should have their goals and ambitions and try their best to achieve them. They should have a lot of skills to cope with this changing world of work. 150 years ago, there were not many choices. Some people took academic jobs such as becoming a lawyer or an accountant. Others took jobs that needed vocational skills, such as becoming a farmer or a carpenter. Today, however, there are hundreds of new jobs which we did not have ten years ago. This is good news for young people today because there are many new exciting jobs that they can do.

An example of these exciting jobs is computer programming for mobile phone companies. Mobile phones are developing every year and phone companies need people to help to develop them even more. Another new job is something called library science. The use of these libraries is to know how to understand information on the internet. This is very important for businesses which have a lot of information about their customers and want to know how to use it, so they can sell their things. So, there are a lot of opportunities for work in the future, but they may not be the jobs that you have heard of before.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. The best title for this passage is "....................".

a) Ever-changing jobs
b) Academic jobs
c) Unwanted jobs
d) Vocational jobs

16. Based on the passage, which of the following sentences is CORRECT?

a) Jobs today are similar to those in the past.
b) Jobs in the future will be more traditional.
c) Jobs in the past were only vocational.
d) Jobs in the future may be different from those nowadays.

17. Which of the following jobs couldn't people do 150 years ago?

a) Academic jobs.
b) Computer programming.
c) Vocational jobs.
d) Farming.

18. The main idea of the passage is that some future jobs ....

a) might not exist today
b) will be vocational jobs
c) will be the same as 10 years ago
d) will be the same as 150 years ago

19. According to the passage, "customers" are people who ....

a) sell
b) manufacture
c) analyse
d) buy

20. The best sentence which summarises the passage is ....

a) academic jobs will prevail in the future
b) pilots and astronauts will be the most needed jobs in the future
c) jobs in the future will be connected with computer and technology
d) vocational jobs will prevail in the future

21. We can infer from the passage that .... can benefit from new jobs.

a) old people
b) youth
c) retired people
d) pensioners

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن بلدنا فى حاجة إلى مواطنين يعملون أكثر مما يتكلمون. فالعمل الجاد هو السبيل الوحيد للتغلب على مشاكلنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية ورفع مستوى المعيشة.

a) Our country needs citizens who work more than talk. Hardly work is the only way to overcome our economic and social problems and raise the standard of living.

b) Our country needs citizens who work less than talk. Hard work is the only way to overcome our economic and sociable problems and improve the standard of living.

c) Our country needs citizens who work more than talk. Hard work is the way to overcome our economical and social problems and reduce the standard of living.

d) Our country needs citizens who work more than talk. Hard work is the only way to overcome our economic and social problems and raise the standard of living.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Through education, we can acquire the necessary knowledge, skills and values. It also helps us become beneficial members of our society.

a) من خلال التعليم، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات والقيم الضرورية كما أنه يساعدنا على أن نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.

b) من خلال التعليم، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات والقيم الضرورية كما أنه يساعدنا على أن نأتى بأعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.

c) من خلال التدريس، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات والقيم اللازمة كما أنه يساعدنا على أن نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.

d) من خلال التعليم، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات والقيم الضرورية كما أنه يساعدنا على ألا نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think happened in the fort while Jim was away?

....

....

2. How do you think Jim got to the fort?

....

....

3. Why did Captain Smollett say, "I know that we can win" after the fight?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The place you would like to live in"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test (2)

القاهرة – إدارة شرق مدينة نصر

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. One of the many advantages of living in Alexandria is that you can eat out at almost any time of the day. The synonyms of the word "advantage" are ....

a) disadvantages b) demerits c) pros d) cons e) merits

2. Doctor Livesy gave the map to Silver because it was useless. The antonyms of the word "useless" are ....

a) worthless b) unusable c) useful d) pointless e) valued

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. I can't stop sneezing because I have an .... to your pets.

a) allergy b) ally c) alley d) algae

4. A .... school is a school where students live as well as study.

a) boarding b) blooding c) breeding d) burdening

5. The company has launched an advertising .... in the hope of attracting new customers.

a) competition b) race c) campaign d) charity

6. When my brother left school, he got a/an .... with a large company.

a) certificate b) apprenticeship c) degree d) scholarship

7. He pushed the wheelchair up the .... and into the supermarket.

a) rip b) ramp c) lamp d) comb

8. In my opinion, the best .... is technology because it makes people's lives easier.

a) invention b) discovery c) exhibition d) exploration

9. If she beat her friend at chess, she .... very happy.

a) is b) will be c) would be d) would have been

10. Scarcely .... the noise when we rushed to the spot.

a) we did hear b) had we heard c) we had heard d) we heard

11. Noran said that she .... her clothes then.

a) cleaned b) was cleaning c) has cleaned d) would clean

12. The toys are everywhere in the room. The children .... there.

a) must play b) must have played c) can't have played d) might play

13. The teacher, ... activity is admired by many people, has got the prize of the ideal teacher.

a) who b) which c) whose d) whom

14. The manager asked the secretary .... she had sent the email or not.

a) if b) weather c) when d) whether

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Pizza is very popular all around the world. People from many different countries love to eat it. And in each country, the pizza is a little different. In Japan, for instance, there are two kinds of pizza. One kind looks like the pizza you are used to seeing, but it often has seafood on it. The other kind of Japanese pizza looks more like a pancake. The ingredients in that pizza are mixed up into the batter then, the batter is cooked like a pancake. Finally, the pizza is cut into slices just like the pizza you are used to eating. Many people in India also eat pizza. Pizza is a lot like an Indian bread called naan (Naha). Naan is like pizza dough. It is often brushed with butter and garlic. Indians like naan. So, when pizza came to India, it soon became popular. In India, you can get pizza with pepperoni. You can also get pizza topped with tandoori chicken. You can get your pizza with tofu too. Some Indians also add chilli flakes and ketchup to their pizza. Australians also love pizza. If you go to Australia, you can get a pizza with pepperoni. But you can also get a pizza with lamb or eggs. You can get a pizza with pineapple. In fact, pineapple is the most popular pizza topping. Some Australians also like cut-up pumpkin on their pizza. Others like shrimp on their pizza. There are many different ways to eat pizza. There are many different things you can put on your pizza. But no matter what's on the pizza, it's still a pizza. And people all over the world love it! What toppings do you like on your pizza?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. Who would be most interested in reading this text?

a) A person that is interested in science topics. b) A person that reads history.
c) A person that likes to do maths. d) A person that enjoys cooking.

16. Which is the most accurate statement about the text?

a) It is about different pizzas around the world.
b) It explains why pizza is unhealthy.
c) It is about many types of foods.
d) It is about eating pizza in America.

17. After reading the passage, the writer wants to ....

a) describe pizza around the world b) get you to buy a lot of pizza
c) explain how to make a pizza d) explain where to find pizza in your town

18. The underlined word "ingredients" means ....

a) organs b) members c) meals d) components

19. Which is true for both India and Australia?

a) You can get pizza with pumpkin.
b) You can get pizza with tandoori chicken.
c) You can get pizza with pepperoni.
d) You can eat pizza with lamb.

20. Which food is pizza in India similar to?

a) Shrimp. b) Naan. c) Pineapple. d) Pumpkin.

21. Which of the following sentences can summarise the passage?

a) Pizza is a healthy food for people all over the world.
b) Australians sometimes have lamb or eggs on their pizza.
c) People in India love pizza.
d) People all over the world love pizza.

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- يزودنا الطموح بالحافز إلى العمل، فالإنسان بدون الطموح ربما يتشابه مع السفينة بدون دفة.

a) Ambitious provides us with spur to work; man without ambition may be like a ship without a rudder.

b) Ambition provides us with spur to work; man without ambition may be like a ship without a board.

c) Ambition provides us with spur to work; man without ambition may be like a ship without a rudder.

d) Ambition offers us with spur to work; man without ambition may be like a ship without a rubber.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The use of technology has reduced physical activities, which has given rise to various health problems.

a) إن استخدام التكنولوجيا قلل من الأنشطة البدنية التى أدت إلى ارتفاع فى مشاكل صحية متجددة.

b) إن استخدام التكنولوجيا قلل من الأنشطة البدنية، الأمر الذى أدى إلى ارتفاع فى مشاكل صحية متعددة.

c) إن استخدام التكنولوجيا قلل من الأنشطة البدنية التى أدت إلى عدم الارتفاع فى مشاكل صحية متعددة.

d) إن استخدام التكنولوجيا قلل من الأنشطة البدنية التى أدت إلى ارتفاع فى مشاكل بيئية متعددة.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Silver arrive at the fort with a white flag?

....

....

2. Was Jim right to cut the rope on the ship *Hispaniola*? Why? Why not?

....

....

3. Why did the pirates no longer need Silver?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How to keep healthy"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

30

Test (3)

الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Definitely, he is genius. The synonyms of "definitely" are ....

a) certainly b) absolutely c) indefinitely d) uncertainly e) probably

2. Modern communication made it .... to buy anything easily.

a) predictable b) obtainable c) impossible d) readable e) available

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. They wouldn't be in London now .... they caught the midday plane.

a) unless b) provided that c) in case of d) without

4. .... is a physical condition that limits someone to do something.

a) Diversity b) Stability c) Possibility d) Disability

5. People sometimes .... arguments with each other for simple reasons.

a) make b) get c) have d) take

6. The boy .... in the garden is my son.

a) who playing b) plays c) who play d) that plays

7. You need to .... an English course to be promoted.

a) make b) talk c) speak d) take

8. We .... to help clean the garden outside the school.

a) asked b) asking c) were asked d) had asked

9. Adham .... his father watched the match with his friends.

a) told b) promised c) asked d) said

10. I wanted to join a club near my house, so he gave me a/an .... to fill in.

a) applicant b) invention c) application d) navigation

11. This is the house .... I was born in.

a) where b) which c) what d) when

12. I think you .... sleep early and get up early to be healthy. I only advise you.

a) ought b) can't c) might d) had better

13. Skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or work is a/an ....

a) average b) award c) certificate d) qualification

14. Be careful! People with .... or any other respiratory diseases may be affected easily.

a) allergies b) rules c) leaflets d) pets

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In a very crowded noisy city where towering skyscrapers overshadowed the street below there, lived a poor boy named Jack. Jack roamed the street going door to door selling newspapers to pay for his school. One day, as he was walking to give out the newspapers, he felt weak and tired, so he asked some people for some food. No one gave him food until he reached the door of a girl whom he asked for only a glass of water. On seeing his poor clothes, she gave him a warm glass of milk for free.

Years later, the girl became a woman. One day, she fell very ill. She visited many doctors, but no one was able to cure her. Finally, she went to the best doctor in town. The doctor spent months treating her in a hospital. He spent days and nights looking after her. She was treated in the best hospital in the town. She feared that she wouldn't, by any means, afford the cost of the treatment. She wasn't poor, but the cost was too much.

Finally, it was time to pay the bill. It was a tense moment for her. When the bill came out and the man in charge gave her the bill. She expected to find many thousands of pounds, but she found these words "Paid with a glass of milk". The moral of this story is that good things are rewarded.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. The woman paid .... for the hospital.

a) nothing b) much money
c) little money d) a lot of money

16. The meaning of "tense" is ....

a) joy b) fun c) happiness d) worry

17. The underlined pronoun "No one" refers to ....

a) the people b) the boy
c) the woman d) the doctor

18. The story is about ....

a) the glass of milk b) the boy's school
c) a bank account d) a hospital account

19. The boy was distributing the newspapers ....

a) by bike b) by car c) on foot d) by truck

20. The woman felt .... when she read the words "Paid with a glass of milk".

a) sad b) surprised c) annoyed d) angry

21. The poor boy grew up and became a ....

a) student b) doctor c) teacher d) seller

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب أن يتعاون كل أفراد المجتمع لمحاربة التنمر لأنه مشكلة اجتماعية خطيرة، وينتشر التنمر بين طلاب المدارس والجامعات ويهدد الناس فى كل مكان.

a) All members of society must cooperate to support bullying because it is a serious social problem. Bullying interferes among school and university students and threatens people everywhere.

b) All members of society must cooperate to fight bullying because it is a serious social problem. Bullying prevails among school and university students and threatens people everywhere.

c) All members of society must cooperate to encourage bullying because it is a serious social problem. Bullying prefers among school and university students and threatens people everywhere.

d) All members of society must cooperate to discourage bullying because it is a serious social problem. Bullying refers to school and university students and threatens people everywhere.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The government adopts a sustainable development strategy which represents a roadmap to achieve a dignified life for us.

a) تتبنى الوزارة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمثل خارطة الطريق لكى تحقق حياة كريمة لنا.

b) تتبنى الحكومة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمهد خارطة الطريق لكى تحقق حياة كريمة لنا.

c) تتبنى الحكومة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تمثل خارطة الطريق لكى تحقق حياة كريمة لنا.

d) تتبنى الوزارة استراتيجية تنمية مستدامة تماثل خارطة الطريق لكى تحقق حياة كريمة لنا.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy?

....

....

2. What kind of person do you think Hands was? Why?

....

....

3. "And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to negotiate". What do you think Silver means by this?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How to be a successful member in life."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. When I told him the news, his response was only a smile. The word "response" means ....

a) feedback b) sanitation c) reaction d) intention e) solution

2. He is always stressed when he faces difficult situations. The antonyms of "stressed" are ....

a) anxious b) relaxed c) disrupted d) worried e) light-hearted

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The rich family advertised for a .... to teach their children etiquette and languages.

a) governor b) governess c) governorate d) government

4. I've already watered the plants; you .... to do it again.

a) needn't b) shouldn't c) don't need d) mustn't

5. I asked Mariam if she wanted a piece of cake, and she .... her head to say yes.

a) shocked b) nodded c) noted d) turned

6. If I had money, I'd donate some to charity, but unfortunately I .... any.

a) haven't b) don't have c) didn't have d) hadn't had

7. Life is full of .... It's important to enjoy the good times and learn from the challenges.

a) comes and goes b) skies and crows c) highs and lows d) sighs and woes

8. I .... shrimp until I had visited Alexandria.

a) had never eaten b) have never eaten
c) never ate d) was never eating

9. STEM schools .... open days at which students play computer games to practise maths.

a) do b) own c) get d) run

10. Eman .... her teacher had rewarded her for her good essay.

a) told b) said c) explained d) informed

11. My daughter is a nurse. She works in the .... department in Mansoura Hospital.

a) causality b) realty c) casualty d) vitality

12. The person .... wishes have come true is very happy.

a) who b) whose c) whom d) who's

13. She learned the art of .... from her grandmother who was a clever craftswoman.

a) weaving b) moving c) waving d) leaving

14. Hybrid vehicles use a lot .... petrol to run their engines than petrol-powered ones.

a) tiny b) little c) less d) few

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The elephant's trunk is a marvel of nature. It is probably the most useful nose in the world. It's not just a nose, but it is an organ that serves many purposes. An elephant's trunk is a fusion of the nose and upper lip, extending into a powerful limb with no bones, but it has about 40,000 muscles. Like most noses, it is used for breathing and smelling. However, elephants also use their trunks, like arms and hands, to lift food to their mouths. They suck water into their trunks and pour it into their mouths to get a drink. Sometimes they spray the water on their backs to give themselves a cool shower.

An adult elephant can hold up to four gallons of water in its trunk. Elephants can use their trunks to carry heavy things, such as logs that weigh up to 300 kilograms! The tip of the trunk has a little knob on it that the elephant uses like a thumb. The trunk's dexterity is so remarkable that it can perform difficult tasks like picking up a single blade of grass, a coin or even using a paintbrush.

Trunks are also used for communication. Two elephants that meet each other touch their trunks to each other's mouth, as if it were a kiss. Sometimes a mother elephant will calm her baby by stroking it with her trunk.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. Elephants use their .... to pick up small things.

a) noses
b) thumbs
c) trunks
d) knobs

16. Elephants use the sense of .... to greet each other.

a) taste
b) smell
c) touch
d) sight

17. The elephant's trunk is a combination of ....

a) nose and lip
b) arm and leg
c) mouth and tongue
d) thumb and hand

18. We understand from the last paragraph that elephants use their trunks to ....

a) play games
b) move heavy things
c) suck water
d) show feelings

19. The elephant's trunk can do the job of .... other organs.

a) two
b) three
c) four
d) five

20. Adult elephants can carry weights up to ....

a) one ton
b) half a ton
c) less than half a ton
d) more than half a ton

21. The word "dexterity" in the second paragraph means ....

a) power
b) skill
c) bravery
d) ability

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- لن تنجح فى الحياة ما لم تمتلك دافعًا قويًا ورغبة صادقة فى الوصول إلى ما تصبو إليه. فالحياة بلا هدف لا معنى لها.

a) Success in life can't be achieved when you have motivation and strong desire to achieve what you are inspired to. Life is meaningless without a purpose.

b) You won't be successful in life if you don't get a strong desire and true motivation to achieve your aims. Life without an aim is aimless.

c) Life without an aim is meaningless. You should have a strong desire and true motivation to get what you want.

d) You won't succeed in life unless you have strong motivation and a sincere desire to achieve what you aspire to. Life without a purpose is meaningless.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The national agenda of Egypt, known as Vision 2030, embodies the country's comprehensive strategic plan that aims at attaining sustainable development objectives in the long run.

a) تجسد الأجندة الوطنية لمصر، المعروفة باسم رؤية ٢٠٣٠، الخطة الاستراتيجية العامة للبلاد التى تهدف إلى تحقيق أهداف التنمية المستدامة على المدى الطويل.

b) تجسد الأجندة الوطنية لمصر، المعروفة باسم رواية ٢٠٣٠، الخطة الاستراتيجية الشاملة للبلاد التى تهدف إلى تعريف أهداف التنمية المستدامة على المدى الطويل.

c) تجسد الأجندة الوطنية لمصر، المعروفة باسم رؤية ٢٠٣٠، الخطة الاستراتيجية الشاملة للبلاد التى تهدف إلى تحقيق أهداف التنمية المستدامة على المدى الطويل .

d) تجسد الأجندة الدولية لمصر، المعروفة باسم رؤية ٢٠٣٠، الخطة الاستراتيجية الشاملة للبلاد التى تهدف إلى تحقيق أهداف التنمية المستدامة على المدى الطويل.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to get into the fort?

....

....

2. From your point of view, how did Captain Smollett know the pirates would attack the fort from the north?

....

....

3. What is the moral lesson of the novel "Treasure Island"?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Hygiene and sanitation"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

30

Test (5)

القليوبية – إدارة شبين القناطر

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The antonyms of the verb "reassure" are ....

a) reform b) annoy c) retire d) worry e) revise

2. The synonyms of the adjective "terrible" are ....

a) horrible b) clean c) lazy d) dreadful e) powerful

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The minister will give a prize to the company .... exports are very high.

a) that b) which c) what d) whose

4. During the earthquake, the population must .... their houses immediately.

a) damage b) harm c) inhabit d) evacuate

5. We .... enough time, so we needn't hurry. Let's walk.

a) don't have b) no longer have c) still have d) have no

6. .... vehicles are those that use various types of fuels at the same time.

a) Old b) Hybrid c) New d) Fast

7. .... playing computer games wastes your time, you can play as you like.

a) In case of b) If c) Unless d) Without

8. Parents mustn't be .... to naughty children.

a) nice b) poor c) smart d) cruel

9. Dr Ali is the head doctor in the .... department in El Qaser El Eni Hospital.

a) casual b) optional c) casualty d) occasional

10. It is very important to .... your ideas to other people which can be difficult sometimes.

a) contact b) connect c) contract d) communicate

11. Tanni won 16 medals in athletics events from the 100 meters up to the 800 meters .... 11 gold.

a) includes b) included c) are included d) including

12. .... is a disease that makes the person unable to move or walk partly or entirely.

a) Polio b) Heartattack c) Headache d) Stomachache

13. I .... my father why I had come home late the night before.

a) wondered b) told c) asked d) said

14. After I had graduated from university, I got .... contract to work here.

a) a three-year b) three-years
c) three year's d) a three-year's

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Paralympic Games are the biggest sporting event for world-class athletes with disabilities. The sporting event runs in parallel with the Olympics, so it is called Paralympics. They are ***staged*** in the same place, but at a later date. The games grew out of the work of German neurologist, Dr Ludwig Guttmann. He started using sports to help soldiers who had suffered injuries in the Second World War. In 1948, he started the first international wheelchair in England. This was the seed which flowered into the Summer Paralympics twelve years later in Rome. Since then, the competition has gone from strength to strength. In the Paralympic Summer Games in Athens in 2004, 3,806 sportsmen and women from 136 countries battled to be the best. Athletes used to be grouped according to their type of disability; for example, sportsmen and women who didn't have arms or legs competed against each other. Now participants' evaluation is based on their ability to perform the skills required by their sport.

Like the Olympics, the Paralympics have introduced new sports. Some of these have grown from more traditional sports such as wheelchair rugby, cycling and swimming. Other sports are completely new like goalball. The latest sport to be added is wheelchair curling.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. The Paralympics are held .... the Olympic Games.

a) before
b) after
c) by the time
d) during

16. The italic bold word "*staged*" is similar in the meaning to ....

a) classified
b) delayed
c) watched
d) held

17. The original root for the Paralympics started in England in ....

a) 1948
b) 2004
c) 1960
d) 1945

18. The best title for the passage could be "....................".

a) The history of the Paralympics
b) The importance of doing sport
c) The history of the Olympics
d) How to be a champion

19. The Paralympics are for .... athletes.

a) fit
b) disabled
c) amateur
d) professional

20. The first international Paralympic Games were ....

a) wheelchair
b) cycling
c) swimming
d) goal ball

21. From the last paragraph we infer that .... were added to the Paralympics.

a) more participants
b) grouped teams
c) Olympics
d) new games

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- التعليم جزء لا يتجزأ من تقدم الأمم ومن ثم لا بد من الاهتمام به لأنه ركن الزاوية والعمود الفقرى للرخاء.

a) Education is part and parcel of the nations' regress that's why it must be given due care as it is the corner stone and the backbone of luxury.

b) Education is part and parcel of the nations' progress that's why it must be given due care as it is the corner stone and the backbone of prosperity.

c) Education is part and parcel of the nations' stress that's why it must be given due care as it is the corner stone and the backbone of luxury.

d) Education is port and parcel of the nations' progress that's why it must be given due care as it is the corner stone and the backbone of welfare.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Health is better than wealth; life will be meaningless and severe if we are unhealthy, so it is believed that prevention is better than cure to avoid diseases.

a) الصحة أغلى من الثروة فالحياة سوف تصبح بلا معنى وقاسية لو أصبحنا أصحاء لذلك يعتقد أن الحفاظ خير من الدواء لتجنب المرض.

b) الصحة أغلى من الثروة فالحياة سوف تصبح بلا معنى وقاسية لو أصبحنا غير أصحاء لذلك يعتقد أن الوقاية خير من العلاج لتجنب المرض.

c) الصحة أغلى من المال فالحياة سوف تصبح بلا معنى وقاسية لو أصبحنا أصحاء لذلك يعتقد أن الوقاية خير من العلاج لتجنب المرض.

d) الصحة أغلى من الثروة فالحياة سوف تصبح بلا معنى وقاسية لو أصبحنا غير أصحاء لذلك يعتقد أن الرعاية خير من الدواء لتجنب المرض.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Dr Livesy proved to be generous. Explain.

....

....

2. Do you think that Jim was lucky or not? Why/ Why not?

....

....

3. Hands was a deceiver. Do you agree or not? Justify your answer.

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Is technology always a good thing?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

30

Test (6)

محافظة السويس

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. We can say that the rules are either .... or ....

a) done b) had c) followed d) spent e) broken

2. I asked my father to .... close as I was so frightened.

a) stay b) take c) set d) keep e) play

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. You can lift weights to strengthen your arm and leg ....

a) blood b) competitions c) muscles d) achievements

4. Those who never work hard will hardly .... in life or work.

a) succeed b) success c) successful d) failure

5. The .... in our field is very fertile.

a) sale b) sail c) seal d) soil

6. The girl was very .... when she saw the black cat.

a) frightened b) frightening c) interesting d) alive

7. Some migrating birds can .... by the moon.

a) control b) notice c) navigate d) relax

8. Hygiene reduces the .... of being ill.

a) link b) possibility c) responsibility d) suggestion

9. If he were taller, he .... a good basketball player.

a) be b) will be c) would be d) were

10. I .... to the club until I had finished the report.

a) went b) didn't go c) won't go d) hadn't gone

11. My neighbour bought a car after .... how to drive.

a) learning b) learned c) had learned d) learned

12. Do you .... come to school early today?

a) must b) should c) need d) have to

13. Ramy asked Amr .... going for his holiday.

a) when he was b) where is he c) where was he d) where he is

14. The telephone was .... to enable people to connect.

a) invents b) inventing c) invented d) invent

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones? People who are fifty or more will find this surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot do without mobile phones. If someone had said 50 years ago that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of them. People everywhere are walking around talking on their mobile phones. The phones are even being used for more than just communication. People use them for numerous purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives.

Mobile phones have not only made our lives more convenient, but they have changed the way we live. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone, at any place, and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. We cannot use mobile phones for ....

a) playing games b) washing our faces
c) getting information d) listening to music

16. About fifty years ago, we ....

a) did not have mobiles b) had mobiles
c) used mobiles d) were mad

17. Thanks to mobile phones, ...

a) we cannot find information b) our lives are shorter
c) it is harder to reach a friend d) our lives are easier

18. The antonym of the underlined word "convenient" is ....

a) improper b) proper
c) suitable d) available

19. The adjective "numerous" can be replaced with ....

a) many b) little
c) few d) small

20. The summary of the last paragraph is ....

a) the disadvantages of cell phones b) the advantages of cell phones
c) decreasing the use of cell phones d) improving of cell phones

21. The best title for the passage can be " ....".

a) Technology b) Watching films
c) Cell phones d) Playing games

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- يتفق الجميع على أنه من المهم التعامل مع الغضب بطريقة حكيمة لكى لا تسمح له أن يتحكم بنا أو يجعلنا نقول أو نؤدى أشياء يمكن أن نندم عليها فيما بعد.

a) Someone agrees that it is important to handle angry wisely so that we don't let it control us or make us say or do things that we lately regret.

b) Everyone agrees that it is not important to handle anger wisely so that we don't let it control us or make us say or do things that we lately regret.

c) All people don't agree that it is important to handle anger in wisely so that we don't let it control us or make us say or do things that we regret on later.

d) Everyone agrees that it is important to handle anger wisely so that we don't let it control us or make us say or do things that we regret later.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- As a result of the climate change, fresh water has become a global problem that needs an urgent solution otherwise many countries would suffer from drought.

a) سيصبح الماء العذب مشكلة عالمية تحتاج لحل ضرورى وإلا فستعانى كثير من البلاد من الفيضان نتيجة للتغير المناخى.

b) أصبح الماء العذب مشكلة عالمية تحتاج لحل ضرورى وإلا فستعانى كثير من البلاد من الفيضان نتيجة للتغير المناخى.

c) نتيجة للتغير المناخى قد أصبح الماء العذب مشكلة عالمية تحتاج لحل عاجل وإلا فستعانى كثير من البلاد من الجفاف.

d) نتيجة للتغير المناخى قد يصبح الماء العذب مشكلة عالمية مما يستلزم حلًا مسئولًا وإلا فستعانى كثير من البلاد من الجفاف.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the fort was very important for Captain Smollett and his men?

....

....

2. If you were Jim, would you sail to the ship *Hispaniola* on your own?

....

....

3. Would you prefer to have Silver as a friend or an enemy? Why?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The dangers of pollution and how to overcome them"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

30

Test (7)

محافظة بورسعيد

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The building was very old and tumbledown, so the police gave the order to .... the area.

a) evacuate b) cover c) empty d) remain e) explore

2. She's often cruel to her sister. The synonyms of the adjective "cruel" are ....

a) friendly b) wicked c) unkind d) gentle e) lifeless

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. I didn't enjoy that novel because the .... is very complicated.

a) publisher b) plot c) character d) poet

4. My son can't eat bananas because he has a/an ....

a) hygiene b) emergency c) sense d) allergy

5. Aswan is a city .... is famous across the world.

a) when b) where c) which d) who

6. .... vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine.

a) Used b) Broken c) Ancient d) Hybrid

7. Our neighbour .... to hospital in an ambulance after the fire last night.

a) is taken b) was taken c) had taken d) was taking

8. We are going to start a .... against smoking.

a) championship b) camp c) campaign d) chaos

"ᐧ he went to the cinema, he .... his work.

b) had finished c) was finishing d) would finish

.... touch with my old friend.

a) ma b) did c) got d) lost

11. Ahmed .... his brother to give him a lift to work because he was late.

a) asked b) questioned c) said d) wondered

12. What would you do if your friend .... an accident?

a) has b) will have c) had d) would have

13. He was absent from school yesterday. He .... ill.

a) must be b) can't be c) has to be d) must have been

14. He wants to do a/an .... to learn how to be a builder.

a) industry b) apprenticeship c) attendant d) degree

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Scientists believe that there are many reasons for climate change. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouses because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun and sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increasing temperature near the Earth. The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The destruction of the big rainforests, which, absorb carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse. What can be done to prevent his situation? Global warming is a problem that affects every country and every person in the world. First of all, all governments must agree to stop the destruction of the world's rainforests. Secondly, they must agree to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide that transport and industries emit into the atmosphere. And we can all play a part as individuals. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide we emit into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving fuel-efficient cars. The best way people can help is to use public transport as much as possible instead of their cars. And finally, we should plant more trees in the cities and on farms to give us back the air we need.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. If the amount of carbon dioxide doubles, the average temperature ....

a) decreases
b) reduces
c) increases
d) recovers

16. To decrease pollution, people can use ....

a) their private cars
b) their private cars and bikes
c) old buses
d) public transport

17. Fuel-efficient cars ....

a) use a lot of fuel
b) use less fuel
c) burn fuel efficiently
d) both b & c

18. The underlined word "emit" means ....

a) absorb
b) take in
c) release
d) stop

19. The best title for the passage is ....

a) rainforests
b) climate change
c) carbon dioxide
d) fuel

20. The amount of carbon dioxide increases in the atmosphere because of ....

a) burning fossil fuels
b) heat and light from the sun
c) the destruction of houses
d) both a & b

21. .... helps us to get more oxygen.

a) Building factories
b) Cutting rainforests
c) Absorbing infrared radiation
d) Planting trees

22. Choose the correct English translation:

– يعتبر العمل الجماعى جزءًا أساسيًا لتقدم مكان العمل. فالعمل الجماعى الناجح يعتمد بشكل أساسى على التعاون بين كل أعضاء الفريق.

a) Teamwork is an essential part of workshop progress. Successful teamwork relies mainly on cooperation among all team members.

b) Teamwork is an essential port of workplace progress. Successful teamwork relies mainly on cooperation among all team members.

c) Teamwork is an essential part of workplace progress. Successful teamwork relies mainly on separation among all team members.

d) Teamwork is an essential part of workplace progress. Successful teamwork relies mainly on cooperation among all team members.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Online learning becomes more popular today, as more people have access to the internet. You can study whenever you choose.

a) أصبح التعلم عن طريق الإنترنت أكثر شيوعًا اليوم حيث إن المزيد من الناس لديهم إمكانية الاتصال بالإنترنت فيمكن أن تدرس فى أى وقت تختاره.

b) أصبح التعلم عن طريق الإنترنت أكثر صعوبة اليوم حيث إن المزيد من الناس لديهم إمكانية الاتصال بالإنترنت فيمكن أن تدرس فى أى وقت تختاره.

c) أصبح التعلم عن طريق الإنترنت أكثر شيوعًا اليوم حيث إن القليل من الناس لديهم إمكانية الاتصال بالإنترنت فيمكن أن تدرس فى أى وقت تختاره.

d) أصبح التعلم عن طريق الإنترنت أكثر شيوعًا اليوم حيث إن المزيد من الناس لديهم إمكانية الاتصال بالإنترنت فلا يمكن أن تدرس فى أى وقت تختاره.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think the significance of the pointing skeleton is?

....

....

2. Silver didn't come into the fort, but he stayed at the door. Why do you think so?

....

....

3. Jim had two different feelings when he realised that his friends were still alive. What do you think these feelings are?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Hygiene at home"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. "After the violent earthquakes in Turkey, all the old houses were evacuated". The word "evacuated" can be replaced by .... and ....

a) searched b) abandoned c) destroyed d) deserted e) built

2. Two antonyms for "messy" are .... and ....

a) orderly b) nut c) neat d) cheat e) cube

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Mariam likes to help .... and poor children.

a) cruel b) rich c) wealthy d) orphan

4. My friend was .... when he saw the snake in the field.

a) frightened b) frightening c) frightens d) fright

5. A child whose parents are dead is a/an ....

a) toddler b) teenager c) orphan d) adult

6. I took my father's place in our company while he was ....

a) abroad b) board c) aboard d) broad

7. We should change the .... on our beds once a week.

a) carpet b) curtain c) bedding d) towel

8. When I travelled to Europe, I couldn't adapt .... its weather.

a) with b) to c) on d) for

9. They .... the meeting as the manager was very angry.

a) must have attended b) might have attended
c) should have attended d) shouldn't have attended

10. .... for the Nile, Egypt would be a desert land.

a) If it were b) If it had been c) If it hadn't been d) If it weren't

11. Dina was punishing Omar when I called her. This means ....

a) Dina was being punished by Omar when I called her
b) Omar was not being punished by Dina when I called her
c) Omar was being punished by Dina when I called her
d) I was being punished by Dina when I called her

12. Which one of the following sentences is CORRECT?

a) While I reached the station, the bus left. I missed it.
b) As soon as I finished my homework, a TV film had started.
c) I watched a film last night. Before that, I have done my homework.
d) Hardly had I arrived home when my phone rang.

13. Hani said that he .... a new flat yet.

a) didn't find
b) hasn't found
c) hadn't found
d) wasn't found

14. They said something very cruel .... I think they should apologise.

a) on which
b) at which
c) about which
d) for which

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

We are living in the age of the internet. The internet is one of the most effective means of communication. It is of great benefits in our daily life. This is because of several reasons. Firstly, it helps us to communicate with our friends and relatives abroad. Secondly, it provides different information on different subjects. Thirdly, it makes us in touch with the latest current events all over the world. Fourthly, it enables us to do our shopping without travelling. Fifthly, we can play games on the internet with foreign friends. In addition to that, the internet helps us to make new friends everywhere. It has become easy for everyone to log onto the internet. The youth are crazy about it everywhere.

In spite of that, the internet has many disadvantages. It can waste our time and our money. It can destroy our young men because it shows them some bad habits and traditions. To sum up, the internet is like a knife with which we can cut an apple to eat or kill someone.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

a) The time.
b) A knife.
c) The internet.
d) An apple.

16. Which of the following words describes the word "benefits"?

a) Uses.
b) Log.
c) Dangers.
d) Traditions.

17. .... young men use the internet.

a) Few
b) None of
c) Fewer
d) A lot of

18. Thanks to the internet, it's easy to .... new friends.

a) leave
b) make
c) cut
d) show

19. The internet makes shopping ....

a) hard
b) crazy
c) easy
d) lazy

20. The internet is one of the most effective means of ....

a) travelling
b) eating
c) living
d) communication

21. We should .... the disadvantages of the internet.

a) waste
b) avoid
c) enjoy
d) find

22. **Choose the correct English translation:**

- إن احترام المعلم وتقديره واجب على كل فرد فى المجتمع لأن المعلم هو أساس العملية التعليمية.

a) Respecting and appreciating the teacher is the duty of all individuals in society, the teacher is the basis of the educational process.

b) Respecting and appreciating the teacher is the duty of every individual in society because the teacher is basis of the educational process.

c) That respecting and appreciating the teacher is the right of every individual in society because the teacher is basis of the educational process.

d) Respecting and appreciate the teacher is the duty of every individual in society because the teacher is basis of the educational process.

23. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- A lot of people can win their battle against physical disabilities with strong will.

a) يستطيع الكثير من الناس أن يكسبوا معركتهم ضد الإعاقات البدنية بالإرادة القوية.

b) يستطيع الكثير من الناس أن يكسبوا معركتهم ضد العلاقات البدنية بالإرادة القوية.

c) يستطيع الكثير من الناس أن يكسبوا معركتهم ضد الإعاقات البيئية بالإدارة القوية.

d) يستطيع الكثير من الناس أن يكسبوا معركتهم ضد الإعاقات البدنية بالإدارة القوية.

24. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think that Captain Smollett asked his men to watch Silver carefully?

....

....

2. Do you think that Jim's plan was a good one? Why?

....

....

3. Prove that Jim was very kind and liked Captain Smollett.

....

....

25. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"Why do people travel abroad?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

30

Test (9)

الشرقية – إدارة بلبيس

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. To be honest, I don't think he has much chance of winning. The antonyms of the word "honest" are ....

a) loyal b) dishonest c) innocent d) deceitful e) genuine

2. I had a stressful day at work which made me a bit exhausted. The word "stressful" can be replaced by ....

a) tiring b) relaxing c) legal d) disturbing e) comfortable

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The president declared a state of .... after the flood.

a) war b) emergency c) horror d) excitement

4. You .... attend my sister's wedding ceremony. I'll be so happy if you come.

a) may b) can c) should d) must

5. Some migrating birds can .... by the moon. They use the moon as a guide.

a) navigate b) educate c) nominate d) calculate

6. The patient .... to leave the hospital until he had got better.

a) hasn't allowed b) wasn't allowed c) hadn't allowed d) didn't allow

7. We should teach our children not to be .... to animals.

a) descent b) pleasant c) blind d) cruel

8. The writer .... novel won the Nobel Prize was extremely proud.

a) whose b) which c) that d) who

9. When his breathing stopped, the doctor did him .... to make him breathe again.

a) CRP b) GPI c) CPR d) CBC

10. The teacher told us that the earth .... around the sun.

a) turn b) turned c) turns d) had turned

11. Although teachers' salaries aren't very ...., they offer great services to the society.

a) rewarding b) practical c) temporary d) varied

12. Farida .... to the theatre, but she stayed at home to revise for the exam.

a) must have gone b) should go c) could have gone d) might go

13. The brave young officer was given a .... for his heroism.

a) memory b) medal c) belt d) mark

14. A new school .... in our village last year.

a) had been built b) was built c) was building d) built

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My hobby is reading. I read storybooks, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting. This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my father and mother to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books, and soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things about our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, it is unnecessary to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger, so I can avoid it. Also, it is unnecessary to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with living. Otherwise, I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way. So, I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. The writer has liked reading since ....

a) his graduation b) his childhood c) his marriage d) his youth

16. Through reading, the person becomes ....

a) knowledgeable b) available c) famous d) fairy

17. In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a ....

a) disaster b) responsibility c) hobby d) danger

18. The word "bygone" means ....

a) the things that will happen in the future b) the things that happen daily
c) the things that will never happen d) the things that happened in a past time

19. The writer likes to read ....

a) stories b) magazines c) newspapers d) all mentioned

20. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....

a) time b) reading c) book d) world

21. The best title for the passage is "..................".

a) Reading is a useful hobby
b) Reading books is more important than reading newspapers
c) Reading isn't enough to learn about the tiger
d) Reading only helps us to learn about diseases

22. **Choose the correct English translation:**

- التحدث بأكثر من لغة أجنبية وتعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر من أهم المؤهلات التى يحتاجها سوق العمل.

a) Speaking more than one English language and learning computer skills are two of the most important qualifications which the job market needs.

b) Speaking more than one foreign language and learning computer skills are two of the most important qualifications which the job market needs.

c) Speaking more than one foreign language and learning computer skills are two of the most important modifications which the job market needs.

d) Speaking more than one foreign language and learning computer skills are two of the most important qualifications which the job market rejects.

23. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Nobody is perfect and it is natural to make mistakes, so we should meet others' mistakes with forgiveness.

a) لا يوجد شخص كامل ومن الطبيعى أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الآخرين بالانتقام.

b) لا يوجد شخص مثالى ومن غيرالطبيعى أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الآخرين بالعفو.

c) لا يوجد شخص مثالى ومن الطبيعى أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الآخرين بالتجاهل.

d) لا يوجد شخص مثالى ومن الطبيعى أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الآخرين بالعفو.

24. **Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were Captain Smollett, would you accept the truce with the pirates? Why?

....

....

2. Why do you think Dr Livesy wanted to find Ben Gun?

....

....

3. In your opinion, were the pirates right to try not to keep Silver as a captain? Why?

....

....

25. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"The importance of friendship in our life"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The word "respond" is equal to ....

a) answer b) refuse c) participate d) reply e) repeat

2. This is ....; it's not dangerous.

a) difficult b) secure c) serious d) safe e) heavy

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Before .... the medicine, he had eaten a lot.

a) took b) take c) had taken d) taking

4. We use .... when we don't know which road to take.

a) vehicle b) app c) GPS d) CPR

5. I have lost one of my gloves; I .... them somewhere.

a) must have dropped b) need to drop c) should have dropped d) have to drop

6. He often .... about not feeling appreciated by his co-workers.

a) realises b) confirms c) suggests d) complains

7. Iron expands if ....

a) it is heat b) heats c) it is heated d) heating

8. Robots can be used to .... dangerous tasks.

a) delay b) perform c) carry d) stop

9. This offer .... only for new students.

a) blogs b) develops c) improves d) applies

10. This man .... more than 20 great books 100 years ago.

a) has written b) is writing c) wrote d) is written

11. Thousands of children were .... because of wars .

a) bullied b) orphaned c) varied d) included

12. We all waved goodbye to him yesterday as he .... away.

a) is driving b) drive c) drove d) has driven

13. I met the genius boy .... skills are amazing.

a) that b) whom c) who d) whose

14. By the time I reached the station, the train ....

a) has left b) is leaving c) was left d) had left

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The tiger is the largest living cat species and it mainly lives in Africa and Asia. It has a powerful body with a large head and a long tail. It was first scientifically described in 1758 and is classified into 8 types.

Throughout the tiger's life, it lives, mainly in the forests of Russia and China. The tiger is a dangerous killer that mainly hunts gazelles. It usually lives by itself and takes large pieces of land. It defends this land against other tigers and humans. Females give birth to usually two or three that stay with their mother for about two years. When becoming independent, they leave their mother's home and establish their own.

Since the early 20th century, tiger populations have lost at least 93% of their historic numbers. Major reasons for this decline are losing forests and hunters that kill tigers to sell their fur, which is extremely expensive. Tigers also sometimes attack and even kill people.

The tiger is considered the main enemy of the lion. Since tiger populations are greatly different in size, the "average" size for a tiger may be less than that of a lion, while the biggest tigers are bigger than the lions. The Siberian tigers are considered to be the largest type of tigers, as they are even larger than lions.

Tigers were kept since ancient times and trained to perform in circuses and other entertainment shows. They were even sold as pets for rich businessmen. Tigers appeared in different cultures worldwide.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. Tigers are .... before the age of two.

a) dependent
b) independent
c) scientific
d) humans

16. Tigers usually live ....

a) near rivers
b) near oceans
c) in jungles
d) in forests

17. Since the 20th century, tigers have lost .... of their population.

a) half
b) quarter
c) most
d) few

18. Losing forests .... the numbers of tigers in the world.

a) increased
b) decreased
c) didn't affect on
d) finished

19. Tigers protect their land against ....

a) other tigers only
b) humans only
c) elephants
d) tigers and humans

20. Siberian tigers are .... lions.

a) smaller than
b) larger than
c) the same size as
d) more effective than

21. Tigers sometimes .... humans.

a) attack
b) protect
c) live for two years with
d) have more numbers than

22. **Choose the correct English translation:**

- تؤثر التكنولوجيا الحديثة على العالم. يجب أن نتعامل معها بحكمة حتى نتجنب أضرارها.

a) Modern technology affects us. We should deal with it wisely to avoid its harms.

b) Modern technology doesn't affect the world. We should deal with it wisely to avoid its harms.

c) Modern technology affects the world. We should deal with it to avoid its harms.

d) Modern technology affects the world. We should deal with it wisely to avoid its harms.

23. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- English is an extremely important language. It can increase your opportunity of having an excellent future.

a) الإنجليزية لغة مهمة جدًا. لا يمكن للغة الإنجليزية أن تزيد فرصتك للحصول على مستقبل ممتاز.

b) الإنجليزية لغة مهمة جدًا. يمكن للغة الإنجليزية أن تقلل فرصتك للحصول على مستقبل ممتاز.

c) الإنجليزية لغة مهمة جدًا. يمكن للغة الإنجليزية أن تزيد فرصتك للحصول على مستقبل ممتاز.

d) الإنجليزية ليست لغة مهمة جدًا. لا يمكن للغة الإنجليزية أن تزيد فرصتك للحصول على مستقبل ممتاز.

24. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think Silver was very clever?

....

....

2. If you were Jim, would you join the pirates?

....

....

3. What do you think of the character of Hands?

....

....

25. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"The advantages and disadvantages of mobile phones"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Tests

Test (11)



Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The driver got off the car immediately after the fire started. The synonyms of the word "immediately" are ....

a) later b) at once c) eventually d) finally e) instantly

2. The government works hard to build stations which can .... enough electricity.

a) do b) take c) produce d) place e) generate

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. My mother doesn't keep food .... in the kitchen because it helps bacteria to grow.

a) cleaner b) preservatives c) dishes d) waste

4. Google maps can help people .... through strange places which they travel to.

a) navigate b) control c) notice d) leave

5. Most modern buildings have both stairs for walkers and .... for wheelchairs.

a) ramps b) wires c) pavements d) streets

6. Working in the emergency room of a major hospital is highly .... work.

a) careful b) stressful c) personal d) extreme

7. If there's anything you don't understand, I'll be happy to .... it to you.

a) choose b) explain c) bully d) lose

8. We .... diving on the coral reef of the Red Sea last summer.

a) went b) did c) made d) played

9. My students, some of .... got the full marks, are going to be honoured.

a) who b) whose c) which d) whom

10. He told me that he .... into a new flat the week before.

a) move b) moves c) has moved d) had moved

11. My friend .... me a good hotel to stay in.

a) advised b) said c) spoke d) recommended

12. Drivers .... traffic rules to enjoy safe journeys on roads.

a) must be broken b) must break c) mustn't be broken d) mustn't break

13. They won't come to the party .... we invite them.

a) without b) unless c) in case of d) when

14. The player got the gold cup for playing well. He .... trained hard.

a) can't be b) must be c) can't have d) must have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The neighbours next to my house are my favourite people. The man is a retired army officer and his wife is still working for the nearby university. They are very hospitable and usually invite their friends to lunch. It is particularly enjoyable to wake up on Friday morning to the sounds of their music playing, which are really quite artistic. However, I also love to hear them laughing when they make a mistake in their music playing. Besides music, carpentry is still the man's main interest, and most days he is outside in his workspace in the garden, making an artistic piece of furniture. My neighbours are ideal to live next door, too, because they can be very helpful if I need them. I respect them as they never interfere in my private life and I behave with them in the same way. We have helped each other with numerous emergencies, such as fires and car accidents. We also cooperate with each other in little ways, such as bringing the mail when one of us is away. We sometimes meet when they invite me over for coffee, with some of their friends who are usually very interesting people: poets, painters, professors and other lively persons whom I enjoy meeting. Sometimes we go to the fireworks display. Apart from this, we simply live peacefully, side by side.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. At the neighbours' house, the writer meets ....

a) interesting people
b) uninteresting people
c) soldiers and artists only
d) officers and professors only

16. The underlined words "little ways" refer to ....

a) short roads
b) not long streets
c) personal business
d) simple services offered

17. What is the man's main interest?

a) Carpentry.
b) Music.
c) Fireworks.
d) Both a & c.

18. The narrator had many neighbours who work as ....

a) poets
b) painters
c) professors
d) all of these

19. The writer likes his neighbours as ....

a) they are very generous
b) they are respectful
c) they are helpful
d) all the previous answers

20. The writer's neighbours are ideal as ....

a) they interfere in his private life
b) they are noisy
c) they are helpful
d) they have an artistic piece of furniture

21. What is the job of the writer's neighbour?

a) A retired teacher.
b) A doctor.
c) A retired officer.
d) A poet.

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد أصبحت مياه الشرب مشكلة عالمية يمكن أن تؤدى إلى حروب بين كثير من الدول فى كل أنحاء العالم.

a) Drinking water has become a global problem that can lead to wars between several countries all over the world.

b) Water has become a national problem that can lead to wars between several countries all over the world.

c) The river has become a regional problem that can lead to wars between several countries all over the world.

d) Drinking water has become a local problem that can lead to wars between several countries all over the world.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Those who make our life happy and simple are never forgotten; you should make friends with such amazing people around because you rarely find them.

a) لا يمكن أبدًا أن ننسى من يجعلون حياتنا سعيدة وبسيطة، ويجب عليك أن تُكون صداقات مع مثل هؤلاء الأشخاص المذهلين من حولك لأنك نادرًا ما تجدهم.

b) لا يمكن أبدًا أن ننسى من يجعلون حياتنا سعيدة وبسيطة، ويجب عليك أن تكون صديق هؤلاء الأشخاص المفاجئين من حولك لأنك نادرًا ما تجدهم.

c) أولئك الذين يجعلون حياتنا سعيدة وبسيطة لا يمكن أبدًا أن ننساهم، ويجب عليك أن تُكون صداقات مع مثل هؤلاء الأشخاص المذهلين من حولك لأنك دائمًا ما تجدهم.

d) لا يمكن أبدًا أن ننسى من يجعلون حياتنا سعيدة وبسيطة، ويجب عليك أن تُكون علاقات مع مثل هؤلاء الأشخاص الأغنياء من حولك لأنك نادرًا ما تجدهم.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Silver has helped the group, although he is still a pirate until the last minute?

....

....

2. What would happen to the men if the pirates didn't leave the island?

....

....

3. Do you think that Silver had the right to be the captain of the ship? Why?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"A short story starting with" It was really a very bad experience that ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test (12)

30

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. I suggest that my son .... hard for his exams.

a) had studied b) study c) studying d) should study e) studied

2. A lot of men were found dead after the accident. The antonyms of the word "dead" are ....

a) boring b) interesting c) alive d) impressive e) living

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Changing the .... every day is important to protect yourself from bacteria.

a) bed b) bedding c) curtain d) room

4. The .... can do some of the dangerous jobs in factories that man used to do in the past.

a) internet b) mobile c) tablet d) robot

5. To be a good citizen, you should be .... to your country.

a) loyal b) careful c) practical d) assured

6. Ramy trains very hard because he wants to win a medal in ....

a) powerlifter b) powerlifting c) athlete d) athletic

7. I always .... my phone before I leave home.

a) charge b) remove c) choose d) cycle

8. If you .... your mind about coming tonight, just give me a call.

a) choose b) explain c) miss d) change

9. Drivers .... wear a seat belt while driving into the city.

a) need b) might c) must have d) have to

10. Can you kindly hand me the file .... cover is white?

a) who's b) whose c) which d) that

11. It was .... when I had seen him coming that I realised he returned home.

a) that b) only c) hardly d) sooner

12. He .... to sit down until he had apologised.

a) didn't allow b) doesn't allow c) wasn't allowed d) isn't allowed

13. She said that she .... two strangers enter the office two hours before.

a) was seeing b) had seen c) has seen d) was seeing

14. I hadn't expected ....

a) what he said b) which said c) what had been said d) what had said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many experts believe there are too many people in the world. Unless there are big changes in the way people think about the number of children they should have, the world's population will double in 25 years. There will be more than 20 cities with a population greater than 20 million. Now, there is only one. Some people – who do not understand what "overpopulation" means point to countries such as Australia and say, "There is plenty of room there." Although most of Australia is unpopulated, and much of it is thinly populated, there are reasons for this. Firstly, much of the land is desert and waterless, and secondly, even the land that is not desert is not suitable for anything, not even growing grass. Another major problem we shall have to face as the world's population grows is a shortage of energy. We are using up coal and oil and when they have been used up, we shall have to find something to take their place. It is true that we can make electricity from the heat of the sun and moving water, but we do not yet have the technology to do this in a big way. Perhaps, the biggest problem we shall have when the world's population doubles will be pollution. The air we breathe is already badly polluted.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. It is expected that the world's population will .... in 25 years.

a) lessen
b) decline
c) double
d) decrease

16. The word "waterless" means ....

a) wet
b) damp
c) fertile
d) arid

17. When coal and oil have been used up, we shall ....

a) search for other sources of energy
b) use computers instead
c) wait for scientists to solve the problem
d) try to do without them or any other kind

18. The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The world's population
b) The world's pollution
c) The world's desert
d) The world's problem

19. Australia is relatively a/an .... continent.

a) unpopulated
b) populated
c) populous
d) overpopulated

20. How many present cities have a population of over twenty million?

a) Only 1.
b) 20.
c) More than 20.
d) Less than 20.

21. What is the reason behind the number of people in Australia?

a) Much of the land is desert.
b) There is coal and oil.
c) The air is polluted.
d) The land is fertile.

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- لم يعد معرض الكتاب وسيلة لبيع الكتب فقط ولكنه أصبح مركزًا للثقافة والفنون والعلوم أيضًا.

a) The Book Fair is no longer a means to sell books only, but it has become a centre of culture, arts and science as well.

b) The Book Show is no longer a window to sell books only, but it has become a centre of culture, arts and science as well.

c) The Book Market is no longer a means to sell books only, but it has become a centre of culture, arts and science as well.

d) The Bookshop is no longer a means to sell books only, but it has become a centre of culture, arts and science as well.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Online learning is becoming more popular today, as more people have access to the internet. You can study whenever you choose.

a) التعلم عن بعد عن طريق الإنترنت يصبح متزايدًا اليوم لأن الكثير من الناس لديهم بطاقة الإنترنت. فمن الممكن أن تذاكر فى أى وقت تختاره.

b) إن التعلم فى المنزل عن طريق الإنترنت أصبح متزايدًا اليوم لأن الكثير من الناس لديهم وسيلة لاستخدام الإنترنت. فمن الممكن أن تذاكر فى أى وقت تختاره.

c) تعلم الإنترنت أصبح متزايدًا اليوم لأن الكثير من الناس لديهم وسيلة لاستخدام الإنترنت. فمن الممكن أن تدرس فى أى وقت تختاره.

d) إن التعلم عن طريق الإنترنت أصبح متزايدًا اليوم لأن الكثير من الناس لديهم وسيلة لاستخدام الإنترنت. فمن الممكن أن تدرس فى أى وقت تختاره.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think that Silver said the last offer loudly?

....

....

2. Do you think that Dr Livesey was a generous man? Why?

....

....

3. Do you like Jim's character? Why?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Choosing the right job"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Tests

Test (13)



Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The prize will be handed to the competitor personally. The synonyms of the word "personally" are ....

a) individually b) publicly c) privately d) especially e) in general

2. I have never .... sailing with my friends.

a) gone b) travelled c) played d) done e) been

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. She finally .... her ambition to visit Dream Park.

a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved

4. A/An .... is a person who believes strongly in social change and works hard to make this happen.

a) competitor b) Paralympian c) powerlifter d) activist

5. After World War II, Germany was .... into two separate countries.

a) divided b) ensured c) explained d) found

6. Everyone should be very careful about personal ....

a) sanitation b) first aid c) hygiene d) hospitality

7. My business trip to Guinea was .... I made such good deals.

a) rewarding b) reliable c) qualified d) flexible

8. My father works for the United Company for years. This means he is an experienced .... there.

a) unemployment b) employment c) employee d) employer

9. The policeman waved to her to turn right, but she turned left. She .... have understood him.

a) must b) may c) can't d) could

10. If Kamal were faster, he .... a good footballer.

a) be b) will be c) would be d) were

11. The woman .... waiting over there is my cousin.

a) whose b) whom c) who's d) who

12. Aswan, ... is in the south of Egypt, is the place where I currently work.

a) where b) which c) no word d) that

13. **A:** Do you know if he is OK after the accident? **B:** I'm not sure; he .... his arm.

a) might break b) can't have broken
c) may have broken d) must have broken

14. The man with .... I live is my uncle.

a) whom b) who c) whose d) which

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Teenagers today live in a very competitive world. It is more important than ever to succeed at school if you hope to have a chance in the job market afterwards. It's no wonder that many young people worry about letting down their parents, their peers and themselves. In trying to please everyone, they take on too many tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends. The result is that young people suffer from stress.

There are different ways of dealing with stress. Everyone knows that caffeine, whether it is in the form of coffee or soft drinks, keeps you awake and alert which is sometimes good. But caffeine is a drug which can become addictive. In the end, like other drugs, caffeine only leads to more stress. A better way to deal with stress is to exercise. Research has proved that physical exercise is a good release from stress because it increases certain chemicals in the brain which calm you down. Enough sleep is also an important way of avoiding stress and of staying healthy and full of energy. Another way to avoid stress is by managing your time effectively. It is better to do a few tasks really well than lots of tasks badly. Know your limits and try not to take on too much work. Finally, if it all gets beyond your control, don't panic or get hysterical.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. The best title for this passage is "..................".

a) Teen activity b) Teen stress
c) Teen hobby d) Teen culture

16. The writer is for the idea of the .... of work.

a) amount b) quantity
c) quality d) mass

17. Having a lot of burdens results in ....

a) happiness b) success
c) stability d) stress

18. Having caffeine leads to ....

a) less stress b) feeling healthy
c) more stress d) heart disease

19. According to the text, caffeine is ....

a) useful b) harmless
c) useless d) a mixed blessing

20. How many ways are mentioned in the passage to deal with stress?

a) 3. b) 4.
c) 5. d) 6.

21. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) stress b) caffeine
c) energy d) physical exercise

22. **Choose the correct English translation:**

- يجب أن يعتبر كل مصرى نفسه مرشدًا سياحيًا؛ لكى تزدهر السياحة لأنها مصدر هام للدخل القومى.

a) Every Egyptian must consider themselves tour guides so that tourism can flourish because it is an important source of the national income.

b) Every Egyptian must consider himself a tour guide so that tourism can flourish as it is an important source of the national income.

c) Every Egyptian must consider themselves tourist guides so that tourism can flourish as it is an important resource of the national income.

d) All Egyptians must consider themselves tourist guides so that tourism can improve as it is an important source of the national economy.

23. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- We can help solve the problems, but in the end, change must come from within, with strong investments not only in infrastructure but also in all aspects of life.

a) نستطيع المساعدة فى حل مشاكلنا ولكن فى النهاية يجب أن يأتى التغيير من الداخل عن طريق الاستثمارات القوية ليس فقط فى البنية التحتية ولكن أيضًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.

b) يمكن المساعدة فى حل مشاكلنا ولكن فى النهاية يجب أن يأتى التغيير من الداخل عن طريق الاستثمارات القوية ليس فقط فى المبانى ولكن أيضًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.

c) من الممكن أن نستطيع المساعدة فى حل مشاكلنا ولكن فى النهاية يجب أن يأتى التغيير من الداخل عن طريق الاستثمارات القوية ليس فقط فى البنية التحتية ولكن أيضًا فى كل نظرات الحياة.

d) نحن نستطيع حل مشاكلنا ولكن فى النهاية يجب أن يأتى التغيير من الداخل عن طريق التطوير القوى ليس فقط فى البنية التحتية ولكن أيضًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.

24. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why/ Why not?

....

....

2. Why do you think Captain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort?

....

....

3. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to go inside the fort?

....

....

25. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"The problem of food shortage all over the world"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. All students are under .... because of the coming exams.

a) treasure b) pressure c) stress d) stairs e) pleasure

2. The young boy was kind to the cat. The antonyms of the word "kind" are ....

a) cruel b) dishonest c) foolish d) just e) heartless

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Miss Huda works as a .... for us. She is responsible for looking after the whole house.

a) homeworker b) governess c) tutor d) housekeeper

4. Something has gone .... with the car engine. It needs a mechanic.

a) right b) wrong c) out d) back

5. We should make use of the .... we have in life.

a) opportunities b) salaries c) punishments d) medicines

6. A .... is a very old story that people tell about a famous event or person.

a) crime b) goal c) legend d) stone

7. Only a .... can scare all those people at the same time.

a) monster b) human c) man d) child

8. The plane .... after I had sent the text message to my wife.

a) took off b) took on c) took out d) took in

9. Five people .... to have been injured in the crash.

a) had been reported b) were reported
c) have reported d) were reporting

10. The computer is a useful machine .... stores a lot of information.

a) which's b) whose c) what d) that

11. A little .... about this complicated subject.

a) has known b) are being known
c) is known d) is going to know

12. .... training hard, you can't win the match.

a) Without b) Unless c) In case of d) If

13. The bus .... when I arrived at the station, so I didn't miss it.

a) leaves b) left c) has left d) had left

14. I have just seen Omar at school. He .... be at home.

a) can't b) mustn't c) can d) must

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Picture the scene: a young woman is walking to her car in a multi-storey car park late at night. Suddenly, a man jumps out at her from behind a column. She is not defenceless and she kicks him. While he is on the floor, she jumps into her car and drives away unharmed. This scenario should teach you three important things: Real life is nothing like in films; never walk alone at night, whether you are a man or a woman; and most importantly, use your brain, and not your body, to defend yourself against an attack. Staying safe is all about not putting yourself in a dangerous situation. Avoid a potential attack before it happens by using your common sense. This means don't go out alone at night, stay in well-lit areas, make sure someone always knows where you are, walk with confidence, and carry a mobile phone with you. Basically, don't make yourself a target. Attackers look for people who are vulnerable. If you find yourself in a dangerous situation, where you are being threatened, try and defuse it. Try not to make the situation worse by trying to fight. The best defence is to remove yourself from the situation. Calmly walk away, run as fast as you can, or eventually you can use your force.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. The woman who hit the man was ....

a) in real life
b) in a dream
c) acting in a film
d) imagining

16. Using the .... is the most important thing to defend yourself against an attack.

a) brain
b) body
c) gun
d) weapon

17. .... is your last solution if you are in a dangerous situation.

a) Running
b) Walking
c) Escaping
d) Fighting

18. The best thing to do when you are in a tight corner is to ....

a) smoke
b) fight
c) trick
d) escape

19. The main idea of the passage is ....

a) best ways to defend yourself
b) how to attack other people
c) watching films and how to avoid it
d) dangerous situations in life

20. What does the writer mean by "common sense"?

a) How to be emotional.
b) How to think practically.
c) How to smell other people.
d) How to feel sad.

21. Attackers look for people who are vulnerable. It means people who are ....

a) easy to attack
b) difficult to attack
c) trying to fight
d) calm

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- نسعى لتحقيق الاستقرار والأمن لتشجيع الاستثمار فى المشروعات القومية فى كل أنحاء البلاد.

a) We seek to achieve stability and security to encourage investment in international projects all over the country.

b) We seek to achieve instability and security to encourage investment in national projects all over the country.

c) We seek to achieve equality and security to discourage investment in national projects all over the country.

d) We seek to achieve stability and security to encourage investment in national projects all over the country.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The government and individuals should pay more attention to the problem of bullying as it's a very serious problem that threatens the whole society.

a) يجب على الحكومة والطلاب الدفع إلى مشكلة التنمر لأنها مشكلة صارمة تهدد المجتمع بأكمله.

b) يجب على الحكومة والناس الانتباه إلى مشكلة البلطجة لأنها مشكلة خطيرة تهدد الدولة بأكملها.

c) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد الانتباه إلى مشكلة التنمر لأنها مشكلة خطيرة تهدد المجتمع بأكمله.

d) يجب على الدولة والأفراد أن يدفعوا إلى مشكلة التنمر لأنها مشكلة جادة تهدد المجتمع بأكمله.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Prove that Jim was very kind and liked Captain Smollett!

....

....

2. Why do you think that Jim decided to take the pirates' flag down?

....

....

3. Why do you think Hands wants to hurt or kill Jim?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How we can solve the problem of illegal immigration"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Tests

Test (15)



Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Aswan lies in .... Egypt.

a) a south b) the south c) the south of d) southern e) the southern of

2. Just be honest – do you like this shirt or not? The antonyms of the word "honest" are ....

a) innocent b) deceitful c) loyal d) genuine e) dishonest

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. If he doesn't leave ...., he'll be late for the meeting.

a) surprisingly b) difficultly c) immediately d) differently

4. The water tank is .... When can we fill it?

a) full b) filled c) empty d) milky

5. They could take legal action against you if you break the terms of the ....

a) skill b) contract c) challenge d) idea

6. I'm not .... to give advice on such matters.

a) stressful b) frustrating c) qualified d) frightened

7. She must have done something wrong because she looks so ....

a) transparent b) guilty c) mysterious d) proved

8. We .... our car with the price we wanted for it in the local newspaper.

a) employed b) advertised c) forgot d) taught

9. The man .... the car was stolen called the police.

a) who's b) whom c) whose d) from whom

10. Eventually, I reached a stage .... I began to enjoy my work.

a) which b) whose c) what d) where

11. No sooner .... the match than he went home.

a) he watched b) he had watched
c) does he watch d) had he watched

12. My neighbour bought a car after .... how to drive.

a) learning b) being learned c) had learned d) learned

13. The floor is wet. Someone .... water on it.

a) must have spilt b) can't have spilt c) must spill d) may spill

14. He .... me if I had taken the decision.

a) said b) asked c) told d) wondered

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the past, people travelled on foot or on horseback and suffered many hardships. Nowadays, they travel by air, by land or by sea. People do not all travel for the same reasons. Do you know why people go on journeys? Some people go on business. This means that they are busy with something; they have work to do, and they travel to do that work.

Some people travel for their health. Perhaps the doctor has told them that they must go to a warmer country. Or perhaps they have to go to a cooler one for the summer. In some places, there are health springs. The water of these springs is special water, which is very good for the health. People from places far away come to drink the water of these springs or to bathe in them. Or perhaps people are recovering from an illness and the doctor has ordered them to have a change of air.

Muslims travel to Saudi Arabia every year to make a pilgrimage. People travel for other reasons, such as exploration, politics, study and military reasons. Other people travel for pleasure, but they begin to wonder where the pleasure is! When you travelled, was it for pleasure? Were you travelling sick? Did you find travelling a pleasure or did you wish that you had stayed at home?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15. .... **is a religious trip.**

a) Pilgrimage b) Politics

c) Study d) Military

16. What does the writer mean by "have a change of air"?

a) Open the window. b) Switch on a fan.

c) Travel into space. d) Travel to a healthy place.

17. The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a) springs b) people

c) reasons d) journeys

18. People travel to Mecca every year for ....

a) politics b) recovering

c) tourism d) pilgrimage

19. People who travelled in the past faced difficulties because ....

a) they travelled a lot b) they travelled for long distances

c) they travelled on foot d) they fought while travelling

20. People travel for .... reasons.

a) no b) the same

c) different d) much

21. At the present time, people no longer travel ....

a) on horseback or on foot b) by air

c) by sea d) by land

22. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب أن يلعب كل فرد دورًا إيجابيًا فى تنمية بلدنا حتى تنعم الأجيال القادمة بالرخاء.

a) Everyone should play a positive role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.

b) Everyone should play a negative role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.

c) Everyone should play a positive rule in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.

d) Everyone should do a positive role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Youth are the backbone of any nation and the base of its progress. So, governments should provide them with the necessities of life to help them be better citizens.

a) إن الشباب هم العمود الفقرى لأى أمة وأساس تقدمها، لذلك يجب على الحكومة توفير ضروريات الحياة لهم لتساعدهم على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين.

b) إن الشباب هم العمود الخلفى لأى أمة وأساسها، لذلك يجب على الحكومة توفير ضروريات الحياة لهم ليكونوا مواطنين أقوياء.

c) إن الشباب هم العظمة الخلفية لأى أمة وأساس تقدمها، لذلك على الحكومة توفير ضروريات الحياة لهم لتساعدهم على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين.

d) إن الشباب هم السند لأى أمة وأساس رخائها، لذلك يجب على الحكومة توفير ضروريات الحياة لهم لتساعدهم على أن يكونوا مواطنين جيدين.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Jim, would you trust Hands? Why? Why not?

....

....

2. What do you think Jim thought about Hands at first?

....

....

3. Why do you think Jim was not frightened of Silver?

....

....

25. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Television as a means of communication"

....

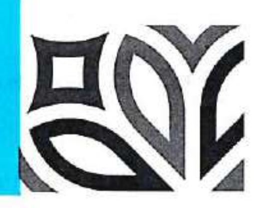
....

....

....

....

....



1 **Complete the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

Nabila and Huda are talking about their goals in life.

Nabila : Can I ask you about your biggest goal in life?

Huda : My biggest goal in life is (1).. medicine.

Nabila : (2)..?

Huda : Yes, I know it's very difficult, but I'm ambitious.

Nabila : (3)..?

Huda : I plan to achieve it by studying hard to get high marks this year.

Nabila : I hope you will achieve your goal in life.

Huda : (4).. .

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We are going .... for a meal. How about joining us?

a) on b) down c) out d) into

2. The picture .... by a good photographer last week.

a) took b) was taken c) was taking d) takes

3. Ali is not keen to .... for this job as it isn't rewarding.

a) reply b) deploy c) imply d) apply

4. That is the shop .... my brother works.

a) who b) which c) that d) where

5. If I .... you, I would read this book.

a) am b) had been c) are d) were

6. We should boil milk to kill harmful ....

a) infection b) injection c) bacteria d) allergy

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Online education allows students to attend classes without going to a school building. The online community means students can share their opinions and discuss what they are learning with other students and their teachers. Courses use advanced video technology so that students can speak, make notes on the screen and write on a shared whiteboard with other students. There are a variety of reasons for choosing an online education. Some students live in remote areas and it is difficult to travel long distances every day. Others have been the victims of bullying at school. The flexibility of this way of learning means that it also appeals to students who have special needs, and students who are unable to go to a traditional school. An advantage of online education is that students study at their own pace and place and they can choose the best time of day to study. All you need is a computer with a high-speed connection to the internet and the ability to learn.

(A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does online education allow students to do?

....

2. What are the advantages of online education?

....

3. What does the flexibility of online education mean?

....

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Some students have been the .... of bullying at school.

a) fans b) victims c) warriors d) soldiers

5. During online education, you need a computer with a high- .... connection to the internet.

a) speed b) slow c) quiet d) rush

4 (A) Answer the following questions: (Treasure Island)

1. What was Jim Hawkins's opinion about Ben Gun?

....

2. Who did the pirates kill inside the fort?

....

(B) Choose the correct answer:

1. Captain Smollett was careful not to waste .... on the fire.

a) wool b) cotton c) iron d) wood

2. When Jim returned to the ship *Hispaniola*, the deck seemed ....

a) dirty b) empty c) wet d) rocky

3. They found.................... in the cave.

a) the ship b) the boat c) the tree d) the treasure

5 Write a paragraph of about 80 words about:

"The person you admire and respect"

....

6 (A) Translate into Arabic:

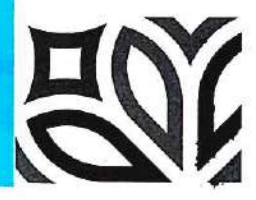
- Some people with disabilities are useful citizens although they have special needs.

....

(B) Translate into English:

- للرياضة دور كبير فى حل المشكلات الاجتماعية مثل الجريمة والعنف.

....



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Clerk : (1)..?

Fady : Yes, I am looking for a pair of blue jeans.

Clerk : (2)..?

Fady : I wear size 30.

Clerk : Here you are. Would you like to try them on?

Fady : (3)... .

Clerk : The dressing room is over there. If you need help, call me.

Fady : (4)... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I bought my wife a present and .... it in gold paper.

a) burnt b) evacuated c) broke d) wrapped

2. All parents hope that their children will get a good ....

a) advertisement b) unemployment c) education d) cruelty

3. The hotel is currently under .... It will be finished after three months.

a) industry b) construction c) contract d) reward

4. Plants die if they .... enough water.

a) don't get b) won't get c) wouldn't get d) didn't get

5. .... had they phoned when we hurried to help them.

a) Hardly b) No sooner c) After d) before

6. The waitress .... served us was very polite and friendly.

a) who b) which c) when d) whose

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptians were clever people. They built the pyramids and a lot of temples. They treated patients and gave them medicines. They discovered the sources of the Nile and built dams as well. Nowadays, the Egyptians practise modern sciences. They carry out many projects that will develop our country in different fields. They also work on the deserts and try to turn them into green land. Egyptian doctors have found out ways of fighting diseases. Egyptian scientists have become famous all over the world, so the government encourages them to work for the good of our country. If you want to take part in helping your country, try to be one of the many good Egyptians who have helped Egypt to develop.

(A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did ancient Egyptians build?

....

2. How do Egyptian doctors help their country?

....

3. What is the writer's advice?

....

(B) Choose the correct answer from a b c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ....

a) pyramids b) projects c) deserts d) darns

5. According to the passage, the Egyptian .... are well-known all over the world.

a) teachers b) scientists c) diseases d) fields

4 (A) Answer the following: (A Glimpse of Revelation)

1. What are the essential virtues in Islamic teachings?

....

2. What is the foundation of all good?

....

(B) Choose the correct answer:

1. Muslims should have a .... for excellence.

a) passion b) patient c) passer d) position

2. Trustfulness makes a person's life ....

a) upright b) uprising c) vertical d) rite

3. Plagiarism .... honesty.

a) agrees with b) is the same as c) contradicts d) accepts

5 Write a paragraph of not less than 60 words about:

"How to avoid illness and infectious diseases"

....

6 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Creative thinking is the process by which individuals come up with new ideas.

....

(B) Translate into English:

- ينبغى على المسلم أن يكون أمينًا فى القول والعمل.

....